



# AP United States History

Giáo trình luyện thi chuyên sâu  
Song ngữ Anh-Việt

**8020 ENGLISH**

5A/2 Trần Phú, P.4, Q.5, TP.HCM · [luyenthi8020.com](http://luyenthi8020.com)

Thầy Tường 0332 747 169 · Cô Nancy 0983 422 692

## Lời mở đầu • Foreword

Cuốn sách này thuộc bộ giáo trình luyện thi chương trình quốc tế của **8020 English (8020 Education)** — trung tâm luyện thi trọng điểm **IELTS • SAT • AP • IB • A-level • IGCSE** và sẵn học bổng du học. Toàn bộ nội dung được biên soạn bởi đội ngũ **Giáo sư • Tiến sĩ • Thạc sĩ** tốt nghiệp các trường top đầu thế giới, bám sát khung chương trình chính thức, trình bày đầy đủ lý thuyết, ví dụ mẫu, hình minh họa và hệ thống bài tập có lời giải chi tiết.

*This book is part of the 8020 English international exam-prep series: complete English theory with Vietnamese explanations, worked examples, illustrations and fully-solved practice, aligned to the official framework.*

### Thành tích 8020 English

**9.0** IELTS cao nhất

**1570** SAT cao nhất

**5/5** AP — điểm tuyệt đối

**90/100** IB Diploma

**100%** GV  $\geq$  8.0 IELTS / 1500 SAT

**CMU** Tiến sĩ ĐH #1 Hoa Kỳ về CS

**Đội ngũ tiêu biểu:** Thầy Châu Cát Tường (Academic Head, ThS Western Sydney, top 1% IELTS 8.5) · TS Nguyễn Anh Huy (Carnegie Mellon, cựu kỹ sư Amazon) · TS Nguyễn Phước Trường (Toán, ĐH Klagenfurt) · cùng đội ngũ giảng viên SAT 1500–1600, IELTS 8.0–8.5.

**Kết quả học viên — điểm thi thật:** IELTS 8.0–9.0 · SAT 1550 / 1570 / 1590 · AP 5/5 (Calculus BC, Microeconomics) · IB 90/100 (Economics) · Duolingo 110 · PTE 90 · TOEFL 120. **Bảng vàng SAT:** Khánh Đăng 1510 · Thảo Nguyên 1520 · Tâm Anh 1530.

*“Cuối cùng đã đậu vào trường top như mong muốn.” — Phan Thị Thanh Hằng, IELTS Overall 8.5.*

**Cách dùng sách hiệu quả:** mỗi Unit gồm (1) **Lý thuyết trọng tâm** tiếng Anh kèm **giải thích tiếng Việt**; (2) **Ví dụ mẫu** có lời giải; (3) **Hệ thống bài tập** kèm **lời giải chi tiết**. Hãy tự làm bài trước khi xem lời giải để đạt hiệu quả tối đa.

# THÀNH TÍCH THỰC TẾ • 8020 ENGLISH

Điểm thi thật • Bảng & bảng điểm thật của giảng viên và học viên 8020 English — Điểm thật • Thầy thật • Kết quả thật

**ĐỘI NGŨ**

**ĐỘI NGŨ GIÁO VIÊN TẬN TÂM**

**\*Tối thiểu 8.0 IELTS Overall**



**Gv. Nguyễn Nhật Nam**  
IELTS 8.5 Overall



**Gv. Nguyễn Khanh**  
IELTS 8.0 Overall



**Gv. Nguyễn Đan Vy**  
IELTS 8.0 Overall



Giảng viên 8020 — IELTS 8.5 & 8.0 Overall (British Council • IDP • Cambridge)

**KẾT QUẢ HỌC VIÊN**

**THÀNH TÍCH HỌC VIÊN**

Bảng điểm thi thật – chất lượng được giám sát nghiêm ngặt. Một số học viên chỉ cần 1–2 khóa để đạt kết quả mong muốn.



Học viên 8020 — IELTS 8.0 Overall (bảng điểm thật)

## ĐỘI NGŨ

## ĐỘI NGŨ GIÁO VIÊN TẬN TÂM

\*Tối thiểu 1500 SAT Overall

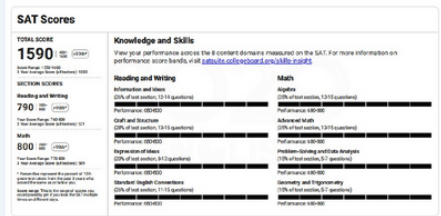
## Thầy Quang Minh

Đại học Bách Khoa Hà Nội



SAT 1590

IELTS 8.0



## THỂ MẠNH &amp; KINH NGHIỆM

- Học sinh đạt 1450–1560 SAT
- Day nhanh band 1400–1550+
- Chiến thuật làm bài & quản lý thời gian

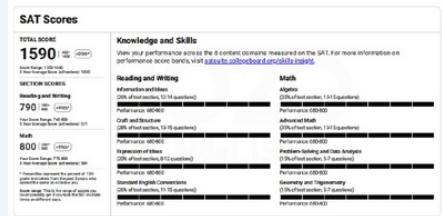
## Cô Phương Vy

Đại học Ngoại thương



SAT 1590

IELTS 8.0



## THỂ MẠNH &amp; KINH NGHIỆM

- SAT Verbal Instructor (Springboard, QAS)
- Day lớp nhỏ & xây dựng tài liệu riêng
- Chuyên Reading & Writing: Logic – Grammar

Giảng viên 8020 – SAT 1590 (ĐH Bách Khoa Hà Nội &amp; ĐH Ngoại thương)

## KẾT QUẢ HỌC VIÊN

## TUTOR 1-1 – ĐIỂM SỐ ẤN TƯỢNG



## Your Scores

Name: Tam T Nguyen  
Grade: 12  
Test administration: SAT May 3, 2025  
Tested on: May 3, 2025  
Record Locator: 410244771



Build your future, your way, with free personalized career and college planning tools

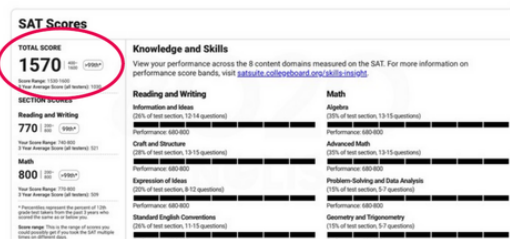


satsuite.org/whatsnext



## Your Scores

Name: Linh Pham  
Grade: 12  
Test administration: SAT December 7, 2024  
Tested on: Dec 7, 2024  
Record Locator: 409986376



Build your future, your way, with free personalized career and college planning tools



satsuite.org/whatsnext

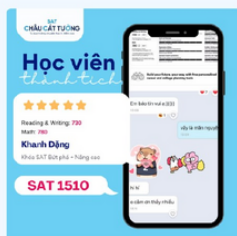
Học viên 8020 – SAT 1550 &amp; 1570 (College Board)

## KẾT QUẢ HỌC VIÊN

## BẢNG VÀNG HỌC VIÊN

SAT  
CHAU CÁT TƯỜNG  
Tư vấn hướng nghiệp học & điểm số8020  
ENGLISH

## Bảng vàng học viên



Bé Khanh Đăng

SAT Bút phá + Năng cao Cam kết 140++ =&gt; Kết quả 1510



Bé Phan Nguyễn Thảo Nguyễn

SAT Năng cao



Bé Lê Tâm Anh

SAT Bút phá + Năng cao Cam kết 140++ =&gt; Bút phá kết quả 1530

## KHÁNH ĐĂNG – SAT 1510

"SAT Bút phá + Năng cao cam kết 140++ → 1510"

## THẢO NGUYỄN – SAT 1520

"SAT Năng cao → 1520"

## TÂM ANH – SAT 1530

"SAT Bút phá + Năng cao cam kết 140++ → 1530"

Bảng vàng SAT – Học viên đạt 1510 · 1520 · 1530

## KẾT QUẢ HỌC VIÊN

## ĐIỂM SỐ AP

8020  
ENGLISH

AP Biology: 4 · AP Chemistry: 4



AP Calculus AB: 5



AP Calculus BC: 5



AP Chemistry: 5

Bảng điểm AP thật của học viên – nhiều môn đạt điểm 4 &amp; 5

Điểm AP thật – Calculus AB/BC 5/5 · Biology &amp; Chemistry 4–5 (College Board)

# Mục lục • Contents

---

|          |                                                                                                   |           |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>1</b> | <b>Period 1 — Contact and Colonization (1491–1607)</b>                                            | <b>8</b>  |
| 1.1      | Contextualizing Period 1 . . . . .                                                                | 8         |
| 1.2      | Diverse Native American societies before contact . . . . .                                        | 9         |
| 1.3      | European exploration reaches the Americas . . . . .                                               | 14        |
| 1.4      | The Columbian Exchange and Spanish conquest . . . . .                                             | 17        |
| 1.5      | Labor, slavery, and caste in Spanish America . . . . .                                            | 20        |
| 1.6      | Comparing colonial models: Spain, Portugal, France, and England . . . . .                         | 23        |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Period 2 — Colonial North America (1607–1754)</b>                                              | <b>30</b> |
| 2.1      | Contextualizing Period 2 . . . . .                                                                | 30        |
| 2.2      | Motives for English colonization and the joint-stock company . . . . .                            | 31        |
| 2.3      | The regions of British colonial America . . . . .                                                 | 34        |
| 2.4      | Transatlantic trade and mercantilism . . . . .                                                    | 40        |
| 2.5      | American Indians and Europeans: conflict and accommodation . . . . .                              | 42        |
| 2.6      | The making of race-based slavery . . . . .                                                        | 45        |
| 2.7      | Colonial society, religion, and the life of the mind . . . . .                                    | 48        |
| <b>3</b> | <b>Period 3 — Revolution and the New Nation (1754–1800)</b>                                       | <b>52</b> |
| 3.1      | Contextualizing Period 3 . . . . .                                                                | 52        |
| 3.2      | The French and Indian War and Its Aftermath . . . . .                                             | 54        |
| 3.3      | Taxation Without Representation . . . . .                                                         | 55        |
| 3.4      | Philosophical Foundations of the American Revolution . . . . .                                    | 58        |
| 3.5      | The American Revolution: War and Independence . . . . .                                           | 60        |
| 3.6      | Revolutionary Ideals and Their Limits . . . . .                                                   | 63        |
| 3.7      | The Articles of Confederation: Promise and Weakness . . . . .                                     | 66        |
| 3.8      | The Constitutional Convention and the Ratification Debate . . . . .                               | 68        |
| 3.9      | The Constitution's Structure: Federalism, Separation of Powers, and Checks and Balances . . . . . | 71        |
| 3.10     | Shaping a New Republic: Washington, Hamilton, and the New Government . . . . .                    | 73        |
| 3.11     | Foreign Policy in the Early Republic . . . . .                                                    | 75        |
| 3.12     | The First Party System . . . . .                                                                  | 77        |
| 3.13     | The Adams Presidency and the Election of 1800 . . . . .                                           | 78        |
| <b>4</b> | <b>Period 4 — Democracy in an Age of Expansion (1800–1848)</b>                                    | <b>83</b> |
| 4.1      | Contextualizing Period 4 . . . . .                                                                | 83        |
| 4.2      | The Rise of Political Parties and the Era of Jefferson . . . . .                                  | 83        |
| 4.3      | Politics and Regional Interests . . . . .                                                         | 87        |
| 4.4      | America on the World Stage . . . . .                                                              | 90        |
| 4.5      | The Market Revolution: Transportation and Manufacturing . . . . .                                 | 91        |
| 4.6      | The Market Revolution: Society and Culture . . . . .                                              | 94        |
| 4.7      | Expanding Democracy . . . . .                                                                     | 96        |
| 4.8      | Jackson and Federal Power . . . . .                                                               | 98        |
| 4.9      | The Development of an American Culture . . . . .                                                  | 102       |
| 4.10     | Reform Movements . . . . .                                                                        | 104       |

|          |                                                                      |            |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>5</b> | <b>Period 5 — Slavery, Civil War, and Reconstruction (1844–1877)</b> | <b>108</b> |
| 5.1      | Contextualizing Period 5 . . . . .                                   | 108        |
| 5.2      | Manifest Destiny and Territorial Expansion . . . . .                 | 109        |
| 5.3      | The Mexican-American War (1846–1848) . . . . .                       | 112        |
| 5.4      | The Compromise of 1850 . . . . .                                     | 115        |
| 5.5      | The Failure of Compromise . . . . .                                  | 117        |
| 5.6      | Rising Sectional Tensions, 1859–1861 . . . . .                       | 123        |
| 5.7      | The Civil War: Military Conflict . . . . .                           | 125        |
| 5.8      | Civil War Government Policy . . . . .                                | 129        |
| 5.9      | Reconstruction: Competing Plans . . . . .                            | 132        |
| 5.10     | The Failure of Reconstruction . . . . .                              | 137        |
| <b>6</b> | <b>Period 6 — The Gilded Age (1865–1898)</b>                         | <b>141</b> |
| 6.1      | Contextualizing Period 6 . . . . .                                   | 141        |
| 6.2      | Westward Expansion . . . . .                                         | 142        |
| 6.3      | The New South . . . . .                                              | 146        |
| 6.4      | Industrialization and Big Business . . . . .                         | 148        |
| 6.5      | Gilded Age Politics . . . . .                                        | 151        |
| 6.6      | Immigration and Migration . . . . .                                  | 154        |
| 6.7      | Responses to Immigration . . . . .                                   | 155        |
| 6.8      | Development of the Middle Class . . . . .                            | 157        |
| 6.9      | Urbanization and Its Challenges . . . . .                            | 158        |
| 6.10     | Farmers and the Populist Movement . . . . .                          | 160        |
| 6.11     | Government's Role in the Economy . . . . .                           | 162        |
| 6.12     | Growing Tensions: Labor and Capital . . . . .                        | 163        |
| 6.13     | Continuity and Change: The Election of 1896 . . . . .                | 166        |
| <b>7</b> | <b>Period 7 — The Rise of Modern America (1890–1945)</b>             | <b>169</b> |
| 7.1      | Contextualizing Period 7 . . . . .                                   | 169        |
| 7.2      | Debates over American Imperialism . . . . .                          | 170        |
| 7.3      | The Progressive Movement . . . . .                                   | 172        |
| 7.4      | World War I: Military and Diplomacy . . . . .                        | 175        |
| 7.5      | World War I: The Home Front . . . . .                                | 176        |
| 7.6      | 1920s: Innovations in Communication and Technology . . . . .         | 177        |
| 7.7      | 1920s: Cultural and Political Controversies . . . . .                | 178        |
| 7.8      | The Great Depression . . . . .                                       | 180        |
| 7.9      | The New Deal . . . . .                                               | 181        |
| 7.10     | Interwar Foreign Policy . . . . .                                    | 184        |
| 7.11     | World War II: Mobilization . . . . .                                 | 184        |
| 7.12     | World War II: Fighting the War . . . . .                             | 187        |
| 7.13     | Postwar Diplomacy . . . . .                                          | 188        |
| 7.14     | Practice: Period 7 review . . . . .                                  | 189        |
| <b>8</b> | <b>Period 8 — The Cold War Era (1945–1980)</b>                       | <b>201</b> |
| 8.1      | Contextualizing Period 8 . . . . .                                   | 201        |
| 8.2      | Origins of the Cold War, 1945–1949 . . . . .                         | 202        |
| 8.3      | The Red Scare at Home . . . . .                                      | 203        |
| 8.4      | The Postwar Economy . . . . .                                        | 204        |
| 8.5      | Postwar Culture: Conformity and Critique . . . . .                   | 205        |
| 8.6      | Containment Tested: NSC-68 and the Korean War . . . . .              | 205        |
| 8.7      | America as a World Power, 1953–1962 . . . . .                        | 206        |
| 8.8      | The Civil Rights Movement . . . . .                                  | 207        |

|          |                                                                |            |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 8.9      | Youth Culture and the Antiwar Movement . . . . .               | 210        |
| 8.10     | The Great Society . . . . .                                    | 211        |
| 8.11     | The Vietnam War . . . . .                                      | 212        |
| 8.12     | The Environment and Natural Resources in the 1970s . . . . .   | 213        |
| 8.13     | Society in Transition . . . . .                                | 214        |
| 8.14     | Continuity and Change: Nixon, Détente, and Watergate . . . . . | 215        |
| 8.15     | Practice: Period 8 review . . . . .                            | 217        |
| <b>9</b> | <b>Period 9 — The Contemporary Era (1980–Present)</b>          | <b>230</b> |
| 9.1      | Contextualizing Period 9 . . . . .                             | 230        |
| 9.2      | Reagan and the Conservative Ascendancy . . . . .               | 231        |
| 9.3      | The End of the Cold War . . . . .                              | 234        |
| 9.4      | A Changing Economy . . . . .                                   | 236        |
| 9.5      | Migration and Immigration since 1980 . . . . .                 | 237        |
| 9.6      | Culture Wars . . . . .                                         | 238        |
| 9.7      | Continuity and Change in Policy since 1990 . . . . .           | 239        |
| 9.8      | Practice: Period 9 review . . . . .                            | 244        |

# Period 1 --- Contact and Colonization (1491--1607)

**Mục tiêu Unit:** Sau khi học xong Unit này, học sinh có thể: (1) phân biệt sự đa dạng giữa các xã hội bản địa Bắc Mỹ trước 1492 (Puebloan ở Tây Nam, các dân tộc Đồng bằng lớn, văn hoá Mississippian/Cahokia, Liên minh Haudenosaunee ở Đông Bắc, các dân tộc Tây Bắc Thái Bình Dương) thay vì coi “người bản địa châu Mỹ” là một khối văn hoá đồng nhất; (2) giải thích động cơ (Chúa – Vàng – Vinh quang) và công nghệ hàng hải giúp Bồ Đào Nha và Tây Ban Nha thám hiểm xuyên đại dương; (3) phân tích cuộc Trao đổi Columbus (Columbian Exchange) và hệ quả nhân khẩu học, sinh thái, kinh tế của nó đối với cả hai bán cầu; (4) mô tả quá trình chinh phục của Cortés và Pizarro cùng hệ thống encomienda, chế độ nô lệ người Phi và trật tự đẳng cấp (casta) trong đế chế thuộc địa Tây Ban Nha; (5) so sánh nguyên nhân và hệ quả của bốn mô hình thực dân hoá châu Âu – Tây Ban Nha, Bồ Đào Nha, Pháp, Anh (kể cả thất bại của thuộc địa Roanoke); (6) vận dụng kỹ năng phân tích nguồn sử liệu (HIPP) và xây dựng luận đề SAQ/LEQ/DBQ cho các câu hỏi thuộc Period 1.

## 1.1 Contextualizing Period 1

The Advanced Placement U.S. History course begins not with Europeans but with the peoples who had already inhabited the Western Hemisphere for thousands of years. Human beings first reached the Americas at least fifteen thousand years ago, likely via a now-submerged land bridge across the Bering Strait and along the Pacific coastline, and over the following millennia their descendants spread across two continents, adapting to environments ranging from Arctic tundra to tropical rainforest to arid desert. By the time European ships appeared on the horizon in 1492, the Americas were home to tens of millions of people organized into hundreds of distinct nations, languages, and political systems – from small kin-based bands to city-states and tributary empires. Period 1 of the AP U.S. History framework (1491–1607) asks students to hold two ideas together: first, that this hemisphere already had its own deep, dynamic history before contact, and second, that the arrival of Europeans after 1492 set in motion an irreversible reorganization of peoples, plants, animals, microbes, and power on a global scale. The period closes in 1607, the year the English crown chartered the first permanent English settlement at Jamestown, opening the sustained colonial contest that Period 2 will trace in detail.

### Theme: MIG – Migration and Settlement

Migration to the Americas did not begin in 1492 – it began millennia earlier and continued in waves. Framing 1492 as a single “discovery” erases thousands of years of prior movement, settlement, and adaptation. On the exam, treat 1492 as the beginning of *sustained transatlantic contact* between hemispheres, not the beginning of American history itself.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Con người đã đến châu Mỹ ít nhất khoảng 15.000 năm trước, có thể qua cầu đất Bering hoặc theo đường ven biển Thái Bình Dương. Đến năm 1492, châu Mỹ đã có hàng chục triệu cư dân với hàng trăm hệ thống chính trị, ngôn ngữ khác nhau. Period 1 (1491–1607) yêu cầu học sinh

vừa hiểu lịch sử bản địa trước tiếp xúc, vừa hiểu quá trình tiếp xúc xuyên Đại Tây Dương sau 1492 đã làm thay đổi toàn cầu như thế nào. Giai đoạn kết thúc năm 1607 khi Anh lập thuộc địa thường trú đầu tiên – Jamestown.

Three developments define Period 1: (1) the internal diversity and complexity of Native American societies before contact; (2) the technological and ideological factors that allowed Portugal and Spain to launch transoceanic voyages; and (3) the divergent labor, settlement, and diplomatic systems that Spain, Portugal, France, and England built once contact began.

### Bài tập luyện tập

A historian writes: “To understand what happened after 1492, students must first understand what already existed in 1491 – flourishing agricultural societies, cities, trade networks, and political confederations across two continents.” This statement is best used by AP students to support which point about contextualizing Period 1?

- |                                                                                                                  |                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) European colonization introduced the first organized societies to an otherwise empty wilderness              | (C) All Native American societies before 1492 were organized identically around agriculture |
| (B) Native American societies before contact were complex and diverse, not a blank backdrop for European arrival | (D) Contact with Europe had no lasting effect on Native American societies                  |

### Lời giải chi tiết

The historian’s point is precisely that pre-1492 America was not empty or undeveloped – it held sophisticated, varied societies with their own long histories. Choice (A) inverts the historian’s claim; (C) contradicts the emphasis on diversity; (D) is factually indefensible given the demographic and cultural upheaval that followed 1492. (B).

## 1.2 Diverse Native American societies before contact

No single description can capture Native North America on the eve of contact, because no single Native American culture existed. Environment, available resources, and centuries of independent political and cultural development produced strikingly different ways of life across the continent, and the AP exam consistently rewards students who describe this diversity by region rather than generalizing about “Native Americans” as one people.

### 1.2.1 The Southwest: Ancestral Puebloans

In the arid canyon country of the present-day Four Corners region, the Ancestral Puebloans built multi-story adobe and masonry dwellings – some, like those at Chaco Canyon and later Mesa Verde, housing hundreds of residents – and engineered irrigation canals and terraces to farm maize, beans, and squash (the “Three Sisters”) in a landscape with little rainfall. Long-distance trade connected Puebloan communities to Mesoamerica, bringing turquoise, macaws, and copper bells northward along desert trade routes. Their descendants, the Pueblo peoples encountered by Spanish expeditions such as Francisco Vásquez de Coronado’s in the 1540s, maintained settled village life organized around kivas (ceremonial chambers) and communal farming long after the Ancestral Puebloan sites themselves were abandoned, likely due to prolonged drought.

### 1.2.2 The Great Plains

Great Plains societies were more varied than the popular image of mounted bison hunters suggests – an image that, in any case, only became fully accurate after horses reached the region through Spanish colonization further south. Before that, some Plains peoples were semi-nomadic, following bison herds on foot and using dogs to haul belongings, while others, such as the Mandan and Hidatsa along the Missouri River, lived in permanent earthlodge villages and combined maize horticulture with seasonal bison hunting. Bison provided food, shelter (hides for tipis), tools (bone implements), and clothing, making the animal central to Plains economies regardless of how mobile a given community was.

### 1.2.3 The Mississippian world and Cahokia

Between roughly 800 and 1500 CE, the Mississippian culture spread across the river valleys of the Midwest and Southeast, marked by large earthwork platform mounds used for elite residences, temples, and burials. Its greatest center, **Cahokia**, arose near the confluence of the Mississippi, Missouri, and Illinois Rivers (near present-day St. Louis) and by around 1100 CE supported a population in the thousands – one of the largest urban settlements north of Mexico at the time – sustained by fertile floodplain maize agriculture and river-based trade networks that moved copper, shell, and other goods across enormous distances. Cahokia's monumental Monks Mound and evidence of a stratified elite class point to a complex political hierarchy. By the time Hernando de Soto's expedition crossed the Southeast in 1539–1542, Cahokia itself had already declined for reasons still debated by archaeologists (possibly overuse of local resources, political instability, or climate shifts), though descendant Mississippian chiefdoms persisted in the region.

### 1.2.4 The Northeast: the Haudenosaunee Confederacy

In the Northeast, five nations – the Mohawk, Oneida, Onondaga, Cayuga, and Seneca – united under the **Haudenosaunee (Iroquois) Confederacy**, governed by an oral constitution known as the Great Law of Peace. Political authority ran through matrilineal clans: land and lineage passed through the mother's line, and clan mothers selected and could remove the male chiefs who sat on the confederacy's council. Some historians have suggested that the confederacy's balance of shared and local authority may have informed later European observers' thinking about federated government, though the extent of any direct influence on the U.S. Constitution remains debated among scholars and should be presented cautiously rather than as settled fact.

### 1.2.5 The Pacific Northwest

Along the Pacific coast, peoples such as the Chinook, Tlingit, and Haida drew on the region's exceptionally abundant salmon runs and marine resources to sustain large, permanent villages without relying on agriculture at all – a rare combination of settled life and a hunting-and-gathering (in this case, fishing-based) economy. Cedar plank houses, monumental woodcarving, and elaborate oral traditions reflected considerable material wealth, which communities displayed and redistributed through the **potlatch**, a ceremonial feast at which hosts gave away or destroyed goods to demonstrate and reinforce social status.

| Region / culture     | Environment & subsistence                                      | Social / political organization                             | Key example                         |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Southwest (Puebloan) | Arid canyon country; irrigated maize/beans/squash farming      | Settled village life; kiva-centered ceremonial structure    | Chaco Canyon, later Pueblo villages |
| Great Plains         | Grassland; bison hunting; some river-valley maize horticulture | Mix of semi-nomadic bands and permanent earthlodge villages | Mandan, Hidatsa                     |
| Mississippi valley   | Fertile floodplain; maize agriculture; river trade             | Stratified chiefdoms; monumental mound-building             | Cahokia                             |
| Northeast            | Forest/lake region; farming, hunting, fishing                  | Matrilineal clans; multi-nation confederacy                 | Haudenosaunee (Iroquois)            |
| Pacific Northwest    | Coastal; salmon fishing, marine resources                      | Settled, non-agricultural; rank displayed via potlatch      | Chinook, Tlingit, Haida             |

Regional diversity among Native American societies before sustained European contact.

### Theme: ARC – American and Regional Culture

Political and cultural institutions before contact were as sophisticated as their economies: the Haudenosaunee's confederated council and matrilineal clan structure, and the Pacific Northwest's potlatch system of status through redistribution, both show that governance and culture varied by region just as much as subsistence strategy did.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Không có một “văn hoá bản địa” duy nhất. Người Pueblo ở Tây Nam làm nông nghiệp thủy lợi trong vùng khô hạn; các dân tộc Đồng bằng lớn vừa săn bison vừa (một số nhóm) làm nông định cư dọc sông; văn hoá Mississippian xây thành phố gò đất Cahokia với dân số đông và phân tầng xã hội; Liên minh Haudenosaunee ở Đông Bắc theo chế độ mẫu hệ với hội đồng liên minh năm dân tộc; các dân tộc Tây Bắc Thái Bình Dương sống định cư nhờ cá hồi dồi dào, thể hiện đẳng cấp qua lễ potlatch. Đề thi AP luôn đánh giá cao câu trả lời phân biệt theo vùng thay vì gộp chung “người bản địa” thành một khối.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not describe “Native Americans” as a single culture, as universally nomadic, or as historically static before 1492. Cahokia's rise and decline, the northward spread of maize agriculture, and shifting confederacies like the Haudenosaunee all show that Native societies had their own dynamic histories of change well before Europeans arrived.

### SAQ model outline

*Prompt: Compare the political organization of TWO Native American societies discussed in this unit, and explain ONE way environment shaped the difference between them.*

(a) The Haudenosaunee Confederacy united five nations under a shared council and matrilineal clan leadership, while Mississippian Cahokia was organized as a stratified chiefdom with a ruling elite atop a dense, mound-centered urban population.

(b) Environment helps explain the contrast: the Northeast's dispersed forest and lake resources rewarded a confederation of relatively autonomous nations bound by shared law, whereas the

Mississippi valley's exceptionally fertile floodplain could support the dense, surplus-producing agriculture that in turn sustained a concentrated urban elite and monumental construction. (c) A strong response would avoid ranking either society as more "advanced" and instead treat both as rational adaptations to distinct environments and histories.

### Bài tập luyện tập

A map of archaeological sites shows a large complex of earthwork mounds at the confluence of the Mississippi, Missouri, and Illinois Rivers, with evidence of long-distance trade goods (copper from the Great Lakes, shell from the Gulf Coast) dated to roughly 1050–1200 CE. Which factor best explains this site's rise as a major population and trade center?

- |                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Its location provided access to fertile floodplain soil and river routes that supported agricultural surplus and long-distance exchange | (C) Its population depended primarily on salmon runs unique to the Pacific coastline |
| (B) Its location on the arid Colorado Plateau required irrigation canals to support any settlement at all                                   | (D) Its economy depended on horse-mounted bison hunting across open grassland        |

### Lời giải chi tiết

This describes Cahokia. Its position at the junction of three major rivers gave it both highly fertile agricultural land and access to extensive trade networks, the combination that produced the population density and long-distance exchange visible in the archaeological record. (B) describes the unrelated Southwest, (C) the Pacific Northwest, and (D) the (later, post-horse) Plains. (A).

### Bài tập luyện tập

An excerpt describing Haudenosaunee governance notes that clan mothers selected and could remove the male chiefs who represented their clans on the confederacy's council. This detail best supports which generalization about Native American political systems before contact?

- |                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) All Native American societies were governed by hereditary kings with absolute authority                                                       | male political power                                                  |
| (B) Political authority and gender roles varied significantly across Native societies, with some incorporating substantial female political power | (C) Women held no formal role in any Native American political system |
| (D) The Haudenosaunee had no organized government prior to European contact                                                                       |                                                                       |

### Lời giải chi tiết

The clan-mother system is a clear counterexample to any assumption that political authority in Native America followed one universal pattern; it shows a matrilineal system in which women exercised real, formal political power. (A) and (D) are contradicted directly by the passage; (C) is disproven by the very detail given. (B).

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Which pairing of a Native American society with an accurate description of its economy is correct?

- (A) Pacific Northwest peoples – settled village life sustained by abundant salmon fishing rather than farming
- (B) Ancestral Puebloans – nomadic bison hunting across open grassland
- (C) Mandan and Hidatsa – exclusively coastal fishing economies
- (D) Haudenosaunee – economy based solely on desert irrigation farming

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Pacific Northwest societies are a textbook example of settled life without agriculture, built instead on the exceptional reliability of salmon runs and other marine resources. The Ancestral Puebloans farmed via irrigation in the arid Southwest, not bison hunting (B is wrong); the Mandan and Hidatsa were interior river-valley farmers and hunters, not coastal (C is wrong); the Haudenosaunee lived in the forested Northeast, not the desert (D is wrong). (A).

**1.2.6 Environmental adaptation compared: bison economies before the horse and the Pacific Northwest potlatch**

Two further examples illustrate how directly environment shaped Native economies and social structures, without dictating a single “correct” way of life. On the Great Plains before horses reached the region in significant numbers – a development of the seventeenth century, spreading northward from Spanish New Mexico – hunters approached bison on foot, using coordinated communal techniques such as driving herds over cliffs (buffalo jumps) or into constructed corral traps (buffalo pounds), and preserved the meat as pemmican (dried meat pounded together with fat and berries) to survive winter shortages; dogs pulling small travois carried modest loads between camps, which limited how far and how quickly bands could relocate. In the Pacific Northwest, by contrast, the extraordinary predictability of seasonal salmon runs, supplemented by halibut, shellfish, and sea mammals, allowed permanent cedar-plank villages to flourish without agriculture at all; the resulting surplus sustained a competitive, redistributive status economy in which hosting a potlatch – publicly giving away or ceremonially destroying accumulated wealth – validated a family’s or chief’s rank far more effectively than simply accumulating goods would have.

**Theme: GEO – Geography and the Environment**

Both cases show environment shaping economy and social structure without determining a single outcome: pedestrian mobility constrained the pre-horse Plains bison economy, while marine abundance made a settled, non-agricultural society possible in the Pacific Northwest. Treat both as sophisticated, rational adaptations to distinct environments, not as points on a ladder from “primitive” to “advanced.”

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Trước khi ngựa lan rộng tới Đồng bằng lớn (một quá trình của thế kỷ XVII, lan dần từ New Mexico thuộc Tây Ban Nha), người bản địa săn bison bằng cách lừa đàn chạy xuống vực (buffalo jump) hoặc vào bẫy rào (buffalo pound), rồi chế biến thịt thành pemmican để dự trữ qua mùa đông; chó kéo travois chỉ chở được ít đồ nên khả năng di chuyển của các nhóm bị giới hạn. Ngược lại, ở Tây Bắc Thái Bình Dương, cá hồi theo mùa dồi dào và ổn định giúp cư dân sống định cư lâu dài trong làng nhà gỗ tuyết tùng mà không cần nông nghiệp, tạo ra nền kinh tế phân phối lại của cái qua lễ potlatch để khẳng định địa vị xã hội.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Before the widespread adoption of the horse, Plains societies hunted bison using techniques such as driving herds over cliffs or into constructed corrals, and relied on dogs to haul modest loads on travois between camps. This evidence best supports which conclusion about pre-horse Plains economies?

- (A) Plains societies could not hunt bison effectively until Spanish horses reached the region
- (B) Plains societies developed effective communal hunting strategies suited to pedestrian mobility long before horses transformed the region
- (C) All Plains societies were entirely sedentary farming communities with no reliance on bison
- (D) Bison hunting began only after sustained contact with English colonists in the seventeenth century

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Buffalo jumps, corral traps, and dog-drawn travois are evidence of a functioning, coordinated bison economy that predated horses, not an absence of effective hunting. Horses later increased mobility and hunting efficiency dramatically, but they did not create the underlying economy from nothing (A is wrong). Some Plains groups, such as the Mandan and Hidatsa, combined hunting with river-valley farming rather than relying on one exclusively (C is wrong), and the horse-based Plains economy traces to Spanish colonization in the Southwest, not to English colonists (D is wrong). (B).

**Bài tập luyện tập**

At a Pacific Northwest potlatch, a host family gave away or ceremonially destroyed large quantities of accumulated goods in front of witnesses from other villages. Which statement best explains the social function of this practice?

- (A) It redistributed material wealth randomly, with no connection to social rank
- (B) It functioned purely as a religious sacrifice with no social or political meaning
- (C) It publicly displayed and validated a family's or chief's status, since only genuine accumulated wealth could sustain such large-scale giving
- (D) It served as a form of taxation collected by a centralized Pacific Northwest government

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The potlatch converted material wealth into social prestige: because only a genuinely wealthy host could afford to give away or destroy large quantities of goods, doing so publicly and repeatedly validated that family's or chief's rank before witnessing communities. It was not random redistribution (A) or a purely religious act divorced from status (B), and Pacific Northwest peoples were organized as independent villages and kin groups rather than under a centralized taxing government (D). (C).

**1.3 European exploration reaches the Americas**

Sustained contact between the Eastern and Western Hemispheres began not because Europe suddenly discovered the will to explore, but because a specific combination of technology, political

consolidation, and economic motive converged in Portugal and then Spain during the fifteenth century.

### 1.3.1 Portugal and the technology of ocean navigation

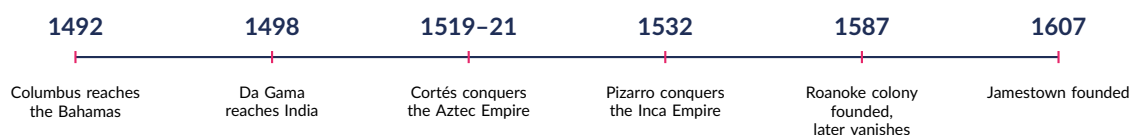
Beginning in the early 1400s, Portuguese sailors backed by Prince Henry “the Navigator” pushed steadily down the West African coast, motivated by the search for gold, enslaved labor, and an eventual sea route to Asian spice markets that would bypass Ottoman and Venetian middlemen controlling overland trade. Portuguese shipwrights developed the **caravel**, a smaller, more maneuverable vessel with lateen (triangular) sails that could sail effectively against the wind, allowing captains to return home against the prevailing currents that had discouraged earlier voyages. Navigators combined this with the **magnetic compass** (transmitted to Europe via the Islamic world, ultimately from China) and the **astrolabe** (adapted from Islamic and ancient Greek astronomy) to determine direction and latitude far from any coastline. Bartolomeu Dias rounded the Cape of Good Hope in 1488, and Vasco da Gama completed the sea route to India in 1498, giving Portugal direct maritime access to Asian trade.

### 1.3.2 Spain funds Columbus

Spain entered the race for an oceanic trade route only after completing the *Reconquista* in 1492, the centuries-long campaign that ended Muslim political rule on the Iberian Peninsula, and after Ferdinand and Isabella expelled or forced the conversion of Spain's Jewish and Muslim populations that same year. Newly unified and flush with royal ambition, the Spanish crown funded the Genoese navigator **Christopher Columbus**, who proposed reaching Asia by sailing west rather than around Africa. Columbus badly underestimated the earth's circumference; on October 12, 1492, his expedition made landfall in the Bahamas, and Columbus insisted to his death in 1506 that he had reached the outer islands of Asia – hence the enduring, inaccurate label “Indians” for the peoples he encountered. A 1494 papal-brokered agreement, the **Treaty of Tordesillas**, divided future claims in the Americas between Spain and Portugal along a north-south line, granting Portugal the territory that became Brazil.

### 1.3.3 Motives: God, Gold, and Glory

Historians commonly summarize European motives for exploration and conquest as **God, Gold, and Glory**: the drive to spread Catholic Christianity (intensified in Spain by the recent triumph of the Reconquista), the pursuit of precious metals and profitable trade goods, and competition among European monarchies for national prestige and personal fame among explorers and conquistadors. These motives operated together rather than separately – a conquistador's letter home might describe extracting gold, converting souls, and winning royal favor all in the same paragraph.



Key milestones of European exploration and conquest, 1492–1607.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Bồ Đào Nha đi tiên phong nhờ tàu caravel, la bàn và kính lục phân thiên văn (astrolabe), vòng qua châu Phi tới Ấn Độ (Vasco da Gama, 1498). Tây Ban Nha, sau khi hoàn tất Reconquista năm 1492, tài trợ cho Columbus đi về hướng tây tìm đường tới châu Á nhưng lại đến vùng Caribbean. Ba động cơ chính của thám hiểm châu Âu là “Chúa – Vàng – Vinh quang”: truyền giáo, tìm kim loại quý/hàng hoá, và giành vinh quang quốc gia.

**Document analysis (HIPP)**

*Excerpt (paraphrased), Christopher Columbus's journal, October 1492:* Columbus describes the people he encountered as gentle and generous, notes that they wear small gold ornaments, and writes that with fifty men he could subjugate the entire population and that they would make good, easily converted servants of the Spanish crown.

**Historical situation:** written during Columbus's first voyage, immediately after landfall, as he searched for evidence of gold and a route to Asia to justify Spanish crown investment. **Intended audience:** primarily King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella, who had funded the voyage and expected a return. **Purpose:** to demonstrate the voyage's value by emphasizing both the presence of gold and the ease with which the population could be controlled and converted. **Point of view:** an interested outsider whose livelihood and reputation depended on the voyage's success – this explains why the passage foregrounds exploitable wealth and vulnerability rather than describing Native societies on their own terms.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not write that “Columbus discovered America.” Native peoples had lived across the hemisphere for thousands of years, and Norse voyagers reached North America around 1000 CE without establishing lasting contact. The historically defensible claim is that Columbus's 1492 voyage began sustained, irreversible contact and exchange between the hemispheres – a very different claim from “discovery.”

**Bài tập luyện tập**

An inventory of fifteenth-century navigational innovations includes the magnetic compass, the astrolabe, and the caravel. These technologies most directly enabled which development?

- (A) The industrialization of European textile production      (C) The permanent abandonment of over-land trade routes to Asia
- (B) Sustained oceanic voyages far from land, including Portugal's route around Africa and Spain's route across the Atlantic      (D) The rapid spread of printing technology across Europe

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Each innovation solved a specific problem of long-distance ocean travel: the caravel allowed ships to sail effectively against the wind and return home, while the compass and astrolabe let navigators hold a course and determine position without sight of land. Together they made possible the sustained transoceanic voyages of Dias, da Gama, and Columbus. (A), (C), and (D) describe unrelated or overstated developments. (B).

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using the Columbus journal excerpt above and your knowledge of Period 1:

- (a) Identify ONE technological development that enabled sustained European transoceanic exploration in the fifteenth century.
- (b) Explain ONE reason Portugal pursued a route around Africa rather than a westward Atlantic route before 1492.
- (c) Explain ONE way Columbus's 1492 voyage, despite failing to reach Asia as intended, changed the trajectory of contact between Europe and the Americas.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The caravel (or the magnetic compass, or the astrolabe) allowed European sailors to navigate and return from long ocean voyages out of sight of land.
- (b) Portugal had already invested decades of exploration and infrastructure in the African coastal route, and by the 1480s had a workable, proven path toward Asian trade around the Cape of Good Hope, giving Spain an incentive to seek an alternative westward route rather than compete directly along the same coastline.
- (c) Although Columbus never reached Asia, his voyage revealed the existence of populated lands unknown to Europeans, triggering a sustained wave of Spanish-funded expeditions, conquest, and colonization that opened the Columbian Exchange and reoriented European ambitions toward the Atlantic world.

## 1.4 The Columbian Exchange and Spanish conquest

### 1.4.1 The Columbian Exchange

The sustained contact that began in 1492 launched the **Columbian Exchange**: the transatlantic transfer of people, plants, animals, and microbes between the Eastern and Western Hemispheres. Its deadliest consequence was biological. Old World diseases such as smallpox, measles, and influenza encountered Native American populations with no prior immunity, and epidemics often spread ahead of European settlers themselves along existing Native trade and travel networks – in the worst-affected regions, population losses over the following century were catastrophic, in many cases removing the great majority of a community before any European had set foot there. In the other direction, American crops including maize, potatoes, tomatoes, and cacao diffused across Afro-Eurasia, where their high caloric yields contributed to population growth in Europe, Africa, and Asia over the following centuries. Old World livestock – horses, cattle, and pigs – and crops such as wheat and sugarcane transformed American landscapes and economies; horses in particular, introduced by Spanish colonizers and diffused northward through Native trading networks over the following two centuries, eventually revolutionized hunting, mobility, and warfare across the Great Plains.

**Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology**

The Columbian Exchange was not simply a transfer of goods – it restructured economies on both sides of the Atlantic. American silver financed European trade with Asia; American food crops supported Afro-Eurasian population growth; and the resulting labor demands in the Americas, driven first by mining and then by plantation agriculture, set the terms for the labor systems (encomienda, then African slavery) covered in the next section.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT****VN**

Trao đổi Columbus (Columbian Exchange) là quá trình trao đổi con người, cây trồng, vật nuôi và mầm bệnh xuyên Đại Tây Dương sau 1492. Bệnh dịch Cựu Thế giới (đậu mùa, sởi, cúm) tàn phá dân số bản địa vì họ chưa có miễn dịch, có nơi mất phần lớn dân số chỉ trong một thế kỷ. Ngược lại, cây trồng châu Mỹ (ngô, khoai tây, cà chua, ca cao) giúp dân số Cựu Thế giới tăng trưởng. Vật nuôi và cây trồng Cựu Thế giới (ngựa, bò, lợn, lúa mì, mía) làm thay đổi hệ sinh thái và kinh tế châu Mỹ – ngựa đặc biệt cách mạng hoá đời sống các dân tộc Đồng bằng lớn.

### 1.4.2 Cortés and the fall of the Aztec Empire

In 1519, Hernán Cortés landed on the Gulf coast of Mexico with a small expedition and marched toward Tenochtitlan, the magnificent island capital of the Aztec (Mexico) Empire. Cortés's success depended less on Spanish numbers than on Native politics: the Aztec Empire ruled through tribute

extracted from many subject peoples, and Cortés exploited their resentment by forging a decisive alliance with the Tlaxcala, longtime rivals of the Aztec. After early setbacks – including a costly retreat known as *La Noche Triste* in 1520 – Cortés’s forces, badly outnumbered, were aided decisively by a smallpox epidemic that swept through Tenochtitlan and killed a large share of its population, including much of the Aztec leadership. In 1521, Cortés and his allies besieged and captured the city, ending the Aztec Empire and founding Mexico City, capital of the new colony of New Spain, on its ruins.

### 1.4.3 Pizarro and the fall of the Inca Empire

A decade later, Francisco Pizarro led a small Spanish force into the Andes, arriving in 1532 in the midst of a recent Inca civil war between rival claimants to the throne, Atahualpa and Huáscar. Pizarro captured Atahualpa at Cajamarca, extracted an enormous ransom in gold and silver for his release, and then had him executed in 1533 regardless. Spanish forces went on to seize the Inca capital of Cusco, though organized Inca resistance continued in remote areas for decades afterward. The conquest opened access to the mineral wealth of the Andes, most famously the silver deposits at Potosí (in present-day Bolivia), whose mining began in the 1540s and helped finance Spain’s power in Europe for generations.

Small Spanish forces toppled two of the largest empires in the Americas through a combination of factors, not through military strength alone: exploitation of existing internal political divisions (Tlaxcala’s resentment of Aztec rule; the Inca civil war), devastating Old World epidemic disease that struck before or during the fighting, and steel weapons, horses, and naval technology that gave tactical advantages in specific engagements.

#### Document analysis (HIPP)

*Excerpt (paraphrased), Bartolomé de las Casas, A Short Account of the Destruction of the Indies (1552):* a Spanish Dominican friar who had lived in the Caribbean describes Spanish colonists working Native laborers to death under the encomienda system and calls on the Spanish crown to intervene.

**Historical situation:** written after decades of documented abuse under encomienda, amid growing religious and legal debate in Spain over the treatment and legal status of Native peoples (including the Valladolid debate of the early 1550s). **Intended audience:** King Charles V (and later Philip II) and the royal court. **Purpose:** to persuade the crown to restrain colonists and reform or abolish encomienda. **Point of view:** a critical insider – a churchman who had personally witnessed colonial labor practices – whose account, while likely exaggerated for rhetorical and reformist effect, remains valuable evidence precisely because he wrote as a participant seeking policy change, not a detached observer.

#### SAQ model outline

*Prompt: Explain ONE cause and ONE effect of the Columbian Exchange on the Americas in the period 1491–1607.*

- (a) Cause: sustained transatlantic contact after 1492 brought Europeans, and through them Old World crops, livestock, and pathogens, into regular exchange with American ecosystems and populations for the first time.
- (b) Effect: Old World epidemic disease caused catastrophic Native population decline, which both weakened Native societies’ capacity to resist conquest (as at Tenochtitlan in 1521) and, later, drove Spanish colonizers to seek alternative labor sources, including enslaved Africans.
- (c) A strong response links cause directly to effect with a clear “because” statement rather than

simply listing two unconnected facts.

### Bài tập luyện tập

A chart of the Columbian Exchange lists smallpox, measles, and influenza moving from the Eastern to the Western Hemisphere, and maize, potatoes, and tomatoes moving from the Western to the Eastern Hemisphere. Which of the following best explains the differing severity of the biological exchange in each direction?

- (A) American crops caused population decline in Afro-Eurasia just as severe as disease did in the Americas
- (B) Native American populations lacked prior immunity to Old World pathogens, while Afro-Eurasian populations did not face comparable new diseases from the Americas
- (C) Old World diseases had no significant effect on Native American population levels
- (D) American crops failed to grow successfully anywhere outside the Americas

### Lời giải chi tiết

The asymmetry is biological: centuries of shared exposure across Afro-Eurasia had already exposed those populations to diseases like smallpox, while Native Americans, isolated from those pathogens, had no such immunity, making the disease exchange devastating in one direction only. The crop exchange, by contrast, was overwhelmingly beneficial nutritionally rather than lethal. (A), (C), and (D) all misstate the actual pattern of the exchange. **(B)**.

### Bài tập luyện tập

An excerpt from a conquistador's account describes thousands of Tlaxcala warriors joining Cortés's small Spanish force against the Aztec Empire in 1519–1521. This detail best supports which explanation for the rapid fall of Tenochtitlan?

- (A) Cortés succeeded primarily because his force vastly outnumbered Aztec defenders
- (B) Cortés exploited existing resentment among Aztec tributary peoples, gaining Native allies who provided the majority of his fighting force
- (C) The Aztec Empire had no organized military resistance to offer
- (D) Spanish steel weapons alone were sufficient to defeat the Aztec Empire without Native assistance

### Lời giải chi tiết

The passage's key detail – thousands of Tlaxcala warriors – shows that Spanish victory depended heavily on exploiting divisions within the Aztec tributary system, not on Spanish numbers or technology alone. Spanish forces were, in fact, a small minority of the combined army. (A), (C), and (D) all overstate Spanish self-sufficiency and ignore the decisive role of Native alliance politics. **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using the las Casas excerpt above and your knowledge of Period 1:

- (a) Describe the point of view Bartolomé de las Casas expresses toward Spanish treatment of Native laborers.
- (b) Explain ONE way the *encomienda* system functioned within the Spanish colonial economy.
- (c) Explain ONE consequence of the labor demands and disease described in sources like this for the Spanish colonial labor system over the following century.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Las Casas expresses outrage and moral condemnation, portraying Spanish colonists as brutally exploiting Native laborers and urging the crown to intervene on the laborers' behalf.
- (b) *Encomienda* allowed the crown to reward conquistadors and settlers without direct royal expenditure by granting them rights to Native tribute and labor, which financed mining and agricultural production across Spanish America.
- (c) As Native labor forces collapsed under disease and the demands described by las Casas, colonists increasingly turned to the forced labor of enslaved Africans, expanding the Atlantic slave trade and laying the foundation for plantation slavery across the Americas.

## 1.5 Labor, slavery, and caste in Spanish America

### 1.5.1 The *encomienda* system

Spain built its American empire on coerced Native labor. Under the ***encomienda* system**, the crown granted individual colonists (*encomenderos*) the right to demand tribute and labor from a specified Native community, in theory in exchange for providing protection and Christian instruction. In practice, *encomenderos* frequently worked laborers to death in mines and fields with little regard for the system's stated obligations. The ***Requerimiento*** (1513), a legal document Spanish forces were required to read aloud to Native peoples – often in Spanish, incomprehensible to its listeners – demanded submission to the Spanish crown and the Catholic Church and declared subsequent war justified if it was refused. Critics within the Church, including the friar Antonio de Montesinos in a 1511 sermon and later Bartolomé de las Casas, condemned these abuses, and the crown's New Laws of 1542 attempted to curb the worst practices and phase out inheritable *encomienda* grants – though colonist resistance meant enforcement remained inconsistent for decades.

### 1.5.2 The introduction of African slave labor

As Native populations collapsed from epidemic disease and forced labor, and as reformers – backed in part by the papal bull *Sublimis Deus* (1537), which declared Native peoples rational beings possessing souls who should not be enslaved – pressed to restrict the exploitation of Native labor, Spanish colonists turned increasingly to enslaved Africans to fill the resulting labor shortage. Beginning in the early 1500s, enslaved Africans were transported to Spanish Caribbean colonies, particularly for labor-intensive sugar cultivation, marking the early expansion of the Atlantic slave trade into the Americas – a system that Portugal's Brazilian sugar colonies would soon adopt on an even larger scale, and that would come to define plantation economies across the hemisphere for centuries.

### 1.5.3 The *casta* hierarchy

Spanish colonial society organized itself into an elaborate racial and social hierarchy known as the ***casta* system**. ***Peninsulares*** (born in Spain) sat at the top, monopolizing the highest colonial offices. ***Criollos*** (creoles: people of Spanish descent born in the Americas) held considerable wealth and local status but were legally barred from the top tier of government – a resentment that would help fuel independence movements centuries later. ***Mestizos*** (of mixed Spanish and Native ancestry) and

**mulattoes** (of mixed Spanish and African ancestry) occupied intermediate ranks, while Native peoples and enslaved Africans sat at the bottom of the formal hierarchy. Unlike the increasingly rigid black-white binary that would later characterize English colonial slavery, Spanish America institutionalized a graduated, multi-tiered racial hierarchy that structured legal status, economic opportunity, and social prestige for the entire colonial period.

### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

The *casta* hierarchy shows how conquest produced not just new territory but a new, legally codified social order – one that ranked people by birthplace and ancestry to determine access to office, land, and status. Comparing this system to the labor and racial systems that developed in French and English colonies is a recurring comparison prompt on the AP exam.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Hệ thống *encomienda* cho phép thực dân Tây Ban Nha cưỡng bức lao động và cống nạp từ cộng đồng bản địa, danh nghĩa để “bảo vệ” và truyền giáo nhưng thực chất rất tàn bạo. Khi dân số bản địa sụp đổ vì bệnh dịch và lao động khổ sai, thực dân bắt đầu nhập khẩu nô lệ người Phi từ đầu thế kỷ XVI, đặc biệt cho đồn điền mía ở Caribbean. Xã hội thuộc địa Tây Ban Nha phân theo hệ thống đẳng cấp (*casta*): *peninsulares* (sinh ở Tây Ban Nha) đứng đầu, *creoles* (gốc Tây Ban Nha sinh ở châu Mỹ) giàu nhưng bị hạn chế quyền lực, *mestizos* (lai Tây Ban Nha–bản địa) ở giữa, người bản địa và nô lệ châu Phi ở đáy.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** *Encomienda* was not, legally, identical to chattel slavery – Native laborers under *encomienda* were technically free subjects owed protection, not owned property. In practice, however, forced labor, violence, and mortality under *encomienda* were often just as severe as under slavery. On the exam, describe *encomienda* accurately as a distinct legal system while still explaining its brutal practical effects, rather than treating the two systems as simply interchangeable.

### Document analysis (HIPP)

*Excerpt (paraphrased), an early sixteenth-century encomienda grant issued by a Spanish colonial governor:* the document assigns a named Spanish colonist authority over a specified Native community, obligating him to instruct them in Christianity and defend them, in exchange for their labor and tribute.

**Historical situation:** issued during the early consolidation of Spanish colonial administration in the Caribbean and New Spain, when the crown relied on *encomienda* grants to reward conquistadors without direct royal expenditure. **Intended audience:** the colonist receiving the grant, and colonial administrators enforcing it. **Purpose:** to formalize a colonist’s legal claim to Native labor and tribute while presenting the arrangement as reciprocal and protective. **Point of view:** an official administrative document written from the colonizer’s perspective – useful precisely because its formal, legalistic language of “protection” can be directly contrasted with accounts like *las Casas*’s to reveal the gap between *encomienda*’s stated purpose and its practical effects.

### Bài tập luyện tập

A description of Spanish colonial society identifies four ranked categories: *peninsulares*, *criollos*, *mestizos*, and enslaved Africans and Native peoples. A colonist’s placement in the top category, *peninsular* status, was based primarily on which factor?

- (A) Personal wealth alone, regardless of birthplace      American colonies  
(C) Religious conversion status only  
(B) Birth in Spain itself, rather than in the      (D) Military rank held during conquest

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Peninsular status was defined specifically by birth in Spain itself; even wealthy, devout, militarily distinguished colonists of Spanish descent who were born in the Americas (criollos) were legally excluded from the top tier of colonial office. This birthplace-based distinction, not wealth, religion, or military service alone, structured access to the highest positions in Spanish colonial government. **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

By the mid-sixteenth century, Spanish Caribbean sugar plantations increasingly relied on enslaved African laborers rather than encomienda-based Native labor. Which factor best explains this shift?

- (A) Native peoples volunteered to be replaced by enslaved Africans      slave trade  
(B) Catastrophic Native population decline from disease and forced labor, combined with rising demand for plantation labor, pushed colonists toward the Atlantic      (C) The Spanish crown had fully abolished the encomienda system by this date  
(D) African laborers had always been the exclusive labor source in Spanish America

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Native labor forces shrank drastically from disease and the punishing conditions of encomienda, while the sugar economy demanded a large, stable workforce; the resulting gap was filled by enslaved Africans transported through the expanding Atlantic slave trade. Encomienda persisted in modified form well beyond this period (C is wrong), and (A) and (D) misstate both consent and chronology. **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập****Short-answer question (SAQ style).**

- (a) Define the encomienda system in one or two sentences.  
(b) Explain ONE reason encomienda-based Native labor was gradually supplemented or replaced by enslaved African labor in parts of Spanish America during this period.  
(c) Explain ONE long-term social consequence of the casta hierarchy for Spanish colonial society.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Encomienda was a system in which the Spanish crown granted colonists the right to demand tribute and labor from a specified Native community, nominally in exchange for protection and religious instruction.  
(b) Severe Native population decline from disease and forced labor created a labor shortage that Spanish colonists, especially on labor-intensive Caribbean sugar plantations, increasingly filled with enslaved Africans transported through the Atlantic slave trade.

(c) The *casta* hierarchy institutionalized unequal access to political office, land, and social status based on birthplace and ancestry for the entire colonial period, embedding a rigid racial ranking (with creole resentment of peninsular privilege in particular) that shaped Spanish American society long after conquest.

## 1.6 Comparing colonial models: Spain, Portugal, France, and England

Although Spain's conquest-and-extraction model dominates the early narrative of Period 1, it was only one of several distinct approaches European powers took toward the Americas – differences in each empire's economic goals, available population, and relationship to Native peoples produced markedly different colonial societies.

### 1.6.1 Portugal: trade posts and plantation slavery

Portugal's American colony, Brazil (claimed under the Treaty of Tordesillas), grew out of a broader Portuguese strategy of establishing fortified trading posts (*feitorias*) along the coasts of Africa and Asia to control commerce in gold, spices, and enslaved people rather than pursuing extensive inland settlement. In Brazil specifically, Portuguese colonists developed a plantation economy centered on sugarcane, and as with Spanish Caribbean colonies, that economy came to rely overwhelmingly on enslaved African labor – over the following centuries, Portuguese Brazil would become the single largest destination in the entire Atlantic slave trade.

### 1.6.2 Portugal and the roots of the Atlantic slave trade

Portugal's role in the Atlantic slave trade began well before Brazilian colonization. Portuguese ships had already been transporting enslaved Africans along the West African coast since the 1440s, and by the final decades of the fifteenth century, Portugal had colonized the previously uninhabited island of São Tomé, off the West African coast, where colonists combined sugarcane cultivation with a permanent enslaved labor force – an early prototype for the sugar-and-slavery complex later transplanted to Brazil. When Portuguese settlers established sugar plantations and mills (*engenhos*) along the Brazilian coast beginning in the 1530s, they scaled up this existing model dramatically rather than inventing it from nothing; by the end of the colonial era, more enslaved Africans had been transported to Brazil than to any other single destination in the Americas, a trajectory already underway as Brazilian sugar cultivation expanded through the second half of the sixteenth century.

Brazil ultimately received the largest share of all enslaved Africans carried across the Atlantic of any single American destination – a pattern rooted in the sugar-and-slavery model Portugal had already tested on São Tomé decades before Brazilian colonization began.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Bồ Đào Nha đã vận chuyển nô lệ người Phi dọc bờ biển Tây Phi từ những năm 1440, sớm hơn nhiều so với việc thực dân hoá Brazil. Cuối thế kỷ XV, Bồ Đào Nha chiếm đảo São Tomé và kết hợp trồng mía với lao động nô lệ thường trực – mô hình thử nghiệm sớm cho hệ thống được nhân rộng ở Brazil từ những năm 1530. Đến cuối thời kỳ thuộc địa, Brazil là nơi tiếp nhận số lượng nô lệ châu Phi lớn nhất trong toàn châu Mỹ.

### Bài tập luyện tập

Portuguese ships began transporting enslaved Africans along the West African coast in the 1440s, and Portuguese colonists had already combined sugar cultivation with enslaved labor on the island of São Tomé by the early sixteenth century, decades before establishing sugar plantations in Brazil. This sequence best supports which conclusion?

- (A) The Brazilian sugar-and-slavery complex was an entirely new invention with no precedent elsewhere in the Portuguese empire
- (B) Portugal's Brazilian plantation system extended a slave-trading and plantation model Portugal had already developed along the West African coast and its islands
- (C) Portugal did not participate in the Atlantic slave trade until after Spanish colonization of the Caribbean
- (D) Enslaved labor in colonial Brazil was used exclusively for mining rather than agriculture

### Lời giải chi tiết

The chronology – West African slave trading from the 1440s, the São Tomé sugar-and-slavery model soon after, then Brazilian sugar engenhos from the 1530s – shows that Brazil's system extended an existing Portuguese pattern rather than representing an isolated invention (A is wrong). Portuguese involvement in the slave trade began well before Spanish Caribbean colonization (C is wrong), and Brazil's enslaved labor was concentrated in sugar agriculture, not mining, which was more characteristic of Spanish America (D is wrong). **(B)**.

### 1.6.3 France: the fur trade and Native alliances

French exploration of North America, including Jacques Cartier's voyages up the St. Lawrence River in the 1530s, led to the founding of "New France," but sustained French settlement remained small and slow to grow. France's colonial economy centered on the highly profitable **fur trade**, particularly beaver pelts, which required maintaining cooperative relationships with Native hunting and trading partners such as the Huron (Wendat) and various Algonquian-speaking peoples. French traders known as *coureurs de bois* often lived among Native communities and intermarried with them, while Catholic (particularly Jesuit) missionaries proselytized alongside, rather than displacing, existing Native political structures during this early period. The result was a colonial relationship built comparatively more on alliance and exchange than on conquest and land seizure.

### 1.6.4 England's false start: Roanoke

England entered American colonization later than Spain, Portugal, or France, and its first attempt was privately funded rather than crown-directed. In 1585, Sir Walter Raleigh sponsored a military garrison on Roanoke Island, off the coast of present-day North Carolina; poorly supplied and in conflict with nearby Native communities, the colonists returned to England in 1586. A second attempt in 1587, led by John White and including entire families, produced Virginia Dare, the first English child born in the Americas. White returned to England for additional supplies but was delayed for several years by the Anglo-Spanish War, including the 1588 Spanish Armada crisis. When he finally returned in 1590, the colony had vanished entirely, leaving only the word "CROATOAN" carved into a post; the fate of the colonists has never been definitively resolved, and Roanoke is remembered as the "Lost Colony." Its failure exposed the risks of small, underfunded private ventures and pushed England toward a new financing model – the joint-stock company, which pooled investment and spread risk among many shareholders – the model that funded the Virginia Company's successful colony at **Jamestown in 1607**, the event that closes Period 1.

| Power             | Primary motive / activity                               | Labor system                                                        | Relations with Native peoples                             |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Spain             | Conquest, conversion, silver/gold extraction            | Encomienda, then increasing use of enslaved Africans                | Coercive conquest; caste hierarchy; missions              |
| Portugal          | Trade-post empire; Brazilian sugar plantations          | Overwhelmingly enslaved African labor                               | Limited inland settlement; slave-based plantations        |
| France            | Profitable fur trade                                    | Small settler population; Native hunters/trappers as trade partners | Cooperative alliances; intermarriage                      |
| England (to 1607) | Private-venture settlement, later joint-stock companies | Small, underfunded colonies (labor systems not yet fixed)           | Sporadic, often unstable contact; Roanoke failed entirely |

Comparing European colonial models in the Americas before 1607.

### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

Each empire's colonial administration reflected its priorities: Spain built a centralized viceregal bureaucracy to govern conquered territory and extracted wealth; Portugal administered scattered trading posts and plantation captaincies; France relied on a thin layer of royal and commercial authority atop extensive Native alliance networks; and England, still without a permanent American foothold by 1600, had not yet settled on any single colonial administrative model at all.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Bồ Đào Nha xây dựng hệ thống thương điểm dọc bờ biển và đồn điền mía ở Brazil dựa vào lao động nô lệ châu Phi. Pháp ưu tiên buôn bán lông thú, quan hệ hợp tác và hôn nhân với đối tác bản địa. Anh đến muộn nhất: thuộc địa Roanoke (1587) do tư nhân tài trợ đã biến mất bí ẩn năm 1590 ("Thuộc địa đã mất"), khiến Anh chuyển sang mô hình công ty cổ phần (joint-stock company) – mô hình sau này tài trợ thành công cho Jamestown năm 1607, khép lại Period 1.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not confuse Roanoke (1587, vanished by 1590) with Jamestown (1607, the first *permanent* English colony). Roanoke was a failure that ended English colonization's first attempt; Jamestown, founded twenty years later under a different financing model, is the event that actually opens continuous English settlement in Period 2.

### LEQ thesis model

**Prompt:** Evaluate the extent to which the labor and settlement systems of Spanish and French colonization in the Americas differed in the period 1491–1607.

**Thesis:** While both Spain and France sought profit from their American colonies, Spain built its empire on coercive conquest and forced labor of Native and enslaved African peoples, whereas France relied on small-scale trade partnerships that depended on cooperative alliance with Native peoples, producing sharply different colonial societies by 1607.

**Paragraph 1:** Spain's conquest of the Aztec and Inca Empires (1521, 1532) established direct territorial control, enforced through encomienda and later African slavery.

**Paragraph 2:** France's fur-trade economy required maintaining, not destroying, Native political and economic networks, producing intermarriage and alliance rather than conquest.

**Paragraph 3 (complexity):** Despite this contrast, both empires ultimately depended on Native knowledge, labor, or trade goods for profit, showing that even the more "cooperative" French model still rested on the extraction of American wealth for a European market.

### DBQ thesis model

*Prompt: Using the documents (a las Casas critique of encomienda, a description of Jesuit missionary relations with Native trading partners in New France, and the 1606 Virginia Company charter authorizing a joint-stock settlement), evaluate the extent to which European colonial models in the Americas before 1607 depended on different systems of labor and settlement.*

**Thesis:** Spanish, French, and English colonization before 1607 rested on three distinct foundations – coerced Native and African labor for Spain, negotiated trade partnership for France, and speculative commercial investment for England – reflecting each empire's differing access to conquered territory, existing trade relationships, and capital.

Group the las Casas document with Spanish encomienda/conquest content; group the Jesuit-relations document with France's alliance-based fur trade; and use the Virginia Company charter to show England's shift toward joint-stock financing after Roanoke's failure – then add outside evidence (e.g., the casta hierarchy, or Cortés's alliance with Tlaxcala) to extend each grouping beyond the documents themselves.

### Bài tập luyện tập

A map contrasts scattered French fur-trading posts along the St. Lawrence River with concentrated Spanish mining towns in central Mexico and the Andes around 1600. This contrast best supports which explanation of the two empires' differing relations with Native peoples?

- (A) France's economy depended on cooperative trade relationships with Native hunters and trappers, while Spain's mining economy depended on coerced Native and enslaved labor
- (B) Spain avoided contact with Native peoples entirely, while France pursued military conquest of Native territory
- (C) Both empires relied identically on enslaved African labor for their core industries
- (D) France's colonies had significantly larger European populations than Spain's by 1600

### Lời giải chi tiết

The economic base of each empire explains the pattern on the map: France's profit depended on Native partners continuing to hunt and trade furs, which rewarded alliance, while Spain's profit depended on extracting labor from mines, which rewarded coercion and control over Native and, increasingly, enslaved African workers. (B), (C), and (D) all misstate the historical record. (A).

### Bài tập luyện tập

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of the Roanoke colony (1587–1590):

- (a) Describe ONE characteristic of England's early colonization effort illustrated by the Roanoke colony.
- (b) Explain ONE reason England lagged behind Spain and Portugal in establishing a permanent American colony before 1607.
- (c) Explain ONE way the Roanoke experience shaped England's later, successful colonization strategy.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Roanoke shows that England's first colonization attempt was privately funded, poorly supplied, and vulnerable to disruption – the colony disappeared entirely between resupply voyages, leaving only the word “CROATOAN” as a clue.
- (b) England lacked the centralized crown funding and decades of prior Atlantic experience that Spain and Portugal had built up since the early 1400s, and it entered the competition only after those empires had already established profitable colonies; England's efforts were also disrupted by conflict with Spain, including the 1588 Armada crisis.
- (c) Roanoke's failure demonstrated the danger of relying on a single private patron for funding, pushing England toward the joint-stock company model that pooled investment among many shareholders – the financing structure that successfully supported the Virginia Company's colony at Jamestown in 1607.

### Document analysis (HIPP)

*Excerpt (paraphrased), Bernal Díaz del Castillo, The True History of the Conquest of New Spain (written decades after 1519–21, published later):* a soldier who marched with Cortés recalls his first view of Tenochtitlan's causeways, temples, and crowded markets, writing that some soldiers wondered whether what they saw was real, comparing the city's splendor to the enchanted things described in a popular romance novel of the time.

**Historical situation:** written by an aging veteran of the conquest decades later, partly to supplement more famous accounts (such as Cortés's own letters) that Díaz felt understated the common soldiers' role. **Intended audience:** Spanish readers, including the crown and a broader public interested in the conquest. **Purpose:** to record a firsthand, participant's memory of the conquest and to assert the ordinary soldiers' contribution to its success. **Point of view:** a Spanish participant recalling the event many years afterward, so the account should be read as memory shaped by decades of hindsight and personal motive to justify his own role – yet its description of Tenochtitlan's scale still stands as valuable contemporary evidence of Mesoamerican urban sophistication, since Díaz had no motive to exaggerate a Native city's grandeur.

### Bài tập luyện tập

A conquistador who marched with Cortés recalled first seeing Tenochtitlan's causeways, temples, and markets and wrote that some soldiers wondered whether the city was real, comparing it to enchanted scenes from a popular romance novel. Which historical development does this account most directly help illustrate?

- (A) Aztec and other Mesoamerican societies had developed large, complex urban centers well before Spanish contact
- (B) The Aztec Empire had no cities or organized markets prior to Spanish arrival
- (C) Spanish conquistadors were entirely unimpressed by Mesoamerican urban achievements
- (D) Tenochtitlan was smaller and less developed than contemporary Spanish cities

**Lời giải chi tiết**

A Spanish soldier's genuine astonishment at Tenochtitlan's scale and sophistication is strong contemporary evidence that the city was large, orderly, and impressive by any standard the writer knew – directly undercutting any notion that Mesoamerica lacked complex urban civilization before contact. (B), (C), and (D) all contradict the substance and tone of the account. (A).

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not describe the Aztec or Inca Empires as simple or lacking sophistication before conquest. Both governed large populations through complex tributary, administrative, and urban systems – Tenochtitlan itself may have held well over 100,000 residents at contact, larger than most European cities of the time. Spanish victory resulted from allied politics and disease, not from confronting a technologically or organizationally primitive society.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Colonial Spanish American society developed specific, named categories for particular combinations of ancestry – for example, mestizo for Spanish-Native parentage and mulatto for Spanish-African parentage – categories later catalogued in colonial “casta” paintings depicting dozens of such combinations. The existence of this elaborate naming system best illustrates which feature of Spanish colonial society?

- (A) Spanish colonial society recognized only two racial categories, Spanish and non-Spanish
- (B) Spanish colonial authorities and society attached detailed, formalized significance to gradations of mixed ancestry, well beyond a simple binary
- (C) Mixed-ancestry individuals held the same legal and social status as peninsulares
- (D) Ancestry played no role in determining legal or social status in Spanish America

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The proliferation of specific, named categories for particular ancestral combinations – far more elaborate than a simple Spanish/non-Spanish binary – shows how thoroughly Spanish colonial society codified gradations of mixed ancestry as markers of legal and social status. (A) and (D) understate the system's complexity and its real consequences, and (C) misstates the hierarchy, in which peninsulares (and, to a lesser degree, criollos) alone held the top legal and political status. (B).

**Theme: WOR – America in the World**

Comparing Spain, Portugal, France, and England side by side reveals that no single “European” approach to colonization existed: each empire's system grew out of its own combination of prior Atlantic experience, the wealth and population of the territory it encountered, and the

labor its economic goals required. On synthesis and comparison questions, always tie the difference in outcome back to a specific difference in cause – conquered empire versus trading partner versus underfunded private venture – rather than describing the four empires in isolation.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

So sánh Tây Ban Nha, Bồ Đào Nha, Pháp và Anh cho thấy không có một mô hình thực dân “châu Âu” chung: mỗi đế chế phát triển hệ thống riêng dựa trên kinh nghiệm Đại Tây Dương trước đó, sự giàu có/dân số của vùng đất họ gặp, và nhu cầu lao động của mục tiêu kinh tế. Khi làm câu hỏi so sánh, luôn gắn sự khác biệt về kết quả với một nguyên nhân cụ thể thay vì chỉ mô tả bốn đế chế riêng lẻ.

### Bài tập luyện tập

#### Short-answer question (SAQ style).

- (a) Explain ONE reason Spain’s colonial system relied more heavily on coerced labor and direct territorial conquest than France’s did in this period.
- (b) Explain ONE reason Portugal’s Brazilian colony developed a plantation-slavery economy more similar to the Spanish Caribbean than to French North America.
- (c) Explain ONE reason England, unlike Spain and Portugal, had not established a permanent American colony by the end of Period 1.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Spain’s early conquest of large, wealthy, densely populated empires (the Aztec and Inca) gave it both the motive – mineral wealth and tribute-paying populations – and the opportunity to impose direct territorial control and forced labor, while France’s small settler population depended on trading for furs, which required preserving rather than conquering Native political and economic networks.
- (b) Like Spain’s Caribbean colonies, Portuguese Brazil developed a tropical plantation export economy (sugar) that demanded a large, stable, coerced labor force; Portugal had already tested this plantation-and-slavery model on Atlantic islands such as São Tomé before applying it in Brazil, whereas France’s northern fur-trade economy required no comparable plantation labor system.
- (c) England lacked the sustained crown investment, decades of prior Atlantic navigational experience, and centralized funding that Spain and Portugal had accumulated since the early 1400s; its first private venture at Roanoke failed from poor supply and conflict with nearby Native communities, and renewed conflict with Spain, including the 1588 Armada crisis, further delayed English colonization until the joint-stock Virginia Company’s Jamestown venture in 1607.

## Period 2 --- Colonial North America (1607--1754)

**Mục tiêu Unit:** Nắm vững quá trình hình thành 13 thuộc địa Anh từ Jamestown (1607) đến Georgia (1732); phân biệt đặc điểm kinh tế – xã hội – tôn giáo của ba vùng thuộc địa (New England, Middle Colonies, Chesapeake/miền Nam); hiểu chủ nghĩa trọng thương và hệ thống Đạo luật Hàng hải; phân tích các cuộc xung đột giữa người bản địa và thực dân châu Âu (chiến tranh Powhatan, Pequot, Vua Philip, cuộc nổi dậy Pueblo); giải thích quá trình chuyển đổi từ lao động khế ước sang chế độ nô lệ chủng tộc suốt đời với Bacon's Rebellion (1676) là bản lề nhân quả; và đánh giá ảnh hưởng của Đại Tỉnh thức và tư tưởng Khai sáng đến sự phát triển của chính quyền tự trị thuộc địa.

### 2.1 Contextualizing Period 2

By 1607, England had already failed once to plant a permanent American colony (the “Lost Colony” of Roanoke, 1587), but it resumed colonization with sharper strategic motives and a new financial tool. Rivalry with Catholic Spain, a desire to match Spanish American silver wealth, and a domestic class of merchants and gentry willing to risk capital on overseas ventures combined to relaunch English colonization. Between 1607 and 1754, England – after 1707, Great Britain – planted thirteen mainland colonies stretching from Massachusetts to Georgia. These colonies were never a single, uniform society: settlers’ motives, the environments they encountered, and the labor systems they built diverged sharply by region, producing three broadly distinct colonial worlds – New England, the Middle Colonies, and the Chesapeake/Southern colonies – that nonetheless remained bound together, and to Britain, by a shared (if unevenly enforced) system of trade law, English common law, and Protestant culture.

#### Theme: GEO – Geography and the Environment

Regional geography set the outer limits of what each colonial economy could become: New England’s rocky soil and short growing season pushed settlers toward fishing, shipbuilding, and Atlantic trade rather than large-scale export agriculture; the Chesapeake’s mild climate and fertile tidewater lowlands suited labor-intensive tobacco; and the Lowcountry’s coastal swamps were ideally suited to rice, a crop many enslaved West Africans already knew how to cultivate. Always connect a colony’s economy back to its physical environment when explaining regional difference on the exam.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Giai đoạn 1607–1754, nước Anh (từ 1707 là Vương quốc Anh) thành lập 13 thuộc địa dọc bờ Đông Bắc Mỹ. Đây không phải một xã hội đồng nhất: động cơ định cư, môi trường tự nhiên và hệ thống lao động khác nhau đã tạo ra ba vùng thuộc địa khác biệt rõ rệt – New England, Middle Colonies, và Chesapeake/miền Nam – dù tất cả đều gắn với nước Anh qua luật thương mại và văn hoá Tin Lành chung.

**Three regional starting points:** Virginia (1607) was founded for commercial profit by a joint-stock company; Plymouth (1620) and Massachusetts Bay (1630) were founded for religious community; Pennsylvania (1681) combined religious toleration with commercial opportunity. Keep these founding motives straight – they are the root cause of almost every regional difference tested on the exam.

### Bài tập luyện tập

A historian argues that “no single motive explains English colonization; investors, religious dissenters, and proprietors each pursued distinct goals that produced distinct colonial societies.” Which pairing of a colony with its founding motive best illustrates this claim?

- |                                                                                                          |                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Virginia – founded by religious Separatists seeking to build a “city upon a hill”                    | (C) Pennsylvania – founded purely as a military buffer against Spanish Florida    |
| (B) Massachusetts Bay – founded by Puritans seeking to build a model, self-governing religious community | (D) Georgia – founded exclusively as a profit-seeking joint-stock trading company |

### Lời giải chi tiết

Massachusetts Bay (1630) was founded by Puritans under John Winthrop, who explicitly framed the colony as a model godly community, “a city upon a hill.” Virginia (A) was founded for commercial profit by the Virginia Company, not by Separatists (that description fits Plymouth, not Virginia); Pennsylvania (C) was founded for religious toleration and profit, and the military-buffer motive instead describes Georgia; Georgia (D) was a trustee-governed colony founded for strategic and philanthropic reasons, not as a joint-stock company like early Virginia. (B).

## 2.2 Motives for English colonization and the joint-stock company

England’s colonization was financed largely through the **joint-stock company**, a business innovation in which investors pooled capital and shared risk in exchange for a share of eventual profit – a structure that let England colonize without the crown itself funding an expensive, uncertain venture. The **Virginia Company of London**, chartered by King James I in 1606, financed the expedition that founded **Jamestown** in May 1607, England’s first permanent mainland colony.

Jamestown nearly failed. Many of the first settlers were gentlemen unaccustomed to manual labor who prioritized searching for gold over planting food; disease, poor water sources, conflict with the neighboring Powhatan Confederacy, and famine devastated the colony. The winter of 1609–1610, remembered as the “starving time,” saw the population collapse from several hundred to roughly sixty. The colony’s fortunes turned only after **John Rolfe** began cultivating a sweeter, more exportable strain of tobacco around 1612; by the 1620s tobacco exports had made Virginia commercially viable, though at the cost of an intense, land-hungry, labor-hungry plantation economy. In 1619 the Virginia Company authorized the **House of Burgesses**, the first elected representative legislative assembly in English America – a landmark in the growth of colonial self-government, even though the vast majority of Virginia’s population (women, servants, and, increasingly, the enslaved) had no voice in it. The Virginia Company’s chronic mismanagement and staggering mortality among settlers led the crown to revoke its charter in 1624, making Virginia England’s first **royal colony**, governed directly by the crown rather than by a private company.

**Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology**

The joint-stock company was the financial technology that made large-scale English colonization possible: by spreading the enormous risk of a failed colony – and Jamestown very nearly did fail – across many investors, it let England compete with state-funded Spanish and Portuguese colonization without the crown itself bearing the up-front cost.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Công ty cổ phần (joint-stock company), cụ thể là Virginia Company (thành lập 1606), là công cụ tài chính giúp nước Anh thực dân hoá mà không cần triều đình bỏ vốn trực tiếp – nhà đầu tư góp vốn và chia sẻ rủi ro. Jamestown (1607) suýt thất bại vì đói kém và bệnh tật, chỉ được cứu nhờ cây thuốc lá của John Rolfe (từ 1612). Hội đồng Burgesses (1619) là cơ quan lập pháp dân cử đầu tiên ở Bắc Mỹ thuộc Anh. Công ty Virginia giải thể năm 1624, Virginia trở thành thuộc địa hoàng gia (royal colony).

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Students often assume Virginia was a royal colony – directly ruled by the crown – from its founding in 1607. In fact Virginia began as a *private, profit-seeking joint-stock company venture*; it became a royal colony only in 1624, after the Virginia Company's charter was revoked. Do not conflate "England colonized Virginia" with "the English crown directly governed Virginia from the start."

**HIPP source analysis**

*Excerpt (paraphrased), Captain John Smith, The Generall Historie of Virginia (1624):* Smith complains that too many of the first colonists were "gentlemen" unused to labor, more interested in searching for gold than planting corn, and argues that strict work discipline ("he that will not work shall not eat") was needed to save the colony.

**Historical situation:** written years after the events described, as Smith – a former colony leader – sought to shape the historical record and defend his own leadership. **Intended audience:** an English reading public and potential future investors or colonists. **Purpose:** to explain Jamestown's early near-collapse and to justify strict labor discipline as the solution. **Point of view:** a former colonial governor with a personal stake in appearing as the colony's savior – useful for explaining *why* Jamestown struggled (unrealistic expectations of easy wealth, poor labor discipline) but should be read critically, since Smith had reason to exaggerate others' failures and inflate his own role.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

*Excerpt (paraphrased), a Virginia Company promotional pamphlet, c. 1609:* the pamphlet describes Virginia's climate as healthful and its soil as certain to yield great riches to any Englishman willing to settle there. What was the primary purpose of such promotional literature?

- |                                                                                                                  |                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) To warn potential colonists honestly about the dangers of the "starving time"                                | (C) To announce Virginia's transition to royal colony status in 1624   |
| (B) To attract investors and settlers by advertising Virginia's commercial potential, often in exaggerated terms | (D) To formally establish the House of Burgesses as a legislative body |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Virginia Company pamphlets were fundraising and recruitment tools: because the company needed both capital from investors and labor from settlers, its literature emphasized the colony's promise while minimizing or omitting its very real dangers. It was not an honest warning (A is the opposite of the genre's purpose), and it predates and is unrelated to the 1624 royal takeover (C) and the 1619 House of Burgesses (D). **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

The Jamestown colony's population collapsed from several hundred to roughly sixty people during the "starving time" of 1609–1610. Which factor most directly explains this near-collapse?

- (A) A sudden, unprovoked naval attack by Spain on the Jamestown settlement
- (B) A combination of poor site conditions, unrealistic expectations of easy wealth, disease, and conflict with the neighboring Powhatan
- (C) A boycott of Virginia by the Virginia Company's own investors
- (D) Overproduction of tobacco flooding English markets and collapsing prices

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Jamestown's early crisis resulted from several compounding problems: a swampy, disease-prone site with poor drinking water, colonists who focused on searching for gold rather than growing food, worsening relations with the Powhatan Confederacy, and a harsh winter. There was no Spanish naval attack on Jamestown (A); the Virginia Company was trying to save its investment, not boycott it (C); and tobacco cultivation had not yet begun in 1609–1610, so overproduction (D) is chronologically impossible. **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using the John Smith excerpt above and your knowledge of Period 2:

- (a) Briefly describe ONE challenge that nearly caused the Jamestown colony to fail in its first years.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way colony leadership responded to this challenge.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE long-term consequence of Virginia's shift to tobacco cultivation for the colony's labor system.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Many early colonists searched for gold instead of growing food, and the colony faced disease, poor water sources, and conflict with the Powhatan Confederacy, causing catastrophic mortality during the 1609–1610 "starving time."
- (b) John Smith imposed strict work requirements ("he that will not work shall not eat"), and after 1612 John Rolfe's cultivation of a marketable tobacco strain gave colonists a genuine economic incentive to labor productively.
- (c) Tobacco's labor-intensive character created a growing demand for cheap, controllable labor, first met through indentured servitude and, especially after Bacon's Rebellion (1676), increasingly through permanent, race-based enslaved African labor.

## 2.3 The regions of British colonial America

### 2.3.1 New England: Plymouth and Massachusetts Bay

New England was settled chiefly by religious dissenters. The **Pilgrims** – Separatists who wished to break entirely from the Church of England – sailed on the *Mayflower* and, before landing outside the bounds of their original charter in November 1620, signed the **Mayflower Compact**, a brief agreement among the adult male passengers to form a “civil body politic” and submit to majority-made laws for the general good. It was not a constitution or a declaration of rights, but it established an important precedent: government by the consent of the governed, exercised through a written compact. The Pilgrims founded **Plymouth** colony under Governor William Bradford.

A decade later, a much larger and wealthier group of **Puritans** – who wanted to purify and reform the Church of England from within, not separate from it – founded the **Massachusetts Bay Colony** (1630) under a royal charter. Aboard the flagship *Arbella*, leader **John Winthrop** delivered his sermon “A Model of Christian Charity,” describing the colony’s mission in now-famous terms: it would stand “as a city upon a hill,” a model godly community whose success – or failure – the whole world would be watching. Over the 1630s, roughly twenty thousand Puritans crossed the Atlantic in the **Great Migration**, founding tightly organized towns centered on a Congregational church and a **town meeting** – a form of direct local democracy in which adult male property-holding church members (“freemen”) debated and voted on local affairs. Puritan Massachusetts was not, however, a haven of religious tolerance: dissenters such as **Roger Williams** (banished in 1636 for advocating separation of church and state and fair dealing with Native peoples) and **Anne Hutchinson** (banished in 1638 for challenging clerical authority) were expelled and went on to help found Rhode Island, a colony that, by contrast, guaranteed religious liberty.

#### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

New England pioneered forms of colonial self-government with no close parallel in the Chesapeake: the Mayflower Compact’s government-by-consent, the Massachusetts General Court (a colony-wide legislature), and, at the local level, the town meeting, where ordinary property-holding men debated roads, taxes, and church matters face to face. These institutions normalized the idea that legitimate authority required the participation, or at least the consent, of the governed.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

New England được lập bởi những người bất đồng tôn giáo. Người Pilgrim (ly khai hoàn toàn khỏi Anh giáo) lập Plymouth (1620), ký Hiệp ước Mayflower – một thỏa thuận tự quản dựa trên sự đồng thuận. Người Puritan (muốn cải cách chứ không ly khai Anh giáo) lập Massachusetts Bay (1630) dưới sự lãnh đạo của John Winthrop, người mô tả thuộc địa là “thành phố trên đồi” (city upon a hill) – hình mẫu cộng đồng đạo đức cho cả thế giới noi theo. Town meeting (họp dân làng) là hình thức dân chủ trực tiếp cấp cơ sở. Tuy nhiên Massachusetts không khoan dung tôn giáo: Roger Williams và Anne Hutchinson bị trục xuất, sau đó lập nên Rhode Island.

#### HIPP source analysis

*Excerpt (paraphrased), John Winthrop, “A Model of Christian Charity,” delivered aboard the Arbella (1630):* Winthrop tells his fellow Puritans that they must be knit together as one body in brotherly affection, for they “shall be as a city upon a hill,” with the eyes of the world upon them – if they fail to keep their covenant with God, they will be made “a story and a byword” throughout the world.

**Historical situation:** delivered en route to found Massachusetts Bay, as Winthrop sought to unify a diverse group of Puritan colonists behind a shared religious mission before landing.

Intended audience: fellow Puritan colonists aboard ship. **Purpose:** to bind the group into a covenant community with a sense of collective religious responsibility and high stakes. **Point of view:** the colony's incoming governor, articulating an idealized vision rather than a description of lived reality – useful evidence of Puritan self-conception and purpose, but not proof that Massachusetts Bay actually achieved this harmony (it did not, as the Williams and Hutchinson banishments show).

### Bài tập luyện tập

The Mayflower Compact (1620) most directly reflects which principle that became significant in later American political development?

- |                                                                                |                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Government exercised legitimately only through the consent of the governed | (C) Rule by a royally appointed governor holding unlimited personal authority |
| (B) Hereditary monarchy as the sole legitimate form of government              | (D) The establishment of a single, state-supported national church            |

### Lời giải chi tiết

The Mayflower Compact bound the Pilgrim settlers to obey laws made for the general good by their own agreement – an early, small-scale expression of the idea that legitimate government rests on the consent of those governed. It does not endorse hereditary monarchy (A is the opposite point), does not create an all-powerful royal governor (C), and says nothing about establishing a single national church (D). **(A).**

### Bài tập luyện tập

Anne Hutchinson's banishment from Massachusetts Bay in 1638 for challenging the colony's clergy best illustrates:

- |                                                                                                                                |                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Puritan Massachusetts's broad tolerance of religious dissent                                                               | Church of England                                                               |
| (B) The limits of religious tolerance in Puritan Massachusetts, despite the colony's own origins in religious dissent from the | (C) The Salem witch trials of 1692                                              |
|                                                                                                                                | (D) Direct intervention by the English Parliament in colonial religious affairs |

### Lời giải chi tiết

Although Massachusetts Bay's founders had themselves left England over religious disagreements, the colony's leadership tolerated little internal dissent: Hutchinson (like Roger Williams before her) was banished for views the colony's ministers and magistrates considered dangerous, showing that Puritan "freedom of religion" meant freedom to practice Puritanism, not general toleration. This was not broad tolerance (A is the opposite), it occurred more than fifty years before the Salem trials (C), and it was a colonial, not a parliamentary, action (D). **(B).**

### Bài tập luyện tập

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using Winthrop's sermon above and your knowledge of Period 2:

- (a) Briefly describe ONE feature of self-government in colonial New England.

- (b) Briefly explain ONE way New England's religious motives shaped its pattern of settlement.  
(c) Briefly explain ONE difference between New England's approach to self-government and the Chesapeake's.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) The town meeting let adult male, property-holding church members vote directly on local laws, taxes, and church affairs, while the Mayflower Compact created a small-scale government based on the settlers' own consent.  
(b) Because settlers sought to build tightly knit, godly communities under the watch of God and the world, they clustered in compact, church-centered towns rather than spreading out onto isolated farms.  
(c) New England exercised comparatively direct, participatory local self-government through town meetings, while the Chesapeake concentrated political power in a colony-wide assembly (the House of Burgesses) dominated by wealthy planters, with settlement dispersed across plantations rather than towns.

### 2.3.2 The Middle Colonies: diversity and toleration

The Middle Colonies – New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware – became the most ethnically and religiously diverse region in British North America. New York began as **New Netherland**, a Dutch West India Company fur-trading colony centered on New Amsterdam (Manhattan); England seized it by force in 1664 and renamed it New York, but its Dutch-influenced and increasingly diverse population persisted. **Pennsylvania** (chartered 1681) was granted by King Charles II to **William Penn** as repayment of a royal debt. Penn, a Quaker, envisioned Pennsylvania as a “holy experiment”: Quakers (the Society of Friends) rejected formal clergy and hierarchy, believed in an “inner light” of divine truth available to all believers (including women), practiced pacifism, and – unusually for the era – extended broad religious toleration to Christians of nearly all denominations. Penn also negotiated relatively peaceful, if ultimately temporary, land purchases from the Lenape rather than simply seizing territory. Cheap, fertile land and religious toleration drew large numbers of German, Scots-Irish, and other European migrants alongside English Quakers, making Philadelphia one of the busiest and most diverse port cities in the colonies. The region's rich soil supported a booming grain economy that earned it the nickname the colonial “breadbasket.”

### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

The Middle Colonies show that colonial society was not monolithically English or Protestant in one single flavor: Dutch merchants, English Quakers, German and Scots-Irish farmers, and enslaved and free Africans lived alongside one another, producing a more pluralistic social structure – and, in Pennsylvania's case, a government that formally protected that pluralism through religious toleration – than either Puritan New England or the Anglican Chesapeake.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Middle Colonies (New York, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Delaware) là vùng đa dạng sắc tộc và tôn giáo nhất. New York từng là New Netherland của Hà Lan, bị Anh chiếm năm 1664. Pennsylvania (1681) do William Penn (tín đồ Quaker) sáng lập như một “thí nghiệm thánh thiện” (holy experiment), khoan dung tôn giáo rộng rãi, thu hút người Đức, Scots-Irish và nhiều nhóm khác. Đất đai màu mỡ giúp vùng này trở thành “vựa bánh mì” (breadbasket) của các thuộc địa.

**HIPP source analysis**

*Excerpt (paraphrased), William Penn, letter to prospective settlers and Pennsylvania's Frame of Government (1682):* Penn describes Pennsylvania as a refuge where colonists of every Christian denomination may worship freely under laws they themselves help to make, and invites Europeans of "industrious" character, regardless of nationality, to settle and prosper.

**Historical situation:** written as Penn organized settlement of his newly granted proprietary colony. **Intended audience:** prospective European settlers, especially persecuted religious minorities and land-seeking farmers across England, Germany, and Ireland. **Purpose:** to recruit a large, diverse, and productive population by advertising toleration and representative government. **Point of view:** a Quaker proprietor with a direct financial and religious interest in attracting settlers – explains why Pennsylvania's promotional promises of toleration, unlike some other colonies' founding rhetoric, were substantially realized in practice, contributing to the colony's unusually rapid and diverse growth.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

*Excerpt (paraphrased), William Penn's writings on toleration, c. 1682:* Penn promises settlers freedom of worship and a role in making their own colonial laws. Which group of migrants did such policies most directly attract to Pennsylvania?

- |                                                                                                                    |                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Exclusively English Puritans seeking to establish a single state church                                        | (C) Spanish Catholic missionaries seeking to convert Native peoples |
| (B) A wide range of European Protestants, including Germans and Scots-Irish, seeking land and religious toleration | (D) Investors of the Virginia Company seeking tobacco profits       |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Penn's promise of religious toleration and cheap, fertile land drew a wide range of European Protestants – English Quakers, German Pietists, Scots-Irish Presbyterians, and others – rather than a single religious or national group. Massachusetts, not Pennsylvania, aimed to establish one state church (A); Spanish Catholic missionary activity belonged to Spain's colonial system, not England's (C); and the Virginia Company's tobacco-profit investors were unrelated to Pennsylvania, founded decades later under a different model (D). **(B).**

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).**

- (a) Briefly describe ONE way the Middle Colonies were more diverse than New England.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE reason why Pennsylvania in particular attracted such a diverse population.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE consequence of this diversity for colonial governance or society.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The Middle Colonies included Dutch merchants, English Quakers, German Pietists, Scots-Irish Presbyterians, and other groups, whereas New England's population was overwhelmingly English and Puritan Congregationalist.
- (b) William Penn's policy of religious toleration, combined with the availability of fertile farmland, drew persecuted or land-hungry migrants from across Protestant Europe.

(c) Governance had to accommodate multiple religious and ethnic communities rather than enforce a single established church, fostering relative pluralism and toleration for the era, though it also produced periodic tension – for example, between pacifist Quaker leaders and frontier settlers who wanted a stronger military response to conflicts with Native peoples.

### 2.3.3 The Chesapeake and Southern colonies

South of the Middle Colonies, Virginia (1607) and **Maryland** (founded 1634 by the Catholic Calvert family as a proprietary colony and refuge for English Catholics; its 1649 Toleration Act protected the religious freedom of all Trinitarian Christians) formed the **Chesapeake**, an economy built overwhelmingly around **tobacco** cultivation on dispersed plantations rather than compact towns. Further south, the **Carolinas** (chartered 1663, administratively split into North and South Carolina by 1712) developed distinct economies: North Carolina relied on small farms, tobacco, and naval stores (tar, pitch, timber), while South Carolina's Lowcountry built an extremely profitable – and extremely brutal – economy around **rice** cultivation in coastal swamps, drawing on the specialized agricultural knowledge that many enslaved West Africans brought with them. **Georgia** (chartered 1732, first settled 1733), the last of the thirteen colonies, was founded by James Oglethorpe and a board of trustees partly as a military buffer protecting the Carolinas from Spanish Florida, and partly as a refuge intended for England's "worthy poor." Georgia's trustees initially banned both slavery and hard liquor, but economic pressure from the successful slave-based plantation economies of its neighbors led the colony to lift the ban on slavery by 1750.

**Southern cash crops by region:** Chesapeake (Virginia, Maryland) – tobacco; South Carolina Lowcountry – rice, and later indigo; Georgia – initially restricted, later tobacco, rice, and indigo plantation agriculture as well. All three depended increasingly on unfree labor, first indentured servants, then, especially after 1676, enslaved Africans.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Chesapeake (Virginia, Maryland) phát triển nhờ thuốc lá; Maryland (1634) là nơi trú ẩn cho người Công giáo Anh. Carolina (1663, tách thành Bắc và Nam Carolina năm 1712): Bắc Carolina làm nông trại nhỏ, Nam Carolina trồng lúa gạo (rice) ở vùng đầm lầy ven biển – kinh tế đồn điền tàn khốc dựa vào tri thức nông nghiệp của người châu Phi bị bắt làm nô lệ. Georgia (1732), thuộc địa cuối cùng trong 13 thuộc địa, ban đầu là vùng đệm quân sự chống Tây Ban Nha và cấm chế độ nô lệ, nhưng đến 1750 đã dỡ bỏ lệnh cấm vì áp lực kinh tế.

|                    | New England                                                | Middle Colonies                                                  | Chesapeake / South                                                          |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Founding motive    | Religious community (Separatist and Puritan)               | Trade profit and religious toleration                            | Commercial profit (joint-stock company)                                     |
| Economy            | Subsistence farming, fishing, shipbuilding, Atlantic trade | "Breadbasket": wheat and grain export, artisan trades            | Cash-crop plantations: tobacco, rice, indigo                                |
| Labor system       | Family farm labor; limited indentured servitude            | Family farms, artisans, some enslaved labor in cities            | Indentured servants, shifting decisively to enslaved Africans after c. 1680 |
| Religion           | Puritan Congregationalism (established church)             | Highly diverse: Quaker, German Pietist, Dutch Reformed, Anglican | Anglicanism (established church)                                            |
| Settlement pattern | Tight, church-centered towns; town meetings                | Ethnically mixed towns, farms, and port cities                   | Dispersed riverfront and coastal plantations                                |

The three British colonial regions compared, c. 1607–1754.



Key turning points in Period 2, 1607–1754.

### Bài tập luyện tập

Historians estimate that Chesapeake tobacco exports grew roughly tenfold between 1620 and the 1680s. This growth most directly increased colonial planters' demand for:

- (A) Skilled printers and newspaper publishers
- (B) A large, cheap, and controllable labor force to plant, tend, and harvest tobacco
- (C) Dutch fur traders to supply pelts for export
- (D) Formally organized New England-style town meetings

### Lời giải chi tiết

Tobacco was extremely labor-intensive to cultivate and process, so as exports (and planters' profits) grew, so did the demand for cheap, controllable labor to work expanding tobacco fields – first indentured servants, later enslaved Africans. Printers (A), Dutch fur traders (C), and New England town meetings (D) have no direct connection to Chesapeake tobacco labor demand. (B).

### Bài tập luyện tập

#### Short-answer question (SAQ style).

- (a) Briefly describe ONE original purpose of Georgia's founding in 1732.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way Georgia's early policies differed from South Carolina's.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE reason Georgia's trustees eventually reversed the colony's ban on slavery.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Georgia was founded partly as a military buffer protecting the Carolinas from Spanish Florida and partly as a refuge intended for England's "worthy poor."
- (b) Georgia's trustees initially banned both slavery and hard liquor, unlike South Carolina, which by the early 1700s had built its Lowcountry economy on enslaved labor and rice cultivation.
- (c) Economic competition with the highly profitable, slave-based plantation agriculture of neighboring South Carolina pressured Georgia's colonists and, eventually, its trustees to lift the ban on slavery by 1750 in order to remain economically competitive.

**2.4 Transatlantic trade and mercantilism**

England regulated colonial trade under **mercantilism**, an economic theory holding that a nation's wealth and power depended on accumulating precious metals and maintaining a favorable balance of trade; colonies existed, in this view, to supply raw materials to and consume manufactured goods from the mother country, enriching the empire as a whole rather than pursuing separate colonial interests. England enforced mercantilist policy through the **Navigation Acts** (beginning 1651, expanded in 1660, 1663, 1673, and 1696): colonial trade had to be carried on English or colonial-built ships crewed mostly by English sailors; certain "enumerated goods," including tobacco, could be shipped only to England or other English colonies; and many European goods bound for the colonies had to pass through an English port first, generating customs revenue and guaranteeing English merchants a profitable middleman role.

In practice, distance, limited administrative capacity, and, especially after the 1720s under Prime Minister Robert Walpole, a deliberate policy of lax enforcement produced what historians call "**salutary neglect**" – colonial assemblies, merchants, and smugglers exercised far more practical autonomy than the letter of mercantilist law allowed. This autonomy let colonial legislatures grow accustomed to controlling local taxation and law-making, a habit of self-government Britain would find difficult to reverse after 1763. The Atlantic trade network is often summarized as a **triangular trade**: manufactured goods (cloth, guns, rum) shipped from Europe to West Africa in exchange for enslaved captives; enslaved Africans transported across the Atlantic via the **Middle Passage** to the Americas in exchange for New World commodities; and raw colonial commodities (sugar, tobacco, rice) shipped back to Europe to be processed, consumed, or re-exported. In practice, trade routes were more varied and multidirectional than a single triangle – New England, for instance, ran extensive Atlantic and Caribbean trade in rum, fish, and timber – but the concept captures how tightly Africa, the Americas, and Europe became bound into one Atlantic economic system.

**Theme: WOR – America in the World**

The Navigation Acts tied the colonies into an Atlantic-wide imperial trading system linking North America, the Caribbean, West Africa, and Europe. Colonial prosperity – and, later, colonial grievance – cannot be understood in a purely local frame; it depended on, and was shaped by, Britain's larger imperial and commercial rivalry with Spain, France, and the Netherlands.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Nước Anh áp dụng chủ nghĩa trọng thương (mercantilism): thuộc địa tồn tại để phục vụ lợi ích kinh tế của mẫu quốc. Đạo luật Hàng hải (Navigation Acts, từ 1651) yêu cầu hàng hoá thuộc địa phải vận chuyển bằng tàu Anh và đi qua nước Anh. Nhưng thực thi lỏng lẻo tạo ra "sự lơ là khôn ngoan" (salutary neglect) – thuộc địa phát triển tự trị và buôn lậu. Buôn bán tam giác (triangular trade) kết nối châu Âu, Tây Phi và châu Mỹ qua hàng hoá, người bị bắt làm nô lệ (Middle Passage), và nguyên liệu thô.

**Mercantilism in one line:** colonies exist to enrich the mother country – the Navigation Acts tried to enforce this by controlling shipping and trade routes, but weak enforcement (“salutary neglect”) let colonial self-government and Atlantic commerce, including smuggling, flourish largely unchecked until after 1763.

#### LEQ/DBQ thesis & outline model

**Prompt:** Evaluate the extent to which mercantilist trade policy shaped the economic development of Britain’s North American colonies in the period 1651–1754.

**Thesis:** While the Navigation Acts formally subordinated colonial trade to British commercial interests, inconsistent enforcement – “salutary neglect” – meant that mercantilist policy shaped colonial economic development only partially: it channeled staple exports like tobacco and rice toward England, but it also allowed colonial merchants, especially in New England, to build a largely autonomous, sometimes smuggling-based Atlantic trading economy of their own.

**Outline:** (1) Formal structure – explain the Navigation Acts’ shipping and enumerated-goods requirements and how they directed Chesapeake tobacco and Carolina rice toward the English market. (2) Limits of enforcement – explain salutary neglect and its effect: colonial assemblies gained practical control over taxation, and merchants (particularly in Boston, Newport, and New York) smuggled molasses and other goods outside the legal trade network. (3) Complicating/counter-evidence – acknowledge that mercantilist policy did successfully bind the colonial economy to Britain’s in important ways (e.g., colonial dependence on English manufactured goods, English shipping and insurance markets), even as it failed to fully control colonial commerce.

#### Bài tập luyện tập

*Excerpt (paraphrased), a Navigation Act, 1660:* the law requires that sugar, tobacco, and other named colonial goods be shipped only to England or another English colony, aboard ships built and crewed predominantly by English subjects. This provision was primarily designed to:

- |                                                                                                                            |                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Protect colonial manufacturing industries from British competition                                                     | competitors, especially the Dutch                                           |
| (B) Ensure that the profits of colonial shipping and trade accrued to England and English merchants rather than to foreign | (C) Grant the colonies unrestricted free trade with any nation in the world |
|                                                                                                                            | (D) Abolish the use of enslaved labor in colonial commerce                  |

#### Lời giải chi tiết

Mercantilist policy aimed to keep the profits of colonial trade – shipping fees, customs duties, and merchant commissions – within the English commercial system, at the direct expense of rival powers like the Dutch, who had previously carried much of the colonial trade. This is the opposite of protecting colonial manufacturing (A, which mercantilism actually discouraged) or granting free trade (C); the Navigation Acts said nothing about abolishing slavery (D) and, in fact, coexisted with the era’s expanding slave trade. (B).

#### Bài tập luyện tập

A historian describes an eighteenth-century Atlantic trade network in which European manufactured goods were exchanged in West Africa for enslaved captives, who were transported

to the Americas and exchanged for raw colonial commodities later shipped to Europe. Which best characterizes this system?

- (A) A closed domestic trade network confined entirely to England
- (B) An interconnected Atlantic trading system linking Europe, West Africa, and the Americas through manufactured goods, enslaved people, and raw commodities
- (C) A trade system that operated entirely independent of the institution of slavery
- (D) A trade network limited exclusively to New England and the Caribbean

### Lời giải chi tiết

This description matches the “triangular trade”: an Atlantic-wide system in which Europe, West Africa, and the Americas were bound together through the exchange of manufactured goods, enslaved captives, and colonial raw materials. It was not confined to England alone (A) or to New England and the Caribbean alone (D, though that pairing describes one real sub-route), and slavery – specifically the forced transport of enslaved Africans – was central to, not separate from, this system (C is wrong). (B).

### Bài tập luyện tập

#### Short-answer question (SAQ style).

- (a) Briefly describe ONE provision of the Navigation Acts.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way “salutary neglect” affected the growth of colonial self-government.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way triangular Atlantic trade connected the colonies to a broader global economy.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) The Navigation Acts required that colonial goods be shipped on English or colonial-built ships with predominantly English crews, and that certain enumerated goods, such as tobacco, be shipped only to England or other English colonies.
- (b) Weak and inconsistent enforcement of trade law let colonial assemblies and merchants govern local taxation and Atlantic commerce with considerable practical independence, habituating colonists to a significant degree of self-rule well before 1754.
- (c) Manufactured goods, enslaved captives, and colonial raw materials circulated among Europe, West Africa, and the Americas, making the colonial economy – and, tragically, the forced migration of enslaved Africans – dependent on and shaped by a global Atlantic trading system rather than purely local exchange.

## 2.5 American Indians and Europeans: conflict and accommodation

Relations between Native peoples and European colonists moved, region by region, from initial and often fragile cooperation toward escalating violence as colonial populations and land hunger grew. In Virginia, the **Powhatan Wars** unfolded in three phases: the First Anglo-Powhatan War (1610–1614) ended with the marriage of John Rolfe and Pocahontas, bringing a temporary peace; the Second Anglo-Powhatan War began in 1622, when Opechancanough, Powhatan’s successor, launched coordinated surprise attacks that killed roughly a quarter of Virginia’s English colonists in a single day; and the Third Anglo-Powhatan War (1644–1646) ended with the Powhatan Confederacy’s defeat and formal subordination to English colonial authority.

In New England, the **Pequot War** (1636–1638) pitted the Pequot people against English colonists allied with rival Native nations; it climaxed in the 1637 Mystic Massacre, in which colonial forces

burned a fortified Pequot village, killing several hundred people and effectively destroying the Pequot as an independent polity. Decades later, **King Philip's War** (also called **Metacom's War**, 1675–76) became one of the deadliest conflicts, proportionally, in American history: Wampanoag sachem Metacom, alarmed by relentless English expansion onto Native land and the erosion of his father Massasoit's earlier alliance with Plymouth, led a broad coalition of New England Native nations against the colonists. Dozens of English towns were damaged or destroyed and hundreds of colonists killed, while a still larger number of Native combatants and civilians were killed or sold into Caribbean slavery; the war effectively ended independent Native political and military power in southern New England.

In Spanish New Mexico, decades of forced labor under the **encomienda** system and suppression of traditional religious practice provoked the **Pueblo Revolt** (1680): under the leadership of **Popé**, Pueblo communities organized a coordinated, multi-pueblo uprising that killed roughly four hundred Spanish colonists and drove Spanish colonial government out of New Mexico for over a decade – one of the most successful Native uprisings against European colonization anywhere in the Americas, until the Spanish reconquest under Diego de Vargas beginning in 1692.

#### Theme: MIG – Migration and Settlement

Across very different colonial regions – English Chesapeake, English New England, Spanish New Mexico – the underlying driver of Indigenous-European conflict was the same: as colonial populations grew and settlers pushed onto more Native land, earlier tributary or cooperative relationships broke down, and Native nations resisted through organized, often coordinated, warfare.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Xung đột Anh-bản địa: Chiến tranh Powhatan (ba giai đoạn, 1610–1646) ở Virginia; Chiến tranh Pequot (1636–1638) ở New England, đỉnh điểm là vụ thảm sát Mystic (1637); Chiến tranh Vua Philip/Metacom (1675–76) – một trong những cuộc chiến đẫm máu nhất (tính theo tỷ lệ dân số) trong lịch sử Mỹ, chấm dứt quyền lực độc lập của người bản địa ở Nam New England. Ở Tây Nam thuộc Tây Ban Nha, cuộc nổi dậy Pueblo (1680) do Popé lãnh đạo đã đuổi được người Tây Ban Nha khỏi New Mexico hơn một thập kỷ – một trong những cuộc nổi dậy bản địa thành công nhất trước thực dân châu Âu.

**Four conflicts, one pattern:** Powhatan Wars (1610–1646, Virginia) – Native confederacy ultimately subordinated; Pequot War (1636–1638, New England) – Pequot nearly destroyed as an independent people; King Philip's War (1675–76, New England) – devastating losses on both sides, ends independent Native power in the region; Pueblo Revolt (1680, Spanish New Mexico) – the rare case of a temporary, successful expulsion of European colonizers. In every case, expanding settlement and land pressure, not religious difference alone, was the deepest cause.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Students frequently confuse the Pueblo Revolt (1680) with King Philip's War (1675–76) because the dates are so close. Keep the empires and outcomes straight: King Philip's War was fought against *English* colonists in *New England* and ended in the defeat of Metacom's coalition; the Pueblo Revolt was fought against *Spanish* colonists in *New Mexico* and succeeded, at least temporarily, in expelling the colonizers for over a decade.

## HIPP source analysis

*Excerpt (paraphrased), Mary Rowlandson, The Sovereignty and Goodness of God (1682):* an English colonist captured during King Philip's War describes her months in captivity among Native combatants, the hardships of the conflict, and her eventual ransom and return, framing her survival as evidence of divine providence.

**Historical situation:** written and published several years after her 1676 captivity, during ongoing English-Native tension in New England. **Intended audience:** a Puritan New England reading public seeking religious meaning in wartime suffering. **Purpose:** to testify to God's providence and to provide a firsthand account of the war's human toll. **Point of view:** an English colonist and captive, whose portrayal of her Native captors is filtered through both personal trauma and Puritan religious framework – valuable as direct evidence of the war's violence and its effect on English attitudes toward Native peoples, but not a neutral or Native perspective on the conflict's causes.

## Bài tập luyện tập

*Excerpt (paraphrased), Mary Rowlandson's captivity narrative (1682):* an English colonist describes being captured and held during a violent New England conflict before her eventual release. Which conflict does this narrative most directly document?

- (A) The Pueblo Revolt of 1680, a Spanish colonial event in New Mexico      (C) Peaceful Quaker-Native relations in early Pennsylvania
- (B) King Philip's War (1675–76), documenting the conflict's violence and its effect on English perceptions of Native peoples      (D) An official Virginia Company report on the Powhatan Wars

## Lời giải chi tiết

Rowlandson's narrative directly describes her captivity during King Philip's War (1675–76) in New England, making it a firsthand English account of that conflict's violence and of how it shaped colonial attitudes toward Native peoples. It has no connection to the separate Spanish colonial world of the Pueblo Revolt (A), it describes violent conflict rather than Pennsylvania's peaceful relations (C), and it is a personal narrative, not an official Virginia Company report on an earlier, unrelated conflict (D). (B).

## Bài tập luyện tập

The Pueblo Revolt of 1680 most directly resulted in:

- (A) The permanent expulsion of Spanish colonial rule from all of North America      (C) The founding of Pennsylvania as a Quaker refuge
- (B) The temporary expulsion of Spanish colonizers from New Mexico for over a decade, one of the most successful Native uprisings against European colonization      (D) The hardening of race-based chattel slavery in Virginia

## Lời giải chi tiết

The Pueblo Revolt drove Spanish colonial government out of New Mexico for roughly twelve years, until Diego de Vargas's reconquest beginning in 1692 – a temporary but historically

significant success, not a permanent expulsion from all of North America (A overstates the outcome). It has no connection to Pennsylvania's founding (C, an English Quaker colony) or to Virginia's hardening of slavery after Bacon's Rebellion (D, a separate causal chain entirely). (B).

### Bài tập luyện tập

#### Short-answer question (SAQ style).

- (a) Briefly describe ONE cause of King Philip's War (1675–76).
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way the Pueblo Revolt (1680) differed in outcome from King Philip's War.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE broader pattern these conflicts reveal about English and Spanish relations with Native peoples in Period 2.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Continued English expansion onto Wampanoag and allied lands, combined with the breakdown of the earlier alliance between Massasoit and Plymouth, led Metacom to organize a broad coalition of Native nations against the New England colonists.
- (b) The Pueblo Revolt succeeded, at least temporarily, in driving Spanish colonizers out of New Mexico for over a decade, while King Philip's War, though devastating to New England, ended in the defeat and further subordination of Native power in that region.
- (c) Both conflicts show that European territorial expansion and the breakdown of earlier cooperative or tributary relationships – not religious or cultural difference alone – were the underlying drivers of Indigenous resistance across very different colonial regions, English New England and Spanish New Mexico alike.

## 2.6 The making of race-based slavery

Early Chesapeake labor needs were met chiefly through **indentured servitude**: young, poor English migrants (and a smaller number of Africans, whose legal status was initially ambiguous) contracted several years of unpaid labor in exchange for passage, food, and shelter, after which servants were, in principle, free and might receive “freedom dues” such as land, tools, or clothing. The first recorded Africans arrived in Virginia in 1619 – roughly twenty individuals transported aboard an English privateer – but a fully race-based, lifelong, hereditary system of enslavement was not yet fixed in law.

Several forces pushed Chesapeake planters toward a starkly different labor system after mid-century: rising wages and improving conditions in England reduced the supply of English servants willing to migrate; the expiration of servants' terms created a growing population of free, land-hungry former servants competing with planters for scarce land, contributing to social instability; and a series of legal rulings progressively defined a separate, race-based system of bondage for people of African descent – most importantly a 1662 Virginia statute establishing that a child's status as free or enslaved followed the status of the *mother*, regardless of the father's race or status, a legal innovation with no basis in English common law.

**Bacon's Rebellion (1676)** is the causal hinge historians point to most often. Frontier planter Nathaniel Bacon led a rebellion of poor and middling colonists – including indentured servants and both enslaved and free Black Virginians – against Royal Governor William Berkeley's administration, driven partly by Berkeley's refusal to wage aggressive war against neighboring Native peoples and partly by elite favoritism in access to land. The rebels burned Jamestown before the revolt collapsed following Bacon's sudden death from illness. What alarmed Virginia's planter elite most was not the violence itself but the cross-racial class alliance it exposed: poor whites and Black Virginians, free and enslaved, had fought together against colonial authority. In the following decades, Virginia's assembly deliberately hardened the legal line between white and Black colonists, expanding and

codifying race-based chattel slavery – culminating in the comprehensive **Virginia Slave Code of 1705** – while extending new legal privileges to poor whites, precisely to prevent future alliances across the color line.

Enslaved Africans reached the colonies via the **Middle Passage**, the brutal transatlantic crossing in which captives were packed into ships under conditions of extreme overcrowding, disease, and violence; historians estimate that roughly one in ten to one in seven captives died during the crossing itself. Colonial slave societies varied by region: in the **Chesapeake**, enslaved people typically worked tobacco under a “gang labor” system on plantations of varying size, often alongside white overseers or small planters, and by the mid-eighteenth century the enslaved Chesapeake population had begun to grow through natural increase (births) – a rarity among slave societies in the Americas; in the **Lowcountry** (South Carolina and Georgia rice country), enslaved Africans – often drawn specifically from West African rice-growing regions for their agricultural expertise – worked under a “task system” that assigned a daily quota of labor, allowing some limited control over remaining time, but endured brutal disease environments and, by the early 1700s, formed a Black majority of the total population; in the **Northern colonies**, enslaved people were fewer in number, more often worked in cities, ports, and households alongside free labor, but remained fully subject to slave codes and race-based bondage.

#### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

Slavery in British North America was not a single uniform system: the scale, labor regime (gang versus task labor), demographic balance (Black minority versus majority), and even the possibility of a self-reproducing enslaved population varied sharply between the Chesapeake, the Lowcountry, and the North – yet all three converged, after the late seventeenth century, on the same legal foundation of permanent, hereditary, race-based chattel slavery.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Lao động khế ước (indentured servitude) ban đầu là nguồn lao động chính ở Chesapeake. Bacon's Rebellion (1676) – nông dân nghèo da trắng và người da đen (cả nô lệ lẫn tự do) cùng nổi dậy chống chính quyền – khiến giới chủ đồn điền lo sợ liên minh xuyên chủng tộc, từ đó đẩy nhanh việc luật hoá chế độ nô lệ chủng tộc vĩnh viễn, cha truyền con nối (Bộ luật nô lệ Virginia 1705). Middle Passage là hành trình vượt Đại Tây Dương tàn khốc đưa người châu Phi bị bắt làm nô lệ sang châu Mỹ. Xã hội nô lệ khác nhau theo vùng: Chesapeake (lao động theo nhóm/gang labor), Lowcountry (lao động theo định mức/task system, đa số dân số là người da đen), miền Bắc (số lượng ít hơn, làm việc ở thành thị).

**Bacon's Rebellion (1676)** is a key causation hinge in Period 2: after it exposed the danger of poor whites and enslaved or free Black Virginians uniting against the colonial elite, Virginia's planter class deliberately hardened the racial line, expanding chattel slavery and restricting the rights of free Black colonists to prevent future cross-racial alliances.

| Feature            | Indentured servitude                                 | Chattel slavery                                    |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Duration           | Fixed term, typically 4–7 years                      | Permanent, lifelong                                |
| Inheritability     | Not inherited; children born free                    | Hereditary; status followed the mother (from 1662) |
| Legal basis        | Written labor contract                               | Race-based statute and colonial slave codes        |
| End-of-term status | Freedom, sometimes with “freedom dues” (land, tools) | No legal end; no dues or freedom                   |
| Typical origin     | Poor English (and some other European) migrants      | Enslaved and forcibly transported Africans         |

Indentured servitude compared with chattel slavery in the British colonies.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not assume that race-based, lifelong chattel slavery existed as a fixed legal category from Jamestown’s founding in 1607. The first Africans arrived in Virginia in 1619, but their legal status was initially ambiguous; a comprehensive, race-based system of permanent, hereditary slavery hardened gradually over the seventeenth century and is most closely associated with the aftermath of Bacon’s Rebellion (1676) and the Virginia Slave Code of 1705.

#### SAQ model outline

**Prompt:** Briefly explain ONE cause of Bacon’s Rebellion (1676); briefly explain ONE effect of the rebellion on Virginia’s labor system; briefly explain ONE piece of evidence historians use to support this causal link.

**Model answer outline:** *Cause* – frontier colonists, including indentured servants and free and enslaved Black Virginians, resented Governor Berkeley’s refusal to wage war against neighboring Native peoples and elite control over access to land. *Effect* – Virginia’s elite responded by hardening the legal boundary between white and Black colonists, expanding chattel slavery in place of indentured servitude and granting new privileges to poor whites. *Evidence* – the timing and content of Virginia’s slave codes in the decades after 1676, culminating in the comprehensive 1705 code, show a direct legislative response aimed at preventing the kind of cross-racial alliance Bacon’s Rebellion had revealed.

#### Bài tập luyện tập

*Excerpt (paraphrased), Virginia statute, 1662:* the law declares that all children born in the colony shall be held bond or free according to the condition of the mother. This law most directly reflects the process of:

- (A) Reducing Virginia’s dependence on un-free labor
- (B) Legally codifying slavery as a permanent, inheritable, race-based status rather than a temporary condition like indentured
- (C) Granting freedom dues to formerly indentured servants
- (D) Establishing the House of Burgesses as Virginia’s legislative assembly

**Lời giải chi tiết**

By making enslaved status inheritable through the mother regardless of the father's race, this 1662 statute was a key step in transforming slavery from an ambiguous, sometimes temporary condition into a permanent, hereditary, race-based legal category – the opposite of reducing unfree labor (A). It is unrelated to freedom dues for former servants (C, a feature of indentured servitude, not slavery) and to the unrelated 1619 creation of the House of Burgesses (D). **(B).**

**Bài tập luyện tập****Short-answer question (SAQ style).**

- (a) Briefly describe ONE cause of Bacon's Rebellion (1676).
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way Virginia's elite responded to the rebellion in the following decades.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE difference between indentured servitude and chattel slavery as labor systems.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Frontier farmers – including indentured servants and enslaved and free Black Virginians – resented Governor Berkeley's reluctance to fight neighboring Native peoples and the colonial elite's control over access to land.
- (b) Virginia's assembly progressively hardened and codified race-based, hereditary chattel slavery, culminating in the comprehensive Slave Code of 1705, to prevent future cross-racial alliances between poor whites and Black Virginians.
- (c) Indentured servitude was a temporary, contractual status that typically ended after several years, sometimes with freedom dues, while chattel slavery was permanent, hereditary (passed through the mother), and treated enslaved people as legal property with essentially no rights.

## 2.7 Colonial society, religion, and the life of the mind

### 2.7.1 The Great Awakening

In the 1730s and 1740s, a wave of Protestant revivalism known as the **Great Awakening** swept the colonies. **Jonathan Edwards**, a Congregationalist minister in Northampton, Massachusetts, preached vivid, emotionally intense sermons on human sinfulness and total dependence on God's grace – most famously "**Sinners in the Hands of an Angry God**" (1741), which described unconverted sinners as held over the fires of hell as a spider is held over a flame, entirely at God's mercy. **George Whitefield**, an English Anglican itinerant preacher with a famously powerful voice, toured the colonies repeatedly beginning in 1739–40, preaching outdoors to enormous, mixed-class and interracial crowds – sometimes numbering in the thousands – from Georgia to New England.

The Awakening's core message – that genuine faith rested on a personal, emotional experience of conversion, not on formal learning, ordained clergy, or church hierarchy – proved deeply disruptive. Congregations split into pro-revival "New Light" and traditionalist "Old Light" factions ("New Side"/"Old Side" among Presbyterians); new evangelical denominations gained members at the expense of established churches; and new colleges, such as the College of New Jersey (later Princeton, founded 1746), were established to train New Light ministers. Because the same itinerant preachers and printed sermons circulated in every colony from Georgia to New Hampshire, ordinary colonists across the colonies shared, for the first time, a genuinely intercolonial religious experience – one historians see as an important, if indirect, precedent for the shared political identity that would emerge during the Revolutionary crisis a generation later.

**Theme: ARC – American and Regional Culture**

The Great Awakening created something new in colonial life: a shared emotional and religious experience that crossed colony lines, denominational lines, and to a real extent class and race lines, at a moment when colonists otherwise identified far more strongly with their individual colony than with any larger intercolonial community.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Đại Tỉnh thức (Great Awakening, 1730s–1740s) là phong trào phục hưng tôn giáo nhấn mạnh trải nghiệm cải đạo cá nhân, mang tính cảm xúc, thay vì học vấn hay hệ thống giáo hội chính thống. Jonathan Edwards (“Sinners in the Hands of an Angry God,” 1741) và George Whitefield (giảng đạo ngoài trời, thu hút hàng ngàn người khắp các thuộc địa) là hai gương mặt tiêu biểu. Phong trào làm suy yếu quyền lực nhà thờ chính thống, chia rẽ thành phe “New Light” và “Old Light,” thúc đẩy thành lập trường đại học mới (như Princeton, 1746), và tạo ra ý thức chung liên thuộc địa lần đầu tiên – tiền đề tâm lý cho tinh thần đoàn kết sau này trong Cách mạng.

**HIPP source analysis**

*Excerpt (paraphrased), Jonathan Edwards, “Sinners in the Hands of an Angry God” (delivered at Enfield, Connecticut, 1741):* Edwards warns his congregation that unconverted sinners are held over the fires of hell purely by God’s mercy, as a spider is held over a flame, and urges immediate, heartfelt repentance rather than reliance on outward religious observance alone.

**Historical situation:** delivered at the height of the Great Awakening, amid a wave of emotional revival preaching across New England. **Intended audience:** a Congregationalist congregation whom Edwards judged to be spiritually complacent. **Purpose:** to provoke immediate, personal religious conversion through vivid, terrifying imagery rather than calm doctrinal instruction.

**Point of view:** an ordained minister fully committed to the Awakening’s emphasis on emotional, individual conversion – useful evidence of the Awakening’s rhetorical style and theological content, and of why it proved so disruptive to congregations accustomed to calmer, more hierarchical worship.

**2.7.2 The Enlightenment, self-government, and print culture**

Alongside religious revival, **Enlightenment** rationalism – emphasizing reason, natural law, and empirical observation over inherited authority – reached the colonies through print, correspondence, and the transatlantic movement of educated elites. English philosopher **John Locke’s** *Two Treatises of Government* (1689) argued that legitimate government rested on a **social contract**: individuals possessed natural rights to life, liberty, and property that predated government, and government existed only to protect those rights, deriving its authority from the consent of the governed – authority that could be justly withdrawn if government violated the people’s fundamental rights. These ideas circulated widely among the educated colonial elite and would become central to Revolutionary-era political argument a generation later.

Enlightenment habits of mind also appeared in practical, civic form: **Benjamin Franklin** of Philadelphia – printer, scientist, and civic improver – published the widely read *Poor Richard’s Almanack* (from 1732), founded a subscription library (the Library Company of Philadelphia, 1731) and a scholarly society (the American Philosophical Society, 1743), embodying a practical, self-improving rationalism. A growing **print culture** of newspapers, pamphlets, and almanacs both spread these ideas and asserted its own independence from official control: in the **John Peter Zenger trial** (1735), a New York printer prosecuted for seditious libel after criticizing the royal governor was acquitted when his jury accepted the argument that true statements could not be considered libelous – an early landmark, in the court of public opinion if not yet in strict law, for freedom of the press. Meanwhile, colonial

assemblies – the House of Burgesses, the Massachusetts General Court, and their counterparts in every colony – steadily expanded their practical control over local taxation and legislation, a habit of self-government that, combined with salutary neglect's loose imperial oversight, left the colonies substantially self-governing in daily practice well before 1754.

### Theme: NAT – National Identity

Although the thirteen colonies remained legally and emotionally tied to Britain throughout Period 2, the combination of Enlightenment political ideas (natural rights, government by consent), an assertive print culture willing to criticize royal officials, and decades of practical self-government through colonial assemblies quietly built the intellectual and institutional foundation on which a distinct colonial – and eventually American – political identity could later be constructed.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Tư tưởng Khai sáng (Enlightenment) đề cao lý trí và quyền tự nhiên; John Locke lập luận rằng chính quyền hợp pháp phải dựa trên khế ước xã hội (social contract) và sự đồng thuận của người dân, có thể bị lật đổ nếu vi phạm quyền tự nhiên (sự sống, tự do, tài sản). Benjamin Franklin là biểu tượng của lý trí Khai sáng thực tiễn (Poor Richard's Almanack, Hội Triết học Hoa Kỳ). Vụ xử Zenger (1735) là cột mốc sớm cho tự do báo chí. Các hội đồng lập pháp thuộc địa (House of Burgesses, Đại hội đồng Massachusetts...) ngày càng kiểm soát thuế và luật pháp địa phương – nền tảng cho chính quyền tự trị trước năm 1754.

|                         | Great Awakening                                                                    | Enlightenment                                                                                          |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Core emphasis           | Emotional, personal religious conversion                                           | Reason, natural law, empirical observation                                                             |
| Key figures             | Jonathan Edwards, George Whitefield                                                | John Locke, Benjamin Franklin                                                                          |
| Source of authority     | Direct, individual religious experience                                            | Rational argument and natural rights                                                                   |
| Effect on colonial life | Splintered churches; new denominations; shared inter-colonial religious experience | Spread ideas of natural rights, consent of the governed, and self-government; fed print culture debate |

The Great Awakening and the Enlightenment compared as intercolonial intellectual movements.

### LEQ/DBQ thesis & outline model

**Prompt:** Evaluate the extent to which the Great Awakening and Enlightenment ideas contributed to the growth of colonial self-government and a shared intercolonial identity by 1754.

**Thesis:** Although the Great Awakening and the Enlightenment differed sharply in their sources of authority – emotional religious conversion versus rational natural-rights philosophy – both movements independently weakened deference to traditional, hierarchical authority and gave colonists shared intercolonial experiences and vocabularies (revivalist preaching networks; natural-rights political language) that, combined with decades of practical self-government under salutary neglect, laid essential intellectual groundwork for later colonial unity, even though neither movement was itself a political movement aimed at self-government.

**Outline:** (1) Great Awakening – explain how itinerant preaching (Whitefield, Edwards) crossed colony lines and challenged established clerical authority, fostering a shared religious experience and habits of questioning inherited institutions. (2) Enlightenment – explain how Locke's

natural-rights, social-contract theory and Franklin's civic rationalism spread among colonial elites, providing a political vocabulary later used to justify resistance to British authority. (3) Institutional context – connect both movements to the pre-existing growth of colonial self-government (assemblies, town meetings, print culture and the Zenger trial) that gave colonists real, lived experience of governing themselves, arguing that ideas alone did not create self-government but reinforced and articulated a practice already underway.

### Bài tập luyện tập

*Excerpt (paraphrased), Jonathan Edwards's sermon imagery of sinners held over hellfire "as a spider is held over a flame" (1741): this sermon is best understood as an example of:*

- |                                                                                                                  |                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Enlightenment rationalism's emphasis on reason over emotion in religious life                                | (C) A legal argument for freedom of the press in the colonies     |
| (B) The Great Awakening's use of vivid, emotional appeals to urge listeners toward personal religious conversion | (D) A mercantilist argument for tighter colonial trade regulation |

### Lời giải chi tiết

Edwards's vivid, terrifying imagery was designed to provoke an immediate emotional response leading to personal conversion – the hallmark of Great Awakening preaching, not Enlightenment rationalism, which emphasized calm reasoned argument rather than emotional appeal (A is the opposite movement). It has no connection to the Zenger trial's press-freedom argument (C) or to mercantilist trade policy (D), both unrelated topics from the same broad period. **(B).**

### Bài tập luyện tập

Colonial assemblies such as the House of Burgesses and the Massachusetts General Court steadily expanded their control over local taxation and legislation between 1607 and 1754. This development is most directly explained by which combination of factors?

- |                                                                                                                 |                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Direct royal orders instructing colonial governors to surrender all authority to local assemblies           | consistent enforcement of imperial authority under salutary neglect     |
| (B) The precedent of early representative government (e.g., the House of Burgesses) combined with Britain's in- | (C) The abolition of the Navigation Acts after 1651                     |
|                                                                                                                 | (D) A formal treaty between Britain and the colonies granting self-rule |

### Lời giải chi tiết

Colonial self-government grew organically from early institutions like the House of Burgesses (1619) and town meetings, reinforced by decades of weak, inconsistent British enforcement of imperial trade and administrative authority (salutary neglect) – not from any deliberate royal order surrendering power (A, the opposite of the crown's intent), the (nonexistent) abolition of the Navigation Acts, which in fact expanded after 1651 (C), or any formal treaty, since no such grant of self-rule existed before the Revolution (D). **(B).**

## Period 3 --- Revolution and the New Nation (1754--1800)

**Mục tiêu Unit:** Phân tích nguyên nhân và diễn biến của cuộc Khủng hoảng Đế quốc (1763–1776): nợ chiến tranh của Anh sau Chiến tranh Pháp và người bản địa, chuỗi đạo luật thuế (Tem, Townshend, Trà) và phong trào phản kháng thuộc địa; nắm nền tảng triết học Khai sáng (Locke, chủ nghĩa cộng hoà, Thomas Paine) của Cách mạng Mỹ; trình bày diễn biến quân sự – chiến lược của cuộc Chiến tranh giành độc lập (Lexington/Concord, Saratoga, liên minh Pháp, Yorktown) và ý nghĩa của Tuyên ngôn Độc lập (1776); đánh giá tác động và giới hạn của lý tưởng Cách mạng đối với chế độ nô lệ và vai trò phụ nữ; phân tích điểm yếu của Điều khoản Liên bang qua Sắc lệnh Tây Bắc (1787) và Cuộc nổi dậy Shays (1786–87); nắm cấu trúc Hiến pháp 1787 (các thoả hiệp lớn, tam quyền phân lập, chế độ liên bang) và cuộc tranh luận phê chuẩn (Federalist/Anti-Federalist, Bill of Rights 1791); phân tích việc định hình nền cộng hoà mới dưới thời Washington (kế hoạch tài chính Hamilton, Cuộc nổi dậy Whiskey) và chính sách đối ngoại thời kỳ đầu (Tuyên bố Trung lập, Hiệp ước Jay, Hiệp ước Pinckney); hiểu sự hình thành hệ thống lưỡng đảng đầu tiên (Federalist và Dân chủ-Cộng hoà) cùng các sự kiện thời Adams (Vụ XYZ, chiến tranh không tuyên bố với Pháp, Đạo luật Người nước ngoài và Nổi loạn 1798, bầu cử 1800 – “Cách mạng năm 1800”).

### 3.1 Contextualizing Period 3

Between 1754 and 1800, thirteen separate British colonies – each with its own government, economy, and regional identity – transformed into an independent, constitutionally unified republic. This transformation did not follow a straight line. It moved through an imperial crisis (1754–1775) in which colonists reluctantly concluded that Parliament posed a threat to their rights as Englishmen; a war for independence (1775–1783) that required improvised military strategy against the world’s most powerful army and navy; a period of weak central government under the Articles of Confederation (1781–1789) that nearly failed outright; and finally the drafting and defense of a new Constitution (1787–1800) that had to be tested, almost immediately, by domestic rebellion, foreign war scares, and the birth of organized political parties. Because so many “firsts” happen in this period – first declaration of independence, first written national constitution, first peaceful transfer of power between rival parties – Period 3 carries some of the heaviest weighting of any period on the AP exam.

#### Theme: NAT – National Identity

A recurring thread across Period 3 is the slow, contested construction of an “American” identity out of thirteen colonies that had previously thought of themselves as separate British provinces with more in common with London than with one another. Committees of Correspondence, shared grievances against Parliament, a common Continental Army, and a written Constitution all served as identity-building institutions – but that identity remained incomplete, since it excluded enslaved people, most women, and Native nations from full citizenship.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Giai đoạn 3 (1754–1800) kể câu chuyện 13 thuộc địa Anh rời rạc trở thành một nước cộng hoà lập hiến thống nhất, qua bốn giai đoạn: khủng hoảng đế quốc (1754–75), chiến tranh giành độc lập (1775–83), chính phủ liên bang yếu theo Điều khoản Liên bang (1781–89), và củng cố nền cộng hoà mới theo Hiến pháp (1787–1800). Đây là một trong những giai đoạn có tỷ trọng cao nhất trong đề thi AP vì có nhiều “lần đầu tiên” mang tính nền tảng cho lịch sử Mỹ.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Compared to the loosely connected, regionally distinct colonial societies of Period 2 (1607–1754), British North America during Period 3 (1754–1800) is most accurately characterized by which overall trend?

- |                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) A steady decline in colonial population and trade with Britain                                                                                     | (C) Continuous, uninterrupted loyalty to the British crown through 1800                     |
| (B) The gradual construction of a shared political identity across separate colonies, culminating in independent nationhood and a written constitution | (D) The abandonment of representative government in favor of direct rule by royal governors |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Period 3's overarching narrative is the transformation of thirteen separate, self-interested colonies into a politically unified republic: shared resistance to parliamentary taxation, a joint Continental Congress and army, and ultimately a common written Constitution built a national identity that had not existed in 1754. Colonial population and trade grew, not declined, during this era (A is wrong); loyalty to the crown collapsed rather than continued (C is wrong); and representative self-government expanded, first through state constitutions and then through the federal Constitution, rather than disappearing (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

A historian treating 1754–1800 as a single coherent period would most likely justify this periodization by arguing that:

- |                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Little of historical significance occurred in North America during these decades                                                                            | politics                                                                         |
| (B) The years mark a continuous process by which British colonies became a self-governing constitutional republic, from imperial war through founding-era party | (C) Slavery was abolished throughout British North America during this period    |
|                                                                                                                                                                 | (D) The United States acquired all of its eventual continental territory by 1800 |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Periodization in APUSH groups years around a unifying process of change; here that process is the path from colonial dependency, through imperial crisis and revolution, to the establishment and early testing of a constitutional republic. Far from being historically empty, these decades were transformative (A is wrong); slavery was not abolished nationwide – only gradually in some Northern states (C is wrong); and the Louisiana Purchase and other major territorial acquisitions occurred after 1800, in Period 4 (D is wrong). **(B)**.

### 3.2 The French and Indian War and Its Aftermath

The **French and Indian War** (1754–1763), the North American theater of the global Seven Years' War, pitted Britain and its colonies against France and a network of Native allies. Fighting began in the Ohio Country, where a young Virginia militia officer named George Washington skirmished with French forces – an early sign of how contested the western frontier had become. In 1754, delegates from several colonies met at the **Albany Congress** and endorsed Benjamin Franklin's Albany Plan of Union, a proposal for intercolonial cooperation on defense and Native diplomacy; colonial assemblies, jealous of their individual autonomy, rejected it, but it previewed later arguments for union. British victory, confirmed by the **Treaty of Paris (1763)**, removed France as a colonial power in North America – Britain gained Canada and all French territory east of the Mississippi, while Spain (compensated for its wartime losses) received French Louisiana west of the Mississippi and ceded Florida to Britain.

Victory came at enormous cost. Britain's national debt roughly doubled, and maintaining a peacetime army in North America to police the vast new territory and manage relations with Native nations was expensive. Native peoples of the Ohio Valley and Great Lakes, alarmed by British settlers pushing onto their lands and by the end of French diplomatic gift-giving, rose up in **Pontiac's War** (1763), a Native uprising led by the Ottawa leader Pontiac that destroyed several British forts. In response – and to stabilize the frontier without further costly warfare – the crown issued the **Proclamation of 1763**, banning colonial settlement west of the Appalachian Mountains. Colonists, many of whom had fought the French and Indian War partly to open the West to settlement, resented and widely ignored the line.

#### Theme: MIG – Migration and Settlement

The Proclamation of 1763 tried to freeze the westward edge of colonial settlement at the Appalachian crest, but land-hungry colonists, speculators, and veterans promised western land grants for wartime service simply moved past it. The gap between British policy on paper and the reality of westward migration on the ground is a recurring pattern in this period, and it fed colonial resentment of a distant Parliament that seemed not to understand – or not to care about – colonial ambitions.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Chiến tranh Pháp và người bản địa (1754–63) kết thúc với chiến thắng của Anh (Hiệp ước Paris 1763), loại Pháp khỏi Bắc Mỹ, nhưng khiến Anh nợ nần nặng nề. Cuộc nổi dậy Pontiac (1763) của người bản địa vùng Ngũ Đại Hồ khiến Anh ban hành Tuyên bố 1763, cấm thực dân định cư phía tây dãy Appalachian – một lệnh cấm bị phần lớn thực dân phớt lờ, gieo mầm bất mãn.

**Causation chain:** French and Indian War (1754–63) → British victory but crushing war debt → Pontiac's War exposes the cost of frontier defense → Proclamation of 1763 tries (and fails) to control settlement and reduce conflict → Britain turns to colonial taxation to pay down debt and fund frontier troops → the imperial crisis of the 1760s–70s begins. Nearly every AP prompt on the causes of the Revolution can be traced back to this single chain.

#### Bài tập luyện tập

The primary purpose of the Proclamation of 1763 was to:

- (A) Punish the thirteen colonies for insufficient support during the French and Indian War
- (B) Stabilize the frontier and reduce the likelihood of further costly conflict with Native peoples following Pontiac's War
- (C) Formally end the institution of slavery in newly acquired western territory
- (D) Grant colonial assemblies direct representation in Parliament

#### Lời giải chi tiết

The Proclamation responded directly to Pontiac's War: by banning settlement west of the Appalachians, the crown hoped to reduce friction with Native nations and avoid the expense of another frontier war so soon after a debt-inducing global conflict. It was not conceived as a punitive measure against the colonies (A), had nothing to do with slavery in this context (C), and did not grant colonists representation in Parliament – indeed, the absence of such representation is precisely what fueled the coming tax controversies (D). (B).

#### Bài tập luyện tập

Britain's massive war debt following the French and Indian War is most directly connected to which subsequent development?

- (A) The abolition of the Navigation Acts
- (B) Parliament's decision to impose a series of new taxes and duties directly on the American colonies
- (C) The founding of the Massachusetts Bay Colony
- (D) The Louisiana Purchase

#### Lời giải chi tiết

Facing a doubled national debt and the ongoing cost of stationing troops in North America, British ministers reasoned that the colonies – direct beneficiaries of the war – should help pay for it, leading to the Sugar Act, Stamp Act, Townshend Acts, and Tea Act. The Navigation Acts were not abolished but rather more strictly enforced in this era (A is wrong); Massachusetts Bay was founded in 1630, over a century earlier (C is wrong); and the Louisiana Purchase (1803) involved French, not British, territory and occurred decades later under Jefferson (D is wrong). (B).

### 3.3 Taxation Without Representation

Seeking new revenue rather than merely regulating trade, Parliament passed the **Sugar Act (1764)**, which actually lowered the existing duty on molasses but enforced it far more rigorously than before – a signal that the era of “salutary neglect” was ending. The **Stamp Act (1765)** went further: a direct, internal tax requiring colonists to purchase specially stamped paper for legal documents, newspapers, and playing cards. Because the Stamp Act taxed colonists directly rather than merely regulating imperial trade, it provoked the first colony-wide, coordinated resistance: the Stamp Act Congress (1765) petitioned the crown, the Sons of Liberty organized boycotts and intimidation of stamp distributors, and the slogan “**no taxation without representation**” crystallized the colonial constitutional objection – that only assemblies colonists themselves elected could legitimately tax them. Parliament repealed the Stamp Act in 1766 but simultaneously passed the **Declaratory Act**, asserting its authority to legislate for the colonies “in all cases whatsoever.”

Chancellor Charles Townshend then tried a different approach: the **Townshend Acts (1767)** imposed indirect, external duties on imported goods (glass, lead, paint, paper, and tea), reasoning that

colonists had objected specifically to *internal* taxes. Colonists rejected this distinction and renewed boycotts; tension in occupied Boston culminated in the **Boston Massacre (1770)**, in which British soldiers killed five colonists – an incident propagandists like Paul Revere publicized widely. Parliament repealed most Townshend duties in 1770 but kept the tax on tea as a symbolic assertion of authority. The **Tea Act (1773)** then granted the financially struggling British East India Company a monopoly on colonial tea sales while retaining that existing tax; Bostonians, refusing to accept even a cheaper but still-taxed tea as legitimate, dumped an entire shipment into the harbor in the **Boston Tea Party (December 1773)**. Parliament's punitive response, the **Coercive Acts** (called the “**Intolerable Acts**” by colonists, 1774), closed the port of Boston, restructured the Massachusetts government, and expanded the crown's power to quarter troops; many colonists also lumped in the separately motivated **Quebec Act (1774)**, which extended Quebec's boundaries into the Ohio Valley and tolerated Catholicism, as a further threat. Intercolonial **Committees of Correspondence** helped coordinate a unified response: the **First Continental Congress** (Philadelphia, September–October 1774) endorsed the Suffolk Resolves and organized the Continental Association, a coordinated colony-wide boycott of British goods.

### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

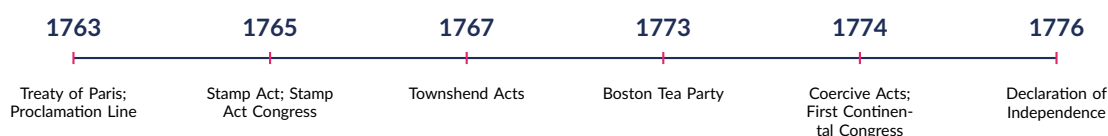
Colonial resistance escalated through a repeating cycle: Britain imposes a revenue measure to pay war debts → colonists organize boycotts and petitions invoking constitutional rights → Parliament repeals or modifies the measure while reasserting ultimate authority (as in the Declaratory Act) → a new measure provokes fresh resistance, each round more organized and more intercolonial than the last. This escalating cycle – not any single act – explains the drift toward revolution between 1764 and 1774.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Sau chiến tranh, Anh liên tục đánh thuế thuộc địa: Đạo luật Đường (1764), Đạo luật Tem (1765, thuế trực tiếp, gây phản ứng dữ dội và khẩu hiệu “không đại diện thì không đóng thuế”), Đạo luật Townshend (1767, thuế gián tiếp đánh vào hàng nhập khẩu), và Đạo luật Trà (1773, dẫn đến Tiệc trà Boston). Anh đáp trả bằng Đạo luật Cưỡng chế/Không thể Chấp nhận (1774), khiến các thuộc địa triệu tập Đại hội Lục địa lần thứ nhất (1774) để phối hợp tẩy chay hàng Anh.

(!) **Lỗi thường gặp:** Students routinely mix up the Stamp Act (1765) and the Townshend Acts (1767). The Stamp Act was a *direct, internal* tax on paper goods produced and used within the colonies (documents, newspapers, playing cards); it was repealed within a year after intense boycotts. The Townshend Acts, passed two years later, were *indirect, external* duties on goods imported into the colonies (glass, lead, paint, tea); Parliament deliberately chose this “external” form because it believed (wrongly) that colonists objected only to internal taxation. Get the order and the internal/external distinction backwards and an LEQ or DBQ argument about escalating imperial policy will misfire.



Timeline: the imperial crisis, from imperial war debt to open rebellion, 1763–1776.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Which of the following correctly distinguishes the Stamp Act (1765) from the Townshend Acts (1767)?

- (A) The Stamp Act was an external duty on imports, while the Townshend Acts were internal taxes on domestic goods
- (B) The Stamp Act was a direct, internal tax on colonial paper goods, while the Townshend Acts were indirect, external duties on imported goods
- (C) The Stamp Act applied only to New England, while the Townshend Acts applied only to the Southern colonies
- (D) The Stamp Act was never repealed, while the Townshend Acts were repealed within one year

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The Stamp Act taxed paper goods produced and used within the colonies directly (an “internal” tax); the Townshend Acts, passed after Parliament concluded (incorrectly) that colonists distinguished between internal and external taxation, imposed duties on goods imported from Britain (an “external” tax). Choice (A) reverses the categories; (C) is geographically wrong, since both applied to all thirteen colonies; (D) is factually backwards – the Stamp Act was repealed within about a year (1766) after fierce resistance, while most Townshend duties were repealed in 1770 but the tea tax was deliberately retained. **(B).**

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Parliament’s passage of the Coercive (Intolerable) Acts in 1774 was most directly a response to:

- (A) The Stamp Act Congress of 1765
- (B) The Boston Tea Party of December 1773
- (C) The Battle of Lexington and Concord
- (D) The Albany Plan of Union

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The Coercive Acts were Parliament’s punitive answer to the destruction of East India Company tea in Boston harbor in December 1773; they closed the port of Boston until the tea was paid for and restricted Massachusetts self-government as punishment. The Stamp Act Congress (A) predates the Tea Party by eight years and was itself a colonial response to a different law; Lexington and Concord (C) came *after* the Coercive Acts, partly as a result of them; the Albany Plan (D) dates to 1754, two decades earlier and concerned intercolonial union, not taxation. **(B).**

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).**

- (a) Briefly describe ONE action taken by the First Continental Congress (1774) in response to the Coercive Acts.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way the First Continental Congress reflected growing intercolonial cooperation compared to earlier colonial responses (e.g., to the Stamp Act).
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way Parliament’s and the crown’s response to the First Continental Congress escalated the crisis toward armed conflict.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The First Continental Congress endorsed the Suffolk Resolves (which declared the Coercive Acts unconstitutional) and organized the Continental Association, a coordinated boycott of British goods enforced by local committees across the colonies.
- (b) Unlike the narrower Stamp Act Congress of 1765 (nine colonies, focused on a single tax), the First Continental Congress brought together delegates from twelve colonies to coordinate a unified economic and political response to a broader set of grievances, reflecting a more developed sense of intercolonial identity and organization built up over a decade of Committees of Correspondence.
- (c) King George III and Parliament refused to negotiate, declared Massachusetts in a state of rebellion, and reinforced British troops in Boston, setting the stage for the armed clash at Lexington and Concord in April 1775.

**3.4 Philosophical Foundations of the American Revolution**

Colonial resistance drew on more than immediate grievances over taxes; it drew on a coherent Enlightenment political philosophy. John Locke's *Two Treatises of Government* (1689) argued that individuals possess **natural rights** – to life, liberty, and property – that exist prior to and independent of government, that legitimate government rests on the **consent of the governed** through a social contract, and that the people retain the right to alter or abolish a government that persistently violates those rights. Colonial pamphleteers fused Locke's natural-rights theory with English **republicanism**, a political tradition (traceable to classical Rome and radical "Country" Whig writers) that prized civic virtue, feared the corrupting effect of concentrated power, and viewed standing armies and unchecked executive authority as warning signs of encroaching tyranny. Colonists increasingly read British taxation and military occupation through this republican lens: not as isolated policy disputes, but as evidence of a deliberate conspiracy against liberty.

**Thomas Paine's** pamphlet *Common Sense* (January 1776) translated this philosophy into plain, forceful language for a mass audience, selling roughly 150,000 copies within months. Paine attacked hereditary monarchy itself as an absurdity ("of more worth is one honest man to society... than all the crowned ruffians that ever lived"), argued that reconciliation with Britain was no longer sensible given the distance and difference of interests between the two, and called directly for independence – a step the Continental Congress had not yet publicly endorsed. *Common Sense* is widely credited with shifting mainstream colonial opinion from seeking redress within the empire to demanding full separation.

**Theme: ARC – American and Regional Culture**

The explosion of pamphlets, newspapers, and pocket-sized political tracts in the 1760s–70s created a shared print culture across geographically scattered colonies. *Common Sense* could reach ordinary farmers and artisans, not just elites, because it was cheap, widely reprinted, and written in accessible prose rather than the Latin-inflected legal argument common in earlier pamphlets – a genuinely new, more democratic form of political persuasion.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Cách mạng Mỹ có nền tảng triết học rõ ràng: Locke cho rằng con người có các quyền tự nhiên (sống, tự do, tài sản) và chính phủ chỉ chính đáng khi có sự đồng thuận của người dân; nếu chính phủ vi phạm quyền này, người dân có quyền lật đổ. Chủ nghĩa cộng hoà lo sợ quyền lực tập trung làm tha hoá xã hội. *Common Sense* (1776) của Thomas Paine dùng ngôn ngữ bình dân để thuyết phục công chúng ủng hộ độc lập hoàn toàn thay vì hoà giải với Anh.

**Document analysis (HIPP): Thomas Paine, Common Sense, January 1776**

*Excerpt (paraphrased):* “Society in every state is a blessing, but government even in its best state is but a necessary evil... Of more worth is one honest man to society... than all the crowned ruffians that ever lived. In America, the law is king.”

**Historical situation:** published anonymously just as colonial opinion was shifting from seeking reconciliation toward considering full independence, several months after fighting had already begun at Lexington and Concord. **Intended audience:** ordinary colonists – farmers, artisans, and shopkeepers – not just the educated elite who typically read political pamphlets. **Purpose:** to persuade a mass readership that hereditary monarchy is inherently illegitimate and that independence, not reconciliation, is the only sensible course. **Point of view:** a recent English immigrant and radical political outsider, which explains both his willingness to attack the British monarchy in blunt terms unfamiliar to more cautious colonial elites and his effectiveness in reaching audiences that formal congressional resolutions could not.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

John Locke’s theory of natural rights and government by consent most directly influenced which feature of the Declaration of Independence?

- (A) Its list of specific taxes imposed by Parliament  
(B) Its opening assertion that governments derive their just powers from the consent of the governed and that the people may  
(C) Its call for a bicameral national legislature  
(D) Its provision for a national bank  
abolish a government that violates their natural rights

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Jefferson’s preamble closely echoes Locke: unalienable rights (life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness, adapted from Locke’s life, liberty, and property), government legitimated only by the consent of the governed, and the people’s right to alter or abolish a government that becomes destructive of those ends. The list of specific taxes (A) is a separate, more concrete section of grievances rather than the philosophical core; a bicameral legislature (C) and a national bank (D) are institutions from the 1787 Constitution and Hamilton’s 1791 financial program, respectively, not features of the Declaration. (B).

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using the *Common Sense* excerpt above and your knowledge of Period 3:

- (a) Briefly describe Paine’s central argument in *Common Sense*.  
(b) Briefly explain ONE reason *Common Sense* was especially effective at shifting colonial public opinion in early 1776.  
(c) Briefly explain ONE way *Common Sense* reflected broader republican political ideas of the era.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Paine argued that hereditary monarchy was an illegitimate and even absurd form of government, that reconciliation with Britain no longer served colonial interests, and that the colonies should declare full independence rather than continue seeking redress within the British Em-

pire.

(b) Written in plain, direct prose rather than formal legal or classical language and sold cheaply in enormous numbers, *Common Sense* reached ordinary artisans and farmers as well as elites, turning an elite political debate into a mass public argument for independence at the exact moment fighting had already begun.

(c) Paine's attack on hereditary monarchy and concentrated, unaccountable power reflects the republican fear that unchecked authority inevitably corrupts, and his insistence that "the law is king" (not any individual) reflects the republican ideal of government bound by law and answerable to the virtuous citizenry rather than to a hereditary ruler.

### 3.5 The American Revolution: War and Independence

#### 3.5.1 The outbreak of fighting and the Declaration of Independence

Fighting broke out at **Lexington and Concord** (April 19, 1775), when British troops marching to seize colonial munitions clashed with local militia – the "shot heard round the world." The **Second Continental Congress** convened weeks later, created the Continental Army under the command of **George Washington**, and, as a final gesture toward reconciliation, sent the Olive Branch Petition to King George III; the king rejected it and instead declared the colonies in open rebellion. On **July 4, 1776**, Congress adopted the **Declaration of Independence**, drafted principally by **Thomas Jefferson** (with input from a Committee of Five that also included John Adams and Benjamin Franklin). The Declaration's structure mirrors Lockean logic exactly: a philosophical preamble asserting natural rights and government by consent, a long list of specific grievances against George III intended to demonstrate a "long train of abuses" justifying revolution, and a formal declaration of independence and sovereign statehood.

#### Document analysis (HIPP): the Declaration of Independence, July 4, 1776

*Excerpt (grievances, paraphrased):* "He has dissolved Representative Houses repeatedly... He has kept among us, in times of peace, Standing Armies without the Consent of our legislatures... For imposing Taxes on us without our Consent... For depriving us in many cases, of the benefits of Trial by Jury..."

**Historical situation:** composed after more than a year of armed conflict and a decade of escalating imperial crisis, at the moment Congress formally severed ties with Britain. **Intended audience:** not only the British crown and Parliament but also potential foreign allies (especially France) and the American public, whose support for a costly war effort needed to be secured. **Purpose:** to justify revolution as a defensive, lawful response to a documented pattern of tyranny – not an impulsive or illegitimate act – and to establish the United States as a sovereign nation capable of forming foreign alliances and treaties. **Point of view:** colonial elites steeped in Lockean and republican political theory, which explains why the grievances are framed as violations of established rights (representation, jury trial, consent to taxation and standing armies) rather than as purely economic complaints.

#### 3.5.2 Military and strategic factors in American victory

On paper, Britain held overwhelming advantages: a professional army, the world's dominant navy, and vastly greater financial resources. American victory depended on turning geography and strategy against those advantages. Washington, having lost most early battles around New York, adopted a deliberately cautious strategy: avoid a single decisive battle that could destroy the Continental Army, preserve his forces, and wear down British will to continue an expensive war fought an ocean away from home and deep inside hostile, unfamiliar terrain. Local militias and partisan fighters – most famously Francis Marion, the "Swamp Fox," in the Carolina backcountry – supplemented the

Continental Army with hit-and-run, guerrilla-style tactics well suited to American terrain and civilian support networks, tactics the more rigidly trained British regulars struggled to counter. A surprise crossing of the Delaware River and victory at **Trenton** (December 1776) revived flagging morale after a string of defeats, and the brutal winter encampment at **Valley Forge** (1777–1778), where Prussian officer Baron von Steuben drilled the Continental Army into a more disciplined force, proved a turning point in military professionalism.

#### Theme: GEO – Geography and the Environment

Britain's advantages in trained manpower and naval power were repeatedly offset by American geography: vast distances stretched British supply lines across an ocean, unfamiliar and often densely forested terrain hindered conventional European-style battle tactics, and a hostile or divided civilian population made it difficult for British forces to hold territory once they took it. The war's decisive Southern campaign (1778–1781) shows this clearly: British forces could capture cities like Savannah and Charleston but could never fully pacify the surrounding countryside, where partisan militia continued to operate.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Chiến tranh nổ ra tại Lexington và Concord (4/1775). Đại hội Lục địa lần hai bổ nhiệm Washington chỉ huy quân đội Lục địa; Tuyên ngôn Độc lập được thông qua ngày 4/7/1776, do Jefferson soạn thảo chính, dựa trên triết lý Locke. Washington áp dụng chiến lược thận trọng (tránh giao chiến quyết định, bảo toàn lực lượng), kết hợp dân quân đánh du kích và lợi thế địa lý (chiến trường xa nước Anh, địa hình xa lạ) để làm hao mòn ý chí của Anh.

### 3.5.3 The French alliance and the war's end

The American victory at **Saratoga** (September–October 1777), where General Horatio Gates forced the surrender of an entire British army under General Burgoyne, convinced France that the American cause was militarily viable. France formally allied with the United States in 1778, providing decisive naval power, money, arms, and eventually troops – without which the final victory at Yorktown would have been extremely unlikely. Fighting later shifted to the South (1778–1781), where British forces captured Savannah and Charleston but bled steadily from partisan attacks and costly conventional battles such as Cowpens (January 1781) and Guilford Courthouse (March 1781), which, though tactically inconclusive, wore down Cornwallis's army. Cornwallis withdrew to **Yorktown**, Virginia, where a French fleet under Admiral de Grasse defeated the Royal Navy at the Battle of the Chesapeake, cutting off any British escape or resupply by sea, while combined American and French land forces under Washington and Rochambeau besieged the town. Cornwallis surrendered on **October 19, 1781**, effectively ending major fighting. The **Treaty of Paris (1783)** formally recognized American independence, set the western boundary at the Mississippi River, granted American fishing rights off Newfoundland, and included (largely unenforced) provisions regarding Loyalist property and British withdrawal from western forts.

**Saratoga (1777) vs. Yorktown (1781):** Saratoga was the diplomatic and strategic turning point – it convinced France to ally with the United States, transforming a colonial rebellion into an international war Britain could not easily win. Yorktown was the war-ending battle – made possible by the French naval and land support that Saratoga secured. Neither victory alone explains American success; together they show why foreign intervention, not American military strength in isolation, was decisive in the war's final phase.

## LEQ thesis + outline model

**Prompt:** “Evaluate the extent to which military and strategic factors, as opposed to foreign intervention, explain the American victory in the Revolutionary War.”

**Model thesis:** While French financial, naval, and military support after 1778 was ultimately indispensable to the war’s conclusion at Yorktown, American strategic choices – Washington’s deliberate avoidance of a single decisive battle, the effective use of geography and partisan militia tactics in the Southern campaign, and the steady professionalization of the Continental Army after Valley Forge – were what kept the Revolution alive long enough for foreign intervention to matter at all, making domestic military strategy and foreign alliance mutually necessary rather than competing explanations.

**Outline:**

- **Body 1 (strategy/geography):** Washington’s Fabian strategy preserved the army after early defeats around New York; guerrilla tactics by militia (Francis Marion) exploited unfamiliar Southern terrain against British regulars.
- **Body 2 (foreign intervention):** Saratoga (1777) persuaded France to ally (1778); French naval victory at the Chesapeake (1781) and combined siege forces made Yorktown possible.
- **Body 3 (synthesis/complication):** Without surviving the war’s early years through strategic caution, there would have been no viable American force left for France to ally with by 1778 – the two factors were sequentially interdependent, not separately sufficient.

## Bài tập luyện tập

The most direct consequence of the American victory at Saratoga (1777) was:

- |                                                                                                               |                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) The immediate British surrender and end of the war                                                        | (C) The drafting of the Declaration of Independence   |
| (B) France’s decision to formally ally with the United States, providing decisive naval and financial support | (D) The ratification of the Articles of Confederation |

## Lời giải chi tiết

Saratoga persuaded the French monarchy that American independence was a realistic outcome worth backing militarily, leading directly to the 1778 Treaty of Alliance; French ships, money, and eventually troops proved decisive at Yorktown four years later. The war continued for four more years after Saratoga, so (A) is wrong; the Declaration (C) came a full year *before* Saratoga, in 1776; the Articles of Confederation (D) were drafted by Congress in 1777 for domestic governance reasons unrelated to the battle. **(B).**

## Bài tập luyện tập

Washington’s decision to avoid large, decisive pitched battles against British forces for much of the war reflected an understanding that:

- (A) The Continental Army was numerically and materially superior to British forces than winning any single battle
- (B) Preserving the Continental Army as a functioning fighting force, even through repeated tactical retreats, mattered more
- (C) The war could be won only through direct assaults on London
- (D) Congress had ordered Washington to surrender as soon as possible

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Washington recognized that the Continental Army, chronically short on troops, supplies, and training compared to British regulars, could not survive a war of decisive set-piece battles; his strategy prioritized the army's survival and Britain's exhaustion over dramatic but risky victories, buying time until French intervention and war-weariness in Britain shifted the balance. The Continental Army was consistently the weaker force in material terms, not the stronger one (A is wrong); no serious plan ever proposed invading Britain itself (C is wrong); and Congress never ordered surrender (D is wrong). **(B).**

**Bài tập luyện tập****Short-answer question (SAQ style).**

- (a) Briefly describe ONE military or strategic factor that contributed to American victory in the Revolutionary War.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE reason France chose to formally ally with the United States after 1777.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way the terms of the Treaty of Paris (1783) reflected a diplomatically favorable outcome for the United States.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Washington's strategy of avoiding decisive battles and preserving the Continental Army, combined with the use of geography and partisan militia tactics (as in the Southern campaign), allowed American forces to outlast British patience and resources despite Britain's material advantages.
- (b) The decisive American victory at Saratoga (1777) demonstrated that the Continental Army could defeat and capture an entire British force, convincing France – eager to weaken its rival Britain after its own losses in the Seven Years' War – that supporting American independence was a militarily credible and strategically valuable investment.
- (c) The treaty secured full recognition of American independence, a western boundary extending to the Mississippi River (far more territory than the coastal colonies alone), and continued fishing rights off Newfoundland – generous terms that reflected both British war-weariness and skillful American diplomacy (Franklin, Adams, and Jay) in Paris.

## 3.6 Revolutionary Ideals and Their Limits

### 3.6.1 State constitutions and republican experiments

Even before the war ended, individual states wrote new constitutions embodying republican principles: most created bicameral legislatures with expanded (though still property-based) white male suffrage, regular elections, and written bills of rights protecting individual liberties – Pennsylvania's 1776 constitution went furthest, creating a unicameral legislature with no governor and broad suffrage for taxpaying men. These state constitutions served as working laboratories for the balance of power and protection of rights later refined at the federal level in 1787.

### 3.6.2 Abolitionist stirrings and slavery's contradictions

Revolutionary rhetoric about natural rights and equality proved difficult to reconcile with the continued enslavement of hundreds of thousands of Black Americans, and the contradiction produced real, if limited, change in the North. **Vermont's constitution (1777)** banned slavery outright, the first political entity in North America to do so; Pennsylvania passed a **Gradual Abolition Act (1780)**; and Massachusetts courts, interpreting the state's 1780 constitutional declaration that "all men are born free and equal," effectively ended slavery there through the *Quock Walker* case (1783). Manumission and abolition societies formed in several Northern states. Yet the contradiction was not resolved nationally: the Deep South's plantation economy depended ever more heavily on enslaved labor, and Southern delegates at the 1787 Constitutional Convention insisted on constitutional protections for slavery (the Three-Fifths Compromise and a twenty-year guarantee against a federal ban on the slave trade) as the price of union.

### 3.6.3 Republican Motherhood and the status of women

Revolutionary ideology also reframed, without fundamentally transforming, women's social role. **Abigail Adams's** March 1776 letter urging her husband John to "remember the ladies" in any new legal code – and his dismissive reply – illustrates both women's political consciousness during the Revolution and the era's firm limits on translating that consciousness into formal rights. The ideology of **Republican Motherhood** held that women, though still excluded from voting and officeholding, played an essential civic role as mothers responsible for raising virtuous sons capable of republican self-government; this logic helped justify a modest expansion of female education (Judith Sargent Murray's 1790 essay "On the Equality of the Sexes" argued for women's intellectual equality on similar grounds). New Jersey's 1776 constitution inadvertently allowed some property-owning single women to vote, a right rescinded by state law in 1807.

#### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

Revolutionary natural-rights language proved to be a double-edged sword: it inspired real challenges to slavery in the North and new arguments for women's civic worth, but it also stopped well short of universal application. Enslaved African Americans, most women, Native peoples, and property-less men remained excluded from full political membership in the new republic – a gap between founding ideals and lived reality that recurs across nearly every later period of U.S. history.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Lý tưởng Cách mạng về quyền tự nhiên và bình đẳng tạo ra mâu thuẫn với chế độ nô lệ: Vermont (1777), Pennsylvania (1780), và Massachusetts (qua vụ *Quock Walker*, 1783) bãi bỏ nô lệ, nhưng miền Nam vẫn phụ thuộc vào lao động nô lệ và bảo vệ chế độ này trong Hiến pháp 1787. Tư tưởng "Người mẹ Cộng hòa" (Republican Motherhood) nâng cao vai trò giáo dục của phụ nữ trong việc nuôi dạy công dân đức hạnh, nhưng phụ nữ vẫn không có quyền bầu cử hay giữ chức vụ công.

#### SAQ model outline

**Prompt:** Using your knowledge of Period 3, respond to (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly describe ONE way Revolutionary-era ideals affected the legal status of enslaved people in the Northern states.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE reason those same ideals did not end slavery in the Southern states.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way Revolutionary-era ideals affected the social or civic role of white women.

**Model answers:**

- (a) Natural-rights rhetoric and new state constitutional language (e.g., Massachusetts's "all men are born free and equal") gave abolitionist-minded lawyers and enslaved petitioners legal grounds to challenge slavery in court, leading several Northern states (Vermont, Pennsylvania, Massachusetts) to abolish or begin gradually abolishing slavery between 1777 and the 1780s.
- (b) The Southern economy remained structurally dependent on enslaved plantation labor (especially tobacco, rice, and indigo), and Southern political and economic elites successfully insisted on constitutional protections for slavery (the Three-Fifths Compromise, a twenty-year delay on banning the slave trade) as a condition of forming a union, prioritizing economic interest and political unity over consistent application of natural-rights principles.
- (c) Republican Motherhood ideology gave women a valued, if indirect, civic role as the moral and intellectual educators of future citizens, which helped justify expanded access to female education even though formal political rights (voting, officeholding) remained almost entirely denied to women.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Abigail Adams's 1776 request that her husband "remember the ladies" when drafting new laws, and John Adams's dismissive response, most directly illustrate:

- (A) Women's full legal equality with men under Revolutionary-era state constitutions
- (B) The gap between Revolutionary rhetoric of natural rights and the actual, still-limited legal and political status of women
- (C) The success of the Seneca Falls Convention
- (D) The abolition of slavery throughout the new nation

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Abigail Adams's letter shows women were politically engaged and aware of the Revolution's rhetorical possibilities, but John Adams's dismissive reply – and the fact that no Revolutionary-era state extended full legal or political rights to women – shows how far actual practice lagged behind the language of natural rights and equality. Women did not gain full legal equality in this period (A is wrong); Seneca Falls (C) occurred in 1848, in Period 4; slavery was not abolished nationwide in this era, only in some Northern states (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).**

- (a) Briefly describe ONE feature of a state constitution written during or shortly after the Revolutionary War.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way such state constitutions reflected republican political principles.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way these state-level experiments influenced the federal Constitution drafted in 1787.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Pennsylvania's 1776 constitution created a unicameral legislature with no governor and broad suffrage for taxpaying white men, while most other states adopted bicameral legislatures paired with a weaker executive and a written bill of rights.
- (b) These constitutions reflected republican fears of concentrated executive power (by weakening or eliminating strong governors) and republican commitments to written, enumerated

protections of individual liberty (bills of rights) and regular elections accountable to the citizenry.

(c) The federal Constitutional Convention drew directly on this decade of state-level experimentation – for example, rejecting Pennsylvania’s unicameral, executive-less model in favor of a stronger, separated executive branch, while adopting the widespread state practice of enumerating individual rights, which culminated in the federal Bill of Rights of 1791.

### 3.7 The Articles of Confederation: Promise and Weakness

Fearful of recreating the centralized, potentially tyrannical power they had just fought a revolution against, the Continental Congress drafted the **Articles of Confederation**, ratified by all thirteen states in 1781 only after disputes over western land claims were resolved. The Articles created a deliberately weak national government: a unicameral Congress in which each state had one vote regardless of population, no independent executive or national judiciary, no power to tax (Congress could only request funds from states, which frequently refused or delayed), no power to regulate interstate or foreign commerce, and a requirement of unanimous consent from all thirteen states to amend the document at all.

Despite these severe limitations, the Confederation government achieved one enduring success: the **Land Ordinance (1785)**, which established an orderly grid survey system for selling western land, and especially the **Northwest Ordinance (1787)**, which created a clear, fair process for organizing the territory north of the Ohio River into new states admitted on equal footing with the original thirteen, banned slavery in that territory, and set aside land in every township to fund public education. Its failures, however, were glaring: the government could not pay Revolutionary War veterans or foreign creditors, could not prevent states from imposing tariffs on one another’s goods, and could not respond effectively when cash-strapped farmers in western Massachusetts – burdened by debt, high state taxes, and the threat of losing their farms to foreclosure – rose up in **Shays’s Rebellion (1786–1787)**. Led by Revolutionary War veteran Daniel Shays, the rebels closed courts to prevent foreclosure proceedings and attempted to seize the federal arsenal at Springfield; because Congress had no power to raise an army or funds, Massachusetts had to rely on a privately financed state militia to suppress the uprising. The episode alarmed nationalists such as Washington and Madison and directly spurred the Annapolis Convention (1786) and then the Constitutional Convention (1787).

#### Theme: MIG – Migration and Settlement

The Northwest Ordinance’s greatest lasting achievement was establishing an orderly, predictable process for turning federally administered western territory into new, equal states – a template that shaped American westward migration and territorial expansion for the next century. By banning slavery north of the Ohio River, it also drew an early – though incomplete and soon-contested – geographic line between free and slave territory.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Điều khoản Liên bang (1781) tạo chính phủ liên bang yếu: không có quyền đánh thuế, không quân đội thường trực, không cơ quan hành pháp/tư pháp trung ương. Thành công lớn nhất là Sắc lệnh Tây Bắc (1787) – thiết lập quy trình công bằng để lãnh thổ trở thành bang mới và cấm chế độ nô lệ ở đó. Thất bại lớn nhất là Cuộc nổi dậy Shays (1786–87): nông dân Massachusetts nổi dậy vì nợ nần, và chính phủ liên bang không thể phản ứng vì không có quyền lực – sự kiện này thúc đẩy trực tiếp Hội nghị Lập hiến năm 1787.

**Northwest Ordinance (1787) vs. Shays's Rebellion (1786–87):** these two events, occurring almost simultaneously, perfectly illustrate the Confederation government's mixed record. The Northwest Ordinance shows what the Confederation Congress *could* still accomplish through cooperative land policy; Shays's Rebellion shows what it fundamentally *could not* do – tax, raise an army, or enforce order – and it was this second, more visible failure that convinced political leaders a stronger national government was necessary.

### LEQ thesis + outline model

**Prompt:** “Evaluate the extent to which the government under the Articles of Confederation (1781–1789) was effective at governing the new nation.”

**Model thesis:** The Confederation government was effective in one important, lasting respect – its orderly system for organizing and admitting new western states under the Northwest Ordinance of 1787 – but its structural inability to tax, regulate commerce, or enforce law, dramatically exposed by Shays's Rebellion of 1786–1787, ultimately outweighed this success and convinced political leaders that only a fundamentally stronger national government, embodied in the 1787 Constitution, could secure the young republic's stability.

#### Outline:

- **Body 1 (success):** Land Ordinance (1785) and Northwest Ordinance (1787) created a fair, replicable process for territorial government and statehood, and banned slavery north of the Ohio River.
- **Body 2 (failure):** No power to tax, regulate interstate commerce, or maintain an army; inability to pay war debts or veterans; interstate tariff conflicts.
- **Body 3 (culminating failure and consequence):** Shays's Rebellion (1786–87) exposed the government's inability to respond to internal unrest, directly motivating the Annapolis and Philadelphia Conventions and the replacement of the Articles with the Constitution.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The Northwest Ordinance of 1787 is best remembered as a success of the Confederation government because it:

- |                                                                                                                             |                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Established a national bank to fund territorial government                                                              | while banning slavery in the region                                           |
| (B) Created a clear, orderly process for territories to organize governments and eventually join the Union as equal states, | (C) Granted the federal government the power to directly tax western settlers |
|                                                                                                                             | (D) Resolved the dispute over ratifying the Constitution                      |

### Lời giải chi tiết

The Northwest Ordinance provided a durable template – territorial government, a population threshold, and admission as a fully equal state – that guided American westward expansion for generations, and its ban on slavery in the Northwest Territory was a significant, if geographically limited, antislavery measure. A national bank (A) was part of Hamilton's later 1791 financial program under the Constitution, not the Confederation; the Confederation Congress still lacked direct taxing power even after 1787 (C is wrong); the Ordinance is unrelated to the separate 1787–1788 debate over ratifying the Constitution (D is wrong). (B).

**Bài tập luyện tập****Short-answer question (SAQ style).**

- (a) Briefly describe ONE specific weakness of the national government created by the Articles of Confederation.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way Shays's Rebellion (1786–1787) exposed this weakness.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way the Northwest Ordinance (1787) represented a genuine success of the Confederation government despite its overall weaknesses.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The Confederation Congress had no power to levy taxes directly; it could only request funds from the states, which frequently refused or paid late, leaving the national government chronically underfunded and unable to maintain an army or pay its debts.
- (b) When debt-burdened farmers in western Massachusetts closed courts and threatened the federal arsenal at Springfield, Congress had no funds and no power to raise an army to respond, forcing Massachusetts to rely on a privately financed militia – vividly demonstrating the national government's inability to guarantee domestic order.
- (c) The Northwest Ordinance established a fair, workable system for surveying, governing, and eventually admitting new states from the territory north of the Ohio River on equal terms with the original thirteen, and it banned slavery in that territory – proof that Confederation-era co-operation could still produce lasting, effective policy in the right circumstances.

### 3.8 The Constitutional Convention and the Ratification Debate

#### 3.8.1 The compromises of the Convention

Fifty-five delegates convened in Philadelphia in the summer of 1787, ostensibly to revise the Articles of Confederation but quickly moving to draft an entirely new frame of government. James Madison, whose detailed preparatory notes on the failures of confederations earned him the informal title “Father of the Constitution,” championed the **Virginia Plan**: a strong national government with a bicameral legislature apportioned by state population, favoring large states. Smaller states countered with the **New Jersey Plan**, which retained a unicameral legislature with equal state representation. The **Great (Connecticut) Compromise**, proposed by Roger Sherman, resolved the impasse by creating a bicameral Congress: a House of Representatives apportioned by population and a Senate with equal representation (two senators per state). Because population-based representation raised the explosive question of whether and how to count enslaved people, delegates adopted the **Three-Fifths Compromise**, counting three-fifths of a state's enslaved population for both congressional representation and direct taxation – a provision that gave Southern states disproportionate political power without extending enslaved people any rights. A related **Commerce Compromise** gave Congress power to regulate interstate and foreign commerce (addressing a core Confederation-era weakness) but barred taxes on exports and protected the Atlantic slave trade from federal prohibition for twenty years, until 1808.

#### 3.8.2 Federalists, Anti-Federalists, and ratification

Ratification required approval by nine of thirteen state conventions. Supporters of the new Constitution, calling themselves **Federalists**, included Alexander Hamilton, James Madison, and John Jay, who jointly published *The Federalist Papers* – 85 essays under the pseudonym “Publius” – to persuade New York voters. *Federalist No. 10* (Madison) argued that a large, diverse republic would actually control the dangers of factions better than a small one, since no single faction could easily dominate a nation containing so many competing interests; *Federalist No. 51* argued that dividing power among branches that could check one another (“ambition must be made to counteract ambi-

tion”) was the surest practical safeguard against tyranny. **Anti-Federalists** – including Patrick Henry, George Mason, and essayists writing as “Brutus” and the “Federal Farmer” – countered that a strong central government, especially one without an explicit bill of rights, risked recreating exactly the concentrated, unaccountable power the Revolution had been fought to escape, and warned that representatives in a large republic would be too distant from ordinary citizens to represent them faithfully. Ratification passed only after Federalists in key closely divided states (Massachusetts, Virginia, New York) promised to add a bill of rights as the new government’s first order of business – a promise fulfilled when Congress proposed twelve amendments in 1789 and the states ratified ten of them as the **Bill of Rights** in **1791**.

#### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

The ratification debate was fundamentally a debate about how much concentrated power a people who had just overthrown one distant, unaccountable government should be willing to grant to a new one. Federalists argued that a stronger union was necessary to survive as a nation among rival European powers and to prevent internal chaos like Shays’s Rebellion; Anti-Federalists argued that liberty, not efficiency, should be the new nation’s first priority. The Bill of Rights represents the compromise that let both sides claim victory.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Hội nghị Lập hiến Philadelphia (1787) tạo ra Hiến pháp mới qua các thoả hiệp: Thoả hiệp Lớn/Connecticut (Quốc hội lưỡng viện: Hạ viện theo dân số, Thượng viện bình đẳng mỗi bang); Thoả hiệp Ba phần Năm (tính 3/5 số nô lệ cho đại diện và thuế); Thoả hiệp Thương mại (Quốc hội quản lý thương mại nhưng không cấm buôn nô lệ trước 1808). Phe Federalist (Hamilton, Madison, Jay – tác giả Federalist Papers) ủng hộ chính quyền trung ương mạnh; phe Anti-Federalist lo ngại tái lập chế độ chuyên quyền, đòi có Bill of Rights – được thông qua năm 1791.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not confuse the three key ratification-era dates. The **Articles of Confederation** were ratified in **1781** (during the war). The **Constitution** was signed by delegates in September 1787 but not *ratified* by the required nine states until **June 1788**, with the new government beginning operations in 1789. The **Bill of Rights** was proposed by Congress in 1789 but not ratified by the states until **December 1791**. On the exam, “the Constitution was written in 1787” and “the Constitution took effect/was ratified in 1788” are both correct but refer to different steps in the process – and neither is the same event as the Bill of Rights four years later.

#### Document analysis (HIPP): Federalist No. 10, James Madison, 1787

*Excerpt (paraphrased):* “Among the numerous advantages promised by a well-constructed Union, none deserves to be more accurately developed than its tendency to break and control the violence of faction... Extend the sphere, and you take in a greater variety of parties and interests; you make it less probable that a majority... will have a common motive to invade the rights of other citizens.”

**Historical situation:** written during the 1787–1788 ratification campaign, when Anti-Federalists were arguing that a large republic could not preserve liberty because representatives would be too distant from the people. **Intended audience:** politically engaged citizens of New York, whose closely contested ratifying convention could determine the Constitution’s fate. **Purpose:** to refute the classical republican assumption (shared by many Anti-Federalists) that republics must be small to survive, by arguing that a large, diverse republic actually neutralizes the danger of any single faction seizing control. **Point of view:** Madison writes as an

architect of the Constitution defending his own design, which explains why the essay directly answers the specific size-and-faction objection Anti-Federalists were raising rather than addressing ratification concerns more broadly.

| Question              | Federalists                                                                                             | Anti-Federalists                                                              |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Central government    | Favored a strong national government able to tax, regulate commerce, and maintain an army               | Feared concentrated national power would recreate British-style tyranny       |
| Key figures/writings  | Hamilton, Madison, Jay; <i>The Federalist Papers</i>                                                    | Patrick Henry, George Mason; "Brutus," "Federal Farmer" essays                |
| View of republic size | A large, diverse republic controls factions better ( <i>Federalist</i> No. 10)                          | A republic must stay small for representatives to know and reflect the people |
| Bill of Rights        | Initially argued it was unnecessary (rights already implied); later promised one to secure ratification | Demanded an explicit bill of rights as a non-negotiable condition             |

Federalists vs. Anti-Federalists in the 1787–1788 ratification debate.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The Great (Connecticut) Compromise at the Constitutional Convention directly resolved a disagreement between:

- (A) Slave states and free states over counting the enslaved population regardless of population
- (B) Large states, which wanted representation by population, and small states, which wanted equal representation regardless of population
- (C) Federalists and Anti-Federalists over the need for a bill of rights
- (D) Northern and Southern states over regulating the Atlantic slave trade

### Lời giải chi tiết

The Virginia Plan (favored by large states) proposed representation by population in both houses of Congress; the New Jersey Plan (favored by small states) proposed equal representation regardless of population. The Great Compromise resolved this specific impasse by creating a bicameral Congress combining both principles. The enslaved-population question (A) was resolved by the separate Three-Fifths Compromise; the bill-of-rights question (C) was resolved later, during ratification, not at the Convention itself; the slave-trade question (D) was resolved by the Commerce Compromise. (B).

### Bài tập luyện tập

In *Federalist* No. 10, James Madison argues that the dangers of political factions are best controlled by:

- (A) Banning all political parties by constitutional amendment
- (B) Extending the republic over a large and diverse territory, making it harder for any single faction to form a dominating majority
- (C) Restricting voting rights to property-owning white men
- (D) Establishing an official state religion to unify public opinion

#### Lời giải chi tiết

Madison's central innovation in *Federalist No. 10* was to invert the classical assumption that republics must be small: he argued that a large, diverse republic, encompassing many competing interests and factions, makes it structurally harder for any single faction to gain a tyrannical majority. The Constitution never banned political parties outright (A is wrong, and parties emerged anyway within a few years); property qualifications for voting existed but are not Madison's argument in this essay (C is wrong); an established religion was never proposed federally and is unrelated to the essay's argument about factions (D is wrong). (B).

#### Bài tập luyện tập

##### Short-answer question (SAQ style).

- (a) Briefly describe ONE specific objection Anti-Federalists raised against the proposed Constitution.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way Federalists responded to this objection in order to secure ratification.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE long-term significance of the Bill of Rights (1791) for American constitutional government.

#### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Anti-Federalists objected that the proposed Constitution lacked an explicit bill of rights, leaving individual liberties (such as freedom of speech, religion, and protection from unreasonable searches) unprotected against a potentially powerful new national government.
- (b) Federalists in closely contested states such as Massachusetts and Virginia promised that, once ratified, the first Congress would immediately propose a bill of rights as a set of amendments – a promise James Madison personally fulfilled by drafting and shepherding the first ten amendments through Congress in 1789.
- (c) The Bill of Rights established an enduring textual foundation for individual civil liberties against federal power, and later, through incorporation against the states, it became the basis for most constitutional rights litigation in American history down to the present day.

### 3.9 The Constitution's Structure: Federalism, Separation of Powers, and Checks and Balances

The Constitution organized the new national government around three coequal branches: a bicameral **legislative** branch (Article I) that makes law, an **executive** branch (Article II) headed by a president who enforces law, and a **judicial** branch (Article III) that interprets law. This **separation of powers** was reinforced by an interlocking system of **checks and balances**: the president can veto legislation, but Congress can override that veto with a two-thirds vote; the Senate must confirm major executive and judicial appointments and ratify treaties; Congress can impeach and remove executive and judicial officers; and the judiciary, though its power of judicial review over federal laws was not made fully explicit until *Marbury v. Madison* (1803, Period 4), could interpret the Constitution's meaning in

disputes brought before it. A separate structural principle, **federalism**, divided sovereignty between the national government and the states: the Constitution enumerates specific federal powers (Article I, Section 8, including the “necessary and proper” or elastic clause), reserves undelegated powers to the states (later made explicit in the Tenth Amendment), and establishes federal law as supreme when it conflicts with state law (the Supremacy Clause, Article VI). Article V provided a deliberately difficult, but not impossible, amendment process, allowing the Constitution to adapt over time without depending on unanimous consent, unlike the fatally rigid amendment rule of the Articles of Confederation.

### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

Federalism and separation of powers solve two different problems. Separation of powers (legislative/executive/judicial, with checks and balances) guards against tyranny *within* the national government by preventing any one branch from dominating the others. Federalism guards against tyranny *between* levels of government by dividing power between the nation and the states. Exam questions frequently test whether students can tell these two structural safeguards apart.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Hiến pháp tổ chức chính phủ theo ba nhánh: lập pháp (Quốc hội), hành pháp (Tổng thống), tư pháp (Toà án), với hệ thống kiểm soát và cân bằng lẫn nhau (phủ quyết, phê chuẩn, luận tội). Chủ nghĩa liên bang (federalism) phân chia quyền lực giữa chính quyền trung ương và các bang, với Điều khoản Tối cao (Supremacy Clause) khẳng định luật liên bang có hiệu lực cao hơn luật bang khi xung đột. Điều V cho phép sửa đổi Hiến pháp – khác hẳn quy định đồng thuận tuyệt đối bất khả thi của Điều khoản Liên bang.

**Checks and balances vs. federalism, quick reference:** Presidential veto/congressional override, Senate confirmation, impeachment, judicial review → all examples of *checks and balances* among the three federal branches. Enumerated federal powers, reserved state powers (Tenth Amendment), the Supremacy Clause → all examples of *federalism* dividing power between national and state governments.

### Bài tập luyện tập

Which scenario best illustrates the constitutional principle of checks and balances, as distinct from federalism?

- |                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) A state legislature passing a law that conflicts with, and is therefore overridden by, a federal statute | (C) A state government exercising powers not delegated to the federal government, such as regulating local elections |
| (B) The Senate refusing to confirm a president's nominee to the federal judiciary                            | (D) Congress and a state government sharing the power to levy taxes                                                  |

### Lời giải chi tiết

Senate confirmation power is a check exercised by one federal branch (the legislature) over another (the executive's appointment power) – a textbook example of checks and balances operating *within* the national government. Options (A), (C), and (D) all describe the division of authority *between* the national government and the states, which is federalism, not checks and balances. **(B).**

### 3.10 Shaping a New Republic: Washington, Hamilton, and the New Government

George Washington's unanimous election as the first president (1789) came with the burden of establishing precedents for an office that existed only on paper. He assembled the first **cabinet** (including Secretary of State Thomas Jefferson and Secretary of the Treasury Alexander Hamilton), signed the Judiciary Act of 1789 creating a system of federal courts, and voluntarily stepped down after two terms – a precedent of restraint that lasted, by informal custom, until Franklin Roosevelt's presidency in the twentieth century.

Treasury Secretary **Alexander Hamilton** designed an ambitious financial program to establish the new government's credit and strengthen the union. His **Report on Public Credit** called for full federal **assumption** of both the existing national debt and the states' outstanding Revolutionary War debts at face value, reasoning that wealthy bondholders with a direct financial stake in the new government's success would become its most reliable political supporters. Because assumption benefited states (like Massachusetts) with heavy war debts more than states (like Virginia) that had already paid theirs off, Hamilton needed Southern votes; the **Compromise of 1790**, brokered informally over dinner with Jefferson and Madison, secured Southern support for assumption in exchange for locating the new permanent national capital along the Potomac River. Hamilton also proposed a **national bank** (chartered 1791, modeled on the Bank of England) to manage government funds, issue a stable currency, and extend credit – and protective **tariffs** along with an **excise tax on whiskey** to fund the government and service the newly assumed debt. The bank provoked a foundational constitutional debate: Hamilton argued for **loose construction** of the Constitution, defending the bank's constitutionality under the “necessary and proper” clause, while Jefferson argued for **strict construction**, insisting Congress could exercise only powers explicitly enumerated in the text.

The new excise tax on whiskey – a good western Pennsylvania farmers often distilled from surplus grain because it was easier to transport and sell than raw grain – provoked armed resistance in the **Whiskey Rebellion (1794)**. Unlike the Confederation government during Shays's Rebellion, the new federal government under the Constitution had the legal authority and practical capacity to respond: Washington personally led roughly 13,000 militia troops (a larger force than he had commanded for much of the Revolutionary War) to suppress the uprising, demonstrating decisively that the new national government could enforce federal law.

#### Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology

Hamilton's financial program was designed to convert the new nation's Revolutionary War debt from a liability into an asset: by guaranteeing repayment, the federal government gave wealthy creditors a direct financial stake in its survival, established American creditworthiness in European capital markets, and created, through the national bank, the beginnings of a stable financial and commercial infrastructure – a deliberate strategy to build economic strength as the foundation of national power.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Washington thiết lập nhiều tiền lệ quan trọng (nội các, hai nhiệm kỳ). Bộ trưởng Tài chính Hamilton đưa ra kế hoạch tài chính: liên bang tiếp nhận nợ chiến tranh của các bang (assumption), lập ngân hàng quốc gia (1791), và thuế tiêu thụ đặc biệt đối với rượu whiskey. Kế hoạch này gây tranh cãi hiến pháp (Hamilton – diễn giải rộng; Jefferson – diễn giải hẹp) và dẫn đến Cuộc nổi dậy Whiskey (1794), bị Washington đích thân dẫn quân dập tắt – chứng tỏ chính phủ mới theo Hiến pháp mạnh hơn hẳn so với thời Điều khoản Liên bang.

**Whiskey Rebellion (1794) vs. Shays's Rebellion (1786–87):** both were armed tax/debt protests by struggling farmers, but their outcomes reveal the core difference between the Articles of Confederation and the Constitution. Under the Articles, Massachusetts had to rely on a privately funded militia because the national government could not act. Under the Constitution, Washington commanded a large federal militia force directly, proving the new government possessed real enforcement power – exactly the capability the Constitution had been designed to provide.

### SAQ model outline

**Prompt:** Using your knowledge of Period 3, respond to (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly describe ONE component of Alexander Hamilton's financial plan as Treasury Secretary.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE reason Thomas Jefferson and James Madison opposed this component.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way the debate over Hamilton's financial plan contributed to the emergence of organized political parties.

**Model answers:**

- (a) Hamilton proposed federal assumption of state Revolutionary War debts and the chartering of a national bank to stabilize government finances and establish American credit.
- (b) Jefferson and Madison believed the Constitution granted Congress only explicitly enumerated powers (strict construction), and since chartering a bank was nowhere explicitly authorized in the text, they viewed it as an unconstitutional overreach that would concentrate financial power in the hands of a wealthy commercial elite at the expense of ordinary farmers.
- (c) Because this dispute combined a genuine constitutional disagreement (loose vs. strict construction) with a deeper conflict over economic vision (commercial/financial vs. agrarian), it hardened into the first organized partisan division of the 1790s, with Hamilton's supporters forming the Federalist Party and Jefferson's and Madison's supporters forming the Democratic-Republican Party.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The Whiskey Rebellion (1794) is historically significant primarily because it demonstrated:

- |                                                                                                                           |                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) That the federal government under the Constitution lacked the power to enforce its own laws                           | lion, had both the authority and the capacity to enforce federal law |
| (B) That the new federal government under the Constitution, unlike the Confederation government during Shays's Rebellion, | (C) Popular support for repealing Hamilton's national bank           |
|                                                                                                                           | (D) The permanent failure of Hamilton's financial program            |

### Lời giải chi tiết

When western Pennsylvania farmers violently resisted the federal whiskey excise tax, Washington personally led a large federal militia force to suppress the rebellion – a direct, effective response impossible under the Articles of Confederation, whose government lacked any comparable enforcement power during Shays's Rebellion less than a decade earlier. This shows federal strength, not weakness (A is the opposite of what happened); the rebellion concerned the excise tax, not the separate national bank (C is wrong); and Hamilton's financial program succeeded in stabilizing national credit, not failing (D is wrong). **(B).**

### 3.11 Foreign Policy in the Early Republic

The outbreak of the **French Revolution** (1789) initially won enthusiastic American sympathy, since French revolutionaries invoked many of the same natural-rights and anti-monarchical principles as 1776. American opinion split sharply, however, after the Revolution turned violent (the Reign of Terror and the execution of Louis XVI in 1793) and France went to war with much of monarchical Europe, including Britain. When French minister Edmond-Charles Genêt tried to recruit American privateers and volunteers against Britain in defiance of official U.S. policy (the “Citizen Genêt Affair”), it underscored how easily European conflict could drag the fragile new republic into a war it could not afford. Washington responded with the **Neutrality Proclamation (1793)**, formally declaring the United States neutral in the European war despite the still-technically-active 1778 alliance treaty with France – establishing an influential precedent of avoiding foreign military entanglements that Washington reinforced in his 1796 Farewell Address.

Neutrality did not resolve underlying tensions with either European power. Britain continued to occupy forts in the American Northwest (in violation of the 1783 Treaty of Paris) and seized American merchant ships trading with France. **Jay’s Treaty (1794)**, negotiated by Chief Justice John Jay, secured a British commitment to finally withdraw from those northwestern forts but failed to address British seizure of American ships or the impressment of American sailors into the Royal Navy – provisions so weak that the treaty passed the Senate only narrowly and provoked furious Democratic-Republican accusations that Federalists favored Britain. Partly because Spain feared this apparent Anglo-American rapprochement, American diplomats achieved a far more popular outcome the following year: **Pinckney’s Treaty (1795)**, also called the Treaty of San Lorenzo, secured American navigation rights on the Mississippi River and the critical “right of deposit” for American goods at Spanish-controlled New Orleans, along with a favorable southern boundary with Spanish Florida.

#### Theme: WOR – America in the World

The young United States had to navigate great-power rivalry between Britain and France without the military strength to dictate terms to either. Washington’s Neutrality Proclamation established the enduring principle that the new republic’s survival depended on avoiding entangling European alliances and wars – a foreign-policy orientation that shaped American diplomacy for the next century, even as domestic political factions split sharply over which European power (Britain or France) deserved more sympathy.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Cách mạng Pháp (1789) ban đầu được người Mỹ ủng hộ nhưng gây chia rẽ khi trở nên bạo lực. Washington ban hành Tuyên bố Trung lập (1793), thiết lập nguyên tắc tránh liên minh quân sự với châu Âu. Hiệp ước Jay (1794, với Anh) buộc Anh rút khỏi các pháo đài Tây Bắc nhưng không giải quyết vấn đề bắt lính hải quân, gây tranh cãi lớn. Hiệp ước Pinckney (1795, với Tây Ban Nha) mang lại quyền đi lại trên sông Mississippi và quyền lưu kho hàng hoá tại New Orleans – một thành công ngoại giao được lòng dân hơn nhiều.

#### LEQ thesis + outline model

**Prompt:** “Evaluate the extent to which foreign policy challenges shaped American domestic politics during the 1790s.”

**Model thesis:** Foreign policy crises stemming from the French Revolution and ongoing British-French conflict decisively shaped American domestic politics in the 1790s, transforming what began as a disagreement over Hamilton’s financial program into a full-fledged two-party system, because reactions to the Neutrality Proclamation, Jay’s Treaty, and later the XYZ Affair consistently divided Americans along the same Federalist/Democratic-Republican lines, show-

ing that foreign policy and domestic partisanship had become mutually reinforcing rather than separate concerns.

**Outline:**

- **Body 1:** Neutrality Proclamation (1793) and the Citizen Genêt Affair reveal early Federalist/Democratic-Republican splits over sympathy toward Britain versus France.
- **Body 2:** Jay's Treaty (1794) provokes intense Democratic-Republican backlash against perceived pro-British Federalist policy, hardening partisan identity and organization.
- **Body 3:** The pattern culminates later in the decade with the XYZ Affair, Quasi-War, and Alien and Sedition Acts, showing foreign policy remained the central axis of domestic partisan conflict throughout the 1790s.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Compared to Jay's Treaty (1794), Pinckney's Treaty (1795) was more popular with the American public primarily because it:

- |                                                                                                                         |                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Ended all trade between the United States and Europe                                                                | leans) without the unpopular compromises seen in the British treaty |
| (B) Secured valuable, concrete concessions from Spain (Mississippi River navigation and the right of deposit at New Or- | (C) Formally allied the United States with France against Britain   |
|                                                                                                                         | (D) Abolished the excise tax on whiskey                             |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Pinckney's Treaty delivered clear, tangible economic benefits – free navigation of the Mississippi and the right to store and transship goods at New Orleans – that directly served Western farmers' interests, without the widely resented failure to address impressment and shipping seizures that made Jay's Treaty so controversial. It did not end European trade (A is wrong and would have been economically disastrous); it involved Spain, not a French alliance (C is wrong); and it is unrelated to the domestic whiskey excise tax (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập****Short-answer question (SAQ style).**

- Briefly describe the purpose of Washington's Neutrality Proclamation (1793).
- Briefly explain ONE way the French Revolution influenced American domestic politics during the 1790s.
- Briefly explain ONE reason Jay's Treaty (1794) provoked significant domestic political controversy.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- The Neutrality Proclamation formally declared that the United States would not take sides or provide military support to either Britain or France in their ongoing war, despite the existing 1778 alliance treaty with France, in order to avoid dragging the young, militarily weak nation into a costly European conflict.
- Americans split sharply over how to view the French Revolution – Democratic-Republicans initially celebrated it as a continuation of 1776's revolutionary principles, while Federalists

grew increasingly alarmed by its violence (the Reign of Terror) and radicalism – and this split hardened the emerging Federalist/Democratic-Republican partisan divide.

(c) Jay's Treaty secured British withdrawal from northwestern forts but failed to stop British seizure of American ships or impressment of American sailors, leading Democratic-Republicans to denounce it as a humiliating, pro-British sellout that favored Federalist commercial interests over the nation's honor and its ordinary citizens.

### 3.12 The First Party System

The bitter disputes over Hamilton's financial program and over how to respond to the French Revolution and European war hardened into the nation's **First Party System** – something the Constitution's framers had not anticipated and, in many cases, actively feared. **Hamilton's Federalists** favored a strong, energetic national government, loose constitutional construction, a commercial and manufacturing economy anchored by the national bank and protective tariffs, and generally friendlier relations with Britain; their political base was strongest among merchants, financiers, and much of New England. **Jefferson's and Madison's Democratic-Republicans** favored a more limited federal government, strict constitutional construction, an agrarian economic vision rooted in independent yeoman farmers, and sympathy toward Revolutionary France; their base was strongest among Southern planters and Western farmers. Each side built a partisan press to shape public opinion – the pro-Federalist *Gazette of the United States* against the pro-Democratic-Republican *National Gazette*, founded with Jefferson's quiet encouragement.

#### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

Neither party planned to become a permanent, organized political institution – both Hamilton and Jefferson initially saw their rivals not as a legitimate “opposition” but as a dangerous faction endangering the republic. The First Party System therefore emerged less by design than as an unintended consequence of genuine, deeply felt disagreements over economic policy, constitutional interpretation, and foreign affairs – disagreements the Constitution's structure did not eliminate but instead channeled into organized electoral competition.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Bất đồng về kế hoạch tài chính của Hamilton và phản ứng với Cách mạng Pháp dẫn đến hệ thống lưỡng đảng đầu tiên. Đảng Liên bang (Hamilton) ủng hộ chính quyền trung ương mạnh, diễn giải Hiến pháp rộng, kinh tế thương mại, thân Anh. Đảng Dân chủ-Cộng hòa (Jefferson, Madison) ủng hộ chính quyền hạn chế, diễn giải hẹp, kinh tế nông nghiệp, thân Pháp. Cả hai phe ban đầu coi đối thủ là mối đe dọa cho nền cộng hòa, không phải phe đối lập hợp pháp.

(!) **Lỗi thường gặp:** Jefferson's **Democratic-Republican Party** of the 1790s is *not* the same organization as Andrew Jackson's **Democratic Party**, founded in the 1820s–1830s (Period 4). The Democratic-Republican Party actually collapsed as an organized national party after the 1820s “Era of Good Feelings”; Jackson's later Democratic Party grew out of one faction of that collapse. Do not write that “Jefferson founded the modern Democratic Party” on an exam – the direct institutional link is much messier than the shared word “Democratic” suggests.

| Issue            | Hamilton / Federalists                                     | Jefferson / Democratic-Republicans           |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Constitution     | Loose construction (implied/"necessary and proper" powers) | Strict construction (only enumerated powers) |
| Economic vision  | Commerce, manufacturing, national bank, tariffs            | Agrarian economy of independent farmers      |
| Federal power    | Strong, energetic central government                       | Limited federal government, strong states    |
| Foreign sympathy | Leaned toward Britain                                      | Leaned toward Revolutionary France           |
| Social base      | Merchants, financiers, New England                         | Southern planters, Western farmers           |

Hamilton's Federalists vs. Jefferson's Democratic-Republicans: the First Party System.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The core disagreement between Hamilton's Federalists and Jefferson's Democratic-Republicans in the 1790s centered most directly on:

- (A) Whether to abolish the presidency
- (B) The proper scope of federal power, the correct method of constitutional interpretation, and the nation's ideal economic and foreign-policy orientation
- (C) Whether the United States should rejoin the British Empire
- (D) Whether slavery should be immediately abolished nationwide

### Lời giải chi tiết

Hamilton and Jefferson disagreed on a cluster of interconnected questions: how much power the federal government should wield, whether the Constitution should be read loosely or strictly, whether the economy should be commercial/financial or agrarian, and whether to lean toward Britain or France diplomatically. Neither side proposed abolishing the presidency (A) or rejoining Britain (C); and while the two men held different long-term views on slavery, it was not the organizing axis of 1790s party conflict in the way it would become by the 1850s (D is wrong). (B).

## 3.13 The Adams Presidency and the Election of 1800

### 3.13.1 The XYZ Affair and the Quasi-War

John Adams narrowly defeated Jefferson in the **Election of 1796**; under the original constitutional rules (before the Twelfth Amendment), Jefferson, as runner-up, became vice president despite belonging to the rival party – producing an awkward, divided administration from the outset. Adams inherited worsening relations with France, which viewed Jay's Treaty as a betrayal of the 1778 Franco-American alliance and began seizing American merchant ships. When Adams sent diplomats to negotiate, French agents (referred to in published dispatches only as X, Y, and Z) demanded a bribe merely to begin talks – the **XYZ Affair (1797–1798)**. News of the insult provoked national outrage ("Millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute") and an undeclared naval conflict known as the **Quasi-War (1798–1800)**, fought mostly at sea; Congress created a separate Navy Department and authorized American warships to seize French vessels. Despite intense pressure from war hawks within his own Federalist Party (led by Hamilton), Adams ultimately negotiated peace through the

Convention of 1800, avoiding a full-scale war – a choice that preserved the nation's stability but cost Adams crucial political support among Federalists.

### 3.13.2 The Alien and Sedition Acts and the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions

Amid war fever against France, the Federalist-controlled Congress passed four laws collectively known as the **Alien and Sedition Acts (1798)**. The Naturalization Act extended the residency requirement for citizenship from five to fourteen years, aiming to slow the political influence of recent immigrants (who tended to support the Democratic-Republicans). The Alien Friends and Alien Enemies Acts gave the president sweeping power to detain or deport noncitizens deemed dangerous. Most controversially, the **Sedition Act** criminalized publishing “false, scandalous, and malicious” criticism of the federal government or its officials – a direct restriction on free speech and the press used to prosecute and imprison several Democratic-Republican newspaper editors. In response, Jefferson and Madison anonymously drafted the **Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions (1798)**, arguing that the Constitution was a compact among sovereign states and that states could judge for themselves when the federal government exceeded its constitutional authority (a theory sometimes called interposition); no other state legislatures endorsed the resolutions at the time, but the underlying compact theory would resurface, in more radical form, during the nullification and states' rights conflicts of the following decades.

### 3.13.3 The Election of 1800 and the “Revolution of 1800”

The rematch between Adams and Jefferson in the **Election of 1800** was bitterly personal, fought amid deep partisan division over the Alien and Sedition Acts, taxation, and foreign policy. Because electors at the time cast two votes for president without distinguishing a separate vice-presidential ballot, Jefferson and his own running mate, Aaron Burr, tied in the electoral college, throwing the decision to the House of Representatives; after 36 contentious ballots – and Hamilton's reluctant intervention on Jefferson's behalf, since he distrusted Burr even more – the House elected Jefferson president. The episode's constitutional flaw was corrected by the **Twelfth Amendment (1804)**, which required separate electoral ballots for president and vice president. What made the election historically significant was not the outcome alone but the process: political power passed peacefully from one organized party to its bitter rival for the first time in the young republic's history, without violence, a coup, or civil war – a result contemporaries and later historians alike came to call the “**Revolution of 1800**.”

#### Theme: WOR – America in the World

The XYZ Affair and Quasi-War show that the same great-power rivalry between Britain and France that shaped Jay's and Pinckney's Treaties continued to dominate American politics through the end of the century. Adams's choice to negotiate peace rather than yield to his own party's war hawks demonstrates that early presidents sometimes had to weigh national stability against their own party's political interests – a tension that ultimately cost Adams reelection.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Adams đối mặt Vụ XYZ (1797–98, Pháp đòi hối lộ) dẫn đến Chiến tranh không tuyên bố (Quasi-War) trên biển với Pháp. Quốc hội Liên bang thông qua Đạo luật Người nước ngoài và Nổi loạn (1798), hạn chế quyền tự do ngôn luận và nhắm vào người nhập cư/nhà báo Dân chủ-Cộng hoà. Jefferson và Madison phản đối bằng Nghị quyết Virginia và Kentucky (1798), cho rằng các bang có quyền phán xét tính hợp hiến của luật liên bang. Bầu cử 1800 – với việc chuyển giao quyền lực hoà bình giữa hai đảng đối lập lần đầu tiên – được gọi là “Cách mạng năm 1800.”

The “**Revolution of 1800**”: the phrase does not refer to violence but to a peaceful, orderly, and (for its time) genuinely unusual transfer of power between rival political parties through a constitutional electoral process, even after a decade of intense partisan conflict, the Alien and Sedition Acts, and a near-war with France. It is often cited as proof that the constitutional system designed in 1787 could survive exactly the kind of factional conflict its framers had feared most.

(!) **Lỗi thường gặp:** The **Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions (1798)** are frequently confused with South Carolina's later **Nullification Crisis (1832)**. The 1798 resolutions argued, in theory, that states could judge federal laws' constitutionality (compact theory/interposition), but no state actually nullified a federal law or threatened secession over the Alien and Sedition Acts, and no other state legislature endorsed the resolutions at the time. The 1832 Nullification Crisis, by contrast, involved South Carolina formally declaring a specific federal tariff law void within its borders and threatening secession – a much more direct, escalated action. Treat 1798 as an early *argument*, not an actual nullification event.

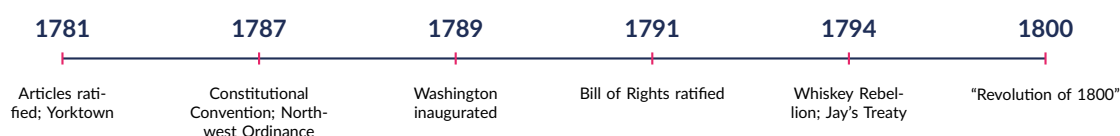
### SAQ model outline

**Prompt:** Using your knowledge of Period 3, respond to (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly describe ONE provision of the Alien and Sedition Acts (1798).
- (b) Briefly explain ONE argument Jefferson and Madison made in the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions in response to these acts.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way the Election of 1800 demonstrated the resilience of the American constitutional system.

**Model answers:**

- (a) The Sedition Act made it a federal crime to publish “false, scandalous, and malicious” criticism of the federal government or its officials, and it was used to prosecute several Democratic-Republican newspaper editors critical of the Adams administration.
- (b) Jefferson and Madison argued that the Constitution was a compact among sovereign states, and that when the federal government exceeded its constitutionally granted powers – as they believed the Sedition Act did by violating free speech – individual states had the authority to judge that overreach and declare such federal laws void within their borders.
- (c) Despite a decade of intense partisan hostility, a constitutional flaw that threw the election into the House of Representatives, and 36 contentious ballots, power passed peacefully from the incumbent Federalist party to the victorious Democratic-Republican opposition, showing that the constitutional electoral process – not violence or military force – would settle even the most bitter political disputes in the new republic.



Timeline: from a fragile Confederation to the first peaceful transfer of party power, 1781–1800.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The XYZ Affair (1797–1798) most directly led to which of the following?

- (A) A formal declaration of war against France by Congress
- (B) An undeclared naval conflict with France, known as the Quasi-War, and a surge of anti-French, pro-military sentiment in the United States
- (C) The immediate ratification of the Alien and Sedition Acts by France
- (D) Jefferson's decision to ally the United States with Britain

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Public outrage over French officials demanding a bribe before negotiating with American diplomats fueled an undeclared naval war (the Quasi-War) and gave war hawks within the Federalist Party political momentum, even though Congress never issued a formal declaration of war (A is wrong, and this restraint is itself notable). The Alien and Sedition Acts were laws passed by the U.S. Congress, not by France (C is a category error); and it was Adams's Federalists, not Jefferson, who were generally friendlier toward Britain in this period (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Which statement most accurately compares the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions (1798) with South Carolina's Nullification Crisis (1832)?

- (A) Both resulted in a state formally nullifying a specific federal law and threatening secession
- (B) The 1798 resolutions articulated an early compact-theory argument that states could judge federal overreach, but unlike 1832, no state actually nullified a law or threatened secession at the time
- (C) The 1798 resolutions were unanimously endorsed by all thirteen states, unlike the isolated 1832 crisis
- (D) Both events directly caused the outbreak of civil war

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions advanced a theoretical argument about states' power to judge federal constitutionality but stopped short of any concrete nullification or secession threat, and no other state legislature endorsed them at the time; South Carolina's 1832 Nullification Crisis, by contrast, involved an actual, formal state declaration voiding a federal tariff law and a real threat of secession. Choice (A) wrongly equates the two events' severity; (C) is factually wrong, since other states did not endorse the 1798 resolutions; (D) is wrong, since neither event directly caused the Civil War, which began in 1861. **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).**

- (a) Briefly describe ONE feature of the disputed Election of 1800.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE constitutional problem the election exposed.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE reason historians consider the peaceful outcome of the Election of 1800 significant for the future of American constitutional government.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Jefferson and his running mate Aaron Burr received the same number of electoral votes, since electors cast two undifferentiated votes for president under the original constitutional

rules, throwing the decision to the House of Representatives.

(b) The election exposed a flaw in the original Electoral College design, which did not distinguish between votes for president and vice president, creating the possibility of exactly this kind of tie between a party's own presidential and vice-presidential candidates – a flaw corrected by the Twelfth Amendment (1804).

(c) Despite a decade of bitter partisan conflict, the Alien and Sedition Acts, and a constitutional crisis over the tied election, power transferred peacefully from the Federalist Adams administration to the victorious Democratic-Republican opposition, demonstrating that the constitutional system could absorb intense political conflict without violence or collapse – a result that gave the new republic's institutions lasting legitimacy.

## Period 4 --- Democracy in an Age of Expansion (1800--1848)

**Mục tiêu Unit:** Nắm vững sự trỗi dậy của các đảng phái chính trị và kỷ nguyên Jefferson (bầu cử 1800, mua Louisiana 1803, Lewis và Clark, Marbury v. Madison); nguyên nhân và hệ quả Chiến tranh 1812, Học thuyết Monroe (1823); Cách mạng Thị trường (giao thông, sản xuất, xã hội, văn hoá); nền dân chủ Jackson và xung đột quyền lực liên bang (Bank War, Nullification, trục xuất người bản địa); văn hoá Mỹ thời kỳ này (Đại Tỉnh thức lần hai, chủ nghĩa siêu việt) và các phong trào cải cách (bãi nô, quyền phụ nữ, giáo dục, cai rượu).

### 4.1 Contextualizing Period 4

Between 1800 and 1848 the young republic was transformed by four interlocking developments: a peaceful transfer of power between rival political parties that tested whether the constitutional experiment could survive partisan conflict; a doubling and further expansion of national territory that raised new questions about slavery, Native sovereignty, and federal power; a “Market Revolution” in transportation, manufacturing, and commerce that reorganized how Americans worked, lived, and related to one another; and a wave of religious revival and reform that both expanded and starkly limited the meaning of “democracy” for different groups of Americans. By 1848 the country was geographically larger, economically more interconnected, and politically more democratic for white men – but also more sharply divided along regional and sectional lines that would erupt into crisis in the following period.



Period 4 at a glance: political, territorial, and social turning points, 1803–1848.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Giai đoạn 1800–1848 chứng kiến bốn xu hướng lớn: chuyển giao quyền lực hoà bình giữa các đảng phái (bầu cử 1800); mở rộng lãnh thổ đặt ra câu hỏi về chế độ nô lệ và chủ quyền người bản địa; Cách mạng Thị trường tái cấu trúc kinh tế-xã hội; và làn sóng phục hưng tôn giáo cùng các phong trào cải cách vừa mở rộng vừa giới hạn khái niệm “dân chủ.” Đến năm 1848, nước Mỹ dân chủ hơn với đàn ông da trắng nhưng chia rẽ vùng miền sâu sắc hơn.

### 4.2 The Rise of Political Parties and the Era of Jefferson

#### 4.2.1 The Election of 1800

The election of 1800 pitted incumbent Federalist John Adams against Democratic-Republican challenger Thomas Jefferson. Jefferson and his running mate Aaron Burr tied in the Electoral College at 73 votes each (a flaw the Twelfth Amendment, ratified 1804, later fixed by requiring separate

ballots for president and vice president); the House of Representatives, voting by state delegation, finally chose Jefferson after 36 ballots. Jefferson called his victory the “Revolution of 1800”: the first peaceful transfer of power in the United States between two organized, rival political parties, something many contemporaries doubted a young republic could survive without violence.

#### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

The peaceful transfer of power in 1800–01 established a foundational precedent: that losing an election does not mean losing legitimacy, and that political opposition could exist within the system rather than as a threat to it. Jefferson’s conciliatory First Inaugural Address (“We are all republicans, we are all federalists”) reinforced this norm even as real policy differences between the parties persisted.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Bầu cử 1800 giữa Adams (Federalist) và Jefferson (Democratic-Republican) kết thúc bằng việc Hạ viện phải bầu chọn do Jefferson và Burr hoà phiếu đại cử tri. Jefferson gọi đây là “Cách mạng 1800” vì đây là lần đầu tiên quyền lực được chuyển giao hoà bình giữa hai đảng đối lập – một tiền lệ quan trọng cho nền dân chủ non trẻ.

#### HIPP document analysis: Jefferson’s First Inaugural Address, 1801

*Paraphrase:* “We are all republicans, we are all federalists... Every difference of opinion is not a difference of principle... we have called by different names brethren of the same principle.”

**Historical situation:** delivered just after the bitterly contested, party-line election of 1800, the first transfer of executive power to an opposing party. **Intended audience:** the nation, including anxious Federalists who feared radical policy reversal. **Purpose:** to reassure political opponents and lower partisan temperature after a divisive campaign. **Point of view:** a victorious party leader nonetheless emphasizing national unity over factional triumph – useful evidence that even amid the rise of the first party system, republican leaders publicly prized the legitimacy of peaceful opposition.

#### 4.2.2 Louisiana Purchase and Lewis and Clark

In 1803, Napoleon Bonaparte, needing funds for war in Europe and having abandoned hopes of a French American empire after a slave revolt cost France control of Saint-Domingue (Haiti), sold the vast Louisiana Territory to the United States for roughly \$15 million. The **Louisiana Purchase** doubled the size of the United States overnight, though it created a constitutional dilemma for Jefferson: as a strict constructionist, he doubted the Constitution explicitly authorized the federal government to acquire foreign territory, yet he judged the opportunity too valuable to pass up and proceeded anyway – a pragmatic reversal of his own stated principles. To explore and map the new territory, Jefferson commissioned the **Lewis and Clark Expedition** (the “Corps of Discovery,” 1804–1806), which traveled overland to the Pacific Ocean and back, gathering scientific, geographic, and diplomatic information and relying heavily on the guidance of Sacagawea, a Shoshone woman who served as interpreter and guide.

#### Theme: GEO – Geography and the Environment

The Louisiana Purchase and the Lewis and Clark Expedition reflect how geographic knowledge itself became a tool of national power: mapping rivers, mountain passes, and Native nations’ territories allowed the United States to plan future settlement, trade, and eventual removal policy across a landmass it had barely begun to understand.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Năm 1803, Napoleon bán vùng Louisiana rộng lớn cho Hoa Kỳ với giá khoảng 15 triệu đô la, tăng gấp đôi diện tích đất nước dù điều này mâu thuẫn với quan điểm “diễn giải chặt chẽ” hiến pháp của Jefferson. Đoàn thám hiểm Lewis và Clark (1804–1806), với sự hỗ trợ của Sacagawea, đã khảo sát vùng đất mới, thu thập thông tin khoa học và địa lý quan trọng.

## 4.2.3 Marbury v. Madison and the Embargo Act

In **Marbury v. Madison** (1803), Chief Justice John Marshall ruled on a dispute over undelivered “mid-night judge” commissions from the outgoing Adams administration. Marshall cleverly avoided a direct confrontation with Jefferson’s administration while establishing a far more consequential principle: **judicial review**, the Supreme Court’s power to declare an act of Congress unconstitutional and therefore void. This decision cemented the judiciary as a genuine check on the other two branches. Later in Jefferson’s presidency, as Britain and France seized American merchant ships and Britain impressed American sailors into the Royal Navy, Jefferson sought to avoid war through economic pressure: the **Embargo Act (1807)** banned American ships from trading in foreign ports altogether. The embargo devastated New England’s shipping and merchant economy far more than it hurt Britain or France, proved wildly unpopular, and was repealed in 1809, just before Jefferson left office.

**Marbury v. Madison (1803):** established judicial review, the power of the Supreme Court to strike down laws or executive actions that conflict with the Constitution. This precedent underlies the Court’s later role in cases throughout the rest of this period, including *Worcester v. Georgia* (1832).

## Bài tập luyện tập

A political cartoon from 1801 shows Jefferson and Adams shaking hands over a ballot box labeled “1800,” while onlookers of both parties look on with cautious relief rather than celebration or rage. This image would best support which of the following claims about the election of 1800?

- |                                                                                                                         |                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) The Federalist Party continued to dominate national politics after 1800                                             | (C) The Twelfth Amendment eliminated the need for future contested elections |
| (B) Political power changed hands between rival parties without violent upheaval, reinforcing constitutional legitimacy | (D) Jefferson’s victory ended partisan conflict in the United States         |

## Lời giải chi tiết

The cartoon’s tone of cautious relief – not celebration or violence – captures the real historical significance of 1800: it was the first peaceful transfer of executive power between opposing parties in U.S. history, proving the constitutional system could survive partisan defeat. The Federalists in fact declined nationally after 1800 (A is wrong); the Twelfth Amendment (1804) fixed the mechanics of electing a president and vice president separately but did not eliminate contested elections, as 1824 later shows (C is wrong); partisan conflict continued well beyond 1800 (D is wrong). (B).

## Bài tập luyện tập

Jefferson’s decision to proceed with the Louisiana Purchase despite his own strict-constructionist constitutional views is most significant because it illustrates:

- (A) Jefferson's consistent belief in a broadly interpreted federal Constitution
- (B) How practical political and economic considerations could override a leader's stated constitutional philosophy
- (C) Congressional refusal to fund the purchase
- (D) The Supreme Court's role in approving territorial acquisitions

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Jefferson had long argued for a narrow reading of federal power, yet when offered the chance to double the nation's size at a bargain price, he set aside those scruples and pursued the purchase – a classic example of pragmatic governance overriding ideological consistency. He did not suddenly become a committed loose constructionist across the board (A overstates it); Congress in fact funded the purchase (C is wrong); the Supreme Court played no approval role in this executive-negotiated treaty (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

The primary purpose of the Lewis and Clark Expedition (1804–1806) was to:

- (A) Negotiate a peace treaty ending the War of 1812
- (B) Map and scientifically survey the Louisiana Territory and route to the Pacific while gathering diplomatic information about Native nations
- (C) Establish the first permanent U.S. military fort in California
- (D) Enforce the Embargo Act along the Mississippi River

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Jefferson charged the Corps of Discovery with mapping the newly purchased territory, documenting its plants, animals, and geography, and opening diplomatic and trade contact with Native nations along the route to the Pacific – Sacagawea's role as guide and interpreter was central to this diplomatic dimension. The War of 1812 (A) came years later and was ended by treaty negotiators in Europe, not this expedition; no California fort resulted from this journey (C); the Embargo Act (D) was an unrelated trade policy from 1807. **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Chief Justice John Marshall's ruling in *Marbury v. Madison* (1803) established which enduring constitutional principle?

- (A) Nullification – states may void federal laws they consider unconstitutional
- (B) Judicial review – the Supreme Court may declare acts of Congress unconstitutional
- (C) Executive privilege – the president may withhold documents from Congress
- (D) Popular sovereignty – territorial settlers may vote on slavery

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Marshall's opinion held that a section of the Judiciary Act of 1789 conflicted with the Constitution and was therefore void, asserting for the first time the Supreme Court's authority to strike down a law of Congress – judicial review. Nullification (A) is a states'-rights doctrine associated with Calhoun and the Nullification Crisis decades later; executive privilege (C) and

popular sovereignty (D) are unrelated constitutional concepts from other eras. (B).

### Bài tập luyện tập

A New England merchant writing in 1808 complains that his ships sit idle in harbor, his warehouses are full of unsold goods, and his sailors are unemployed, blaming “the President’s fatal experiment.” This complaint most directly refers to the effects of:

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (A) The Louisiana Purchase  | (C) The Missouri Compromise |
| (B) The Embargo Act of 1807 | (D) The Bank War            |

### Lời giải chi tiết

Jefferson’s Embargo Act (1807) barred American ships from trading in foreign ports as a way to pressure Britain and France without going to war, but it devastated the shipping-dependent New England economy far more severely than it harmed the European powers it targeted, provoking exactly this kind of merchant outrage. The Louisiana Purchase (A) had no such effect on shipping; the Missouri Compromise (C, 1820) and the Bank War (D, 1832) both occurred decades later and concerned different issues. (B).

## 4.3 Politics and Regional Interests

### 4.3.1 The War of 1812

Rising tensions with Britain – impressment of American sailors into the Royal Navy, British restrictions on American trade with Europe (Orders in Council), and British support for Native American resistance under Tecumseh’s confederacy in the Northwest – pushed a new generation of nationalist “War Hawks” in Congress, led by Henry Clay and John C. Calhoun, to demand war. The resulting **War of 1812** was militarily inconclusive: British forces burned Washington, D.C. in 1814, while Andrew Jackson’s decisive victory at the Battle of New Orleans (January 1815) came, ironically, after the Treaty of Ghent had already been signed, restoring the prewar status quo. New England Federalists, who had opposed the war and suffered economically from wartime trade restrictions, met at the **Hartford Convention** (1814) to air grievances and floated proposals for constitutional amendments limiting the South’s political power – but the war’s celebrated end (crowned by the Battle of New Orleans) made the Convention look unpatriotic, even treasonous, and helped destroy the Federalist Party as a national political force.

#### Theme: NAT – National Identity

Although militarily a draw, the War of 1812 is often called the “Second War of Independence” because of its psychological and political effects: it confirmed U.S. sovereignty in British eyes, discredited the Federalist opposition, and unleashed a surge of American nationalism that historians label the “Era of Good Feelings.”

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Chiến tranh 1812 nổ ra do Anh bắt lính thủy thủ Mỹ, hạn chế thương mại, và hỗ trợ liên minh người bản địa của Tecumseh. Kết quả quân sự không phân thắng bại, nhưng về chính trị lại có ý nghĩa lớn: Đại hội Hartford (1814) của phe Federalist phản đối chiến tranh khiến đảng này bị coi là thiếu yêu nước và suy tàn, mở đường cho “Kỷ nguyên Thiện chí” và làn sóng chủ nghĩa dân tộc Mỹ.

**LEQ thesis model: causation and continuity/change**

*Prompt: "Evaluate the extent to which the War of 1812 marked a turning point in the development of American nationalism in the period 1800–1824."*

**Model thesis:** While the War of 1812 did not resolve the conflicts that caused it and ended in a battlefield stalemate, it marked a genuine turning point in American nationalism because it discredited regional partisan opposition, unleashed a surge of national pride and confidence embodied in the "Era of Good Feelings," and encouraged a more assertive, unified approach to economic and foreign policy in the years that followed.

**Outline:** (1) *Political effects* – the Hartford Convention's association with disloyalty destroyed the Federalist Party, leaving the Democratic-Republicans as the only national party. (2) *Economic effects* – wartime disruption of trade with Britain spurred domestic manufacturing, feeding directly into Clay's American System (tariffs, national bank, internal improvements). (3) *Foreign-policy effects* – postwar confidence contributed to a more assertive U.S. posture toward Europe, culminating in the Monroe Doctrine (1823).

### 4.3.2 The Era of Good Feelings and the American System

President James Monroe's two terms (1817–1825) are remembered as the "**Era of Good Feelings**" because the collapse of the Federalist Party left only one major national party and, superficially, reduced partisan conflict. Beneath this calm surface, however, serious economic and sectional tensions persisted, including the Panic of 1819 (the nation's first major financial crisis) and growing disagreement over slavery's westward expansion. Henry Clay championed the **American System**, a program to bind the growing nation's regions together economically: protective tariffs (beginning with the Tariff of 1816) to shield young American manufacturers from British competition, a rechartered national bank (the Second Bank of the United States, 1816) to stabilize currency and credit, and federally funded internal improvements (roads and canals) to connect Western farmers to Eastern and Southern markets.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not take the label "Era of Good Feelings" at face value on the exam. It describes the temporary collapse of two-party competition, not the absence of conflict: the Panic of 1819 caused a severe economic downturn, and the Missouri crisis of 1819–1820 revealed deep, unresolved sectional disagreement over slavery. Questions frequently test whether students can identify the underlying tensions this label obscures.

### 4.3.3 The Missouri Compromise of 1820

When Missouri applied for statehood in 1819, it threatened to upset the delicate balance between free and slave states in the Senate. Henry Clay brokered the **Missouri Compromise (1820)**: Missouri was admitted as a slave state and Maine (formerly part of Massachusetts) as a free state, preserving sectional balance, while a line was drawn at 36°30' latitude across the remainder of the Louisiana Purchase territory, prohibiting slavery north of that line (except within Missouri itself). Thomas Jefferson, by then retired, privately called the crisis "a fire bell in the night," fearing it foreshadowed future sectional conflict over slavery that could ultimately break the Union apart.

**The Missouri Compromise (1820)** was the first major congressional crisis over the expansion of slavery into new territory. It temporarily preserved sectional balance in the Senate but did not resolve the underlying conflict – it merely postponed it, foreshadowing the sectional battles of Period 5 (the Kansas-Nebraska Act, "Bleeding Kansas," and ultimately civil war).

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Which of the following best explains why the “Hartford Convention” (1814) contributed to the decline of the Federalist Party?

- |                                                                                         |                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) It successfully forced a constitutional amendment limiting Southern political power | Federalists appear unpatriotic                                         |
| (B) Its perceived disloyalty during a war that ended in celebrated victory made the     | (C) It led directly to the assassination of several Federalist leaders |
|                                                                                         | (D) It endorsed Andrew Jackson for president in 1816                   |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Federalist delegates met at Hartford to protest the war and propose amendments curbing the political power of slaveholding states, but the timing was disastrous: news of Jackson’s triumphant victory at New Orleans and the Treaty of Ghent arrived soon after, making the Convention’s grievances look almost treasonous by comparison. No amendment was ever adopted (A is wrong), no assassinations occurred (C is wrong), and the Federalists did not endorse Jackson, a Democratic-Republican (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Henry Clay’s “American System” was designed primarily to:

- |                                                                                                                            |                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Abolish the Second Bank of the United States                                                                           | ments                                                 |
| (B) Bind the nation’s regional economies together through tariffs, a national bank, and federally funded internal improve- | (C) End the expansion of slavery into new territories |
|                                                                                                                            | (D) Restrict immigration from Ireland and Germany     |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Clay’s program combined protective tariffs (to nurture domestic manufacturing), a national bank (to stabilize currency and credit across regions), and internal improvements like roads and canals (to physically connect Western, Northern, and Southern markets) – an integrated plan for national economic development. It supported, rather than abolished, the national bank (A is wrong); it did not address slavery’s expansion (C) or immigration policy (D), which were separate issues. **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

The Missouri Compromise of 1820 is most accurately described as:

- |                                                                                        |                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) A permanent resolution of the conflict over slavery’s expansion                    | over slavery’s expansion                                       |
| (B) A temporary sectional balancing act that postponed, rather than resolved, conflict | (C) An amendment abolishing slavery in all federal territories |
|                                                                                        | (D) A treaty ending the War of 1812                            |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

By admitting Maine free and Missouri slave and drawing the 36°30' line, Congress preserved the numerical balance in the Senate and drew a temporary geographic boundary – but it left slavery legal in the South and in Missouri itself, and did nothing to resolve the underlying moral and political conflict, which resurfaced repeatedly in later decades. It did not abolish slavery anywhere (C is wrong) and is unrelated to the War of 1812, which had ended with the Treaty of Ghent in 1814 (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Which factor is most commonly cited among the causes of the War of 1812?

- (A) The Missouri Compromise's failure to satisfy Southern planters expansion  
(B) British impressment of American sailors and support for Native resistance to U.S.  
(C) The Supreme Court's ruling in *Marbury v. Madison*  
(D) The Nullification Crisis in South Carolina

**Lời giải chi tiết**

British impressment of American sailors and Britain's arming and encouragement of Native American resistance under Tecumseh in the Northwest Territory were leading grievances that War Hawks like Clay and Calhoun cited in pushing for war in 1812. The Missouri Compromise (A) came in 1820, *Marbury v. Madison* (C) in 1803 concerned judicial review, and the Nullification Crisis (D) occurred in 1832–33 over tariffs – none caused the war. **(B)**.

## 4.4 America on the World Stage

### 4.4.1 The Monroe Doctrine (1823)

As Spain's Latin American colonies won independence in the 1810s and 1820s (led by figures such as Simón Bolívar and José de San Martín), President Monroe – guided heavily by Secretary of State John Quincy Adams – worried that conservative European powers (the “Holy Alliance” of Russia, Austria, and Prussia) might help Spain reclaim its former colonies. In his 1823 annual message to Congress, Monroe proclaimed what became known as the **Monroe Doctrine**: the Western Hemisphere was closed to further European colonization, and any European attempt to interfere in the Americas would be viewed as a threat to U.S. security, while the United States pledged in turn not to interfere in existing European colonies or in European affairs. Adams insisted on issuing this as a unilateral American statement rather than a joint declaration with Britain (which had proposed one), famously preferring not to appear as “a cock-boat in the wake of the British man-of-war.”

**Theme: WOR – America in the World**

The Monroe Doctrine asserted a U.S. sphere of influence over the entire Western Hemisphere, positioning the United States as the self-declared protector of the “New World” against the “Old World.” Though largely rhetorical in 1823, it became a lasting reference point for U.S. foreign policy, invoked and reinterpreted throughout the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Học thuyết Monroe (1823) tuyên bố Tây bán cầu đóng cửa với việc thực dân hoá thêm từ châu Âu, đồng thời Mỹ cam kết không can thiệp vào công việc châu Âu. Đây là phản ứng trước làn sóng độc lập ở Mỹ Latinh và lo ngại về Liên minh Thần thánh (Nga, Áo, Phổ) hỗ trợ Tây Ban

Nha giành lại thuộc địa. Ngoại trưởng John Quincy Adams muốn Mỹ tuyên bố độc lập, không phụ thuộc vào Anh.

#### HIPP document analysis: Monroe Doctrine, 1823

*Paraphrase:* “The American continents... are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European powers... We should consider any attempt on their part to extend their system to any portion of this hemisphere as dangerous to our peace and safety.”

**Historical situation:** issued as Spain’s Latin American colonies were winning independence and conservative European monarchies discussed restoring Spanish rule. **Intended audience:** Congress, but also implicitly the European powers and the new Latin American republics.

**Purpose:** to deter European recolonization and assert U.S. leadership in the hemisphere. **Point of view:** a confident but militarily weak nation making a rhetorical claim it could not yet enforce alone – in practice, the British Royal Navy’s own interest in open Latin American trade did more to deter European intervention than the U.S. military did.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not assume the Monroe Doctrine was backed by significant U.S. military power in 1823. The small U.S. Navy could not have stopped a determined European intervention on its own; the doctrine functioned largely as a diplomatic statement of intent, and it was Britain’s navy – which shared an interest in keeping Latin American markets open to trade rather than closed off by restored Spanish mercantilism – that provided the real deterrent in this period.

#### Bài tập luyện tập

A stimulus map (described in text) shows newly independent nations across South and Central America in the 1820s, with dashed lines indicating routes European naval forces might use to intervene on behalf of Spain. This context best explains the purpose of which U.S. foreign policy statement?

- |                                 |                                     |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (A) The Embargo Act of 1807     | (C) The Missouri Compromise of 1820 |
| (B) The Monroe Doctrine of 1823 | (D) The Treaty of Ghent of 1814     |

#### Lời giải chi tiết

The Monroe Doctrine directly addressed the fear that European powers, particularly through the conservative Holy Alliance, might intervene militarily to help Spain reclaim its newly independent Latin American colonies, declaring such action a threat to U.S. security. The Embargo Act (A) concerned trade restrictions in 1807, unrelated to Latin America; the Missouri Compromise (C) concerned domestic slavery politics; the Treaty of Ghent (D) ended the War of 1812 and made no statement about future European colonization. **(B).**

## 4.5 The Market Revolution: Transportation and Manufacturing

### 4.5.1 Transportation: canals and railroads

Between the 1810s and 1840s, a transportation revolution knit the sprawling nation’s regional economies into a single national market. New York State’s **Erie Canal** (completed 1825), connecting the Hudson River to Lake Erie, was the most transformative project: it slashed the cost and time of shipping goods between the Great Lakes region and New York City, making New York the nation’s

leading port and pulling Midwestern farmers directly into Atlantic commercial networks. Beginning with the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad (chartered 1827), **railroads** soon supplemented and then surpassed canals, running year-round (unlike canals, which froze in winter) and reaching areas canals could not.

#### Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology

The transportation revolution reduced the cost and time of moving goods so dramatically that farmers who once grew only for local subsistence could now profitably grow cash crops for distant markets, while manufactured goods flowed the other direction – tightly integrating what had been isolated regional economies into a single national market.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Kênh đào Erie (hoàn thành 1825) nối sông Hudson với hồ Erie, giảm mạnh chi phí và thời gian vận chuyển hàng hoá, biến New York thành cảng lớn nhất nước Mỹ và kết nối nông dân vùng Trung Tây với thị trường Đại Tây Dương. Đường sắt (từ tuyến Baltimore & Ohio, 1827) sau đó còn vượt trội hơn kênh đào vì hoạt động quanh năm.

#### 4.5.2 Manufacturing: Lowell mills and the Cotton Kingdom

In the North, the **Lowell mills** of Massachusetts pioneered a new factory system, employing young unmarried farm women (“mill girls”) housed in supervised company boardinghouses – an arrangement meant to reassure families that factory work would not compromise their daughters’ respectability. Working conditions and wages worsened over the 1830s, provoking early labor protests (“turn-outs”) and a gradual shift toward immigrant labor. In the South, Eli Whitney’s **cotton gin** (1793) mechanized the removal of seeds from short-staple cotton, making cotton enormously profitable to grow across the Deep South’s climate and soil. The result was the “**Cotton Kingdom**”: a massive westward expansion of cotton plantations and, with it, the domestic slave trade, which forcibly relocated hundreds of thousands of enslaved people from the Upper South to the new cotton lands of the Deep South and Southwest.

#### HIPP document analysis: a Lowell mill worker’s account

*Paraphrase, based on accounts published in the “Lowell Offering” and later memoirs by former mill workers:* a young woman describes rising before dawn to the sound of factory bells, working roughly twelve-to-thirteen-hour days at the looms, and living under the boardinghouse’s strict curfews and moral supervision, while also valuing the independent wages and camaraderie the job provided.

**Historical situation:** written during the early-to-mid Lowell system (1820s–1840s), before conditions worsened and immigrant labor increasingly replaced native-born “mill girls.” **Intended audience:** readers curious about (and often skeptical of) young women working outside the home. **Purpose:** to defend factory work as respectable while also documenting its demands. **Point of view:** a literate factory worker with reason to present the system in a relatively favorable light, useful evidence of both real hardship and the genuine appeal of independent wages for young women.

| Feature                   | North                                                 | South                                                                 |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Labor system              | Free wage labor; factory system (e.g. Lowell mills)   | Slave labor; expanding westward via the cotton gin                    |
| Leading sector            | Textile manufacturing; growing commercial cities      | Cotton agriculture ("Cotton Kingdom"); plantation economy             |
| Transportation            | Dense canal and railroad networks integrating markets | Riverine transport oriented toward exporting cotton                   |
| Population trend          | Rapid urban growth; Irish and German immigration      | Rural; growth driven by natural increase and the domestic slave trade |
| Emerging social structure | Rising middle class; wage-earning workforce           | Planter elite, yeoman farmers, and a large enslaved population        |

Economic divergence between North and South during the Market Revolution, c. 1800–1848.

### Bài tập luyện tập

A table (described in text) shows that shipping a ton of freight from Buffalo to New York City took roughly three weeks and cost around \$100 before 1825, but took under a week and cost only a few dollars after 1825. This dramatic change is best explained by:

- (A) The completion of the Erie Canal                      (C) The Embargo Act of 1807  
(B) The Missouri Compromise                              (D) The Nullification Crisis

### Lời giải chi tiết

The Erie Canal, completed in 1825, connected the Great Lakes to the Hudson River and New York City, radically cutting the time and cost of moving bulk freight between the interior and the Atlantic coast – exactly the kind of transformation this data reflects. The Missouri Compromise (B) and Nullification Crisis (D) concerned sectional politics, not transportation costs; the Embargo Act (C, 1807) actually restricted, rather than expanded, American shipping. (A).

### Bài tập luyện tập

Export data showing a dramatic rise in the value of raw cotton shipped from Southern ports between the 1790s and the 1840s is most directly explained by:

- (A) The abolition of the Atlantic slave trade in 1808                      (C) The Missouri Compromise's restrictions on slavery  
(B) Eli Whitney's cotton gin, which made short-staple cotton highly profitable to process                      (D) The Hartford Convention's trade proposals

### Lời giải chi tiết

Before the cotton gin, separating seeds from short-staple cotton by hand was so labor-intensive that cotton was not very profitable outside a few coastal areas growing long-staple cotton; Whitney's gin (1793) mechanized this process, making short-staple cotton – which could grow across most of the Deep South – enormously profitable and driving the plantation system's rapid westward expansion. The 1808 ban on the Atlantic slave trade (A) restricted

new imports of enslaved people but did not cause cotton's rise; the Missouri Compromise (C) restricted slavery only north of 36°30'; the Hartford Convention (D) is unrelated. **(B)**.

### Bài tập luyện tập

Compared to earlier household and artisan production, the Lowell mill system represented which broader transformation of the Market Revolution?

- (A) A return to subsistence farming across New England      (C) The abolition of child and youth labor in American manufacturing
- (B) The shift toward wage labor and centralized factory production supervised by employers      (D) The elimination of regional economic differences between North and South

### Lời giải chi tiết

Lowell mill workers no longer produced goods for their own household's use or sale; instead, they sold their labor for wages under the direct supervision of factory owners and overseers working set hours at centralized machinery – the essence of the shift to wage labor and the factory system. Youth labor in fact continued and expanded in this system (C is wrong, not eliminated); regional economic differences between North and South widened, not disappeared, in this period (D is wrong); this was a shift away from, not toward, subsistence farming (A is wrong). **(B)**.

## 4.6 The Market Revolution: Society and Culture

### 4.6.1 A new middle class and changing gender roles

The Market Revolution produced a distinct, growing **middle class** of merchants, professionals, and factory owners whose prosperity depended on commerce and wages rather than land or a trade. This new middle class embraced an ideology sometimes called the “**cult of domesticity**” or “**separate spheres**”: as paid work increasingly moved outside the home into offices, shops, and factories, middle-class culture idealized the home as a private, feminine sphere of moral and religious nurture, presided over by wives and mothers, while men were expected to compete in the public, commercial sphere.

#### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

“Separate spheres” ideology was a middle-class cultural ideal, not a description of how all American women actually lived. It coexisted with, and often obscured, the very different realities of working-class and immigrant women who labored for wages, farm women whose households still depended on their productive labor, and enslaved women who had no legal claim to domestic protection at all.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Cách mạng Thị trường tạo ra một tầng lớp trung lưu mới gắn với thương mại và tiền lương thay vì đất đai. Tư tưởng “lĩnh vực riêng biệt” lý tưởng hoá người phụ nữ trung lưu như người giữ gìn đạo đức trong gia đình, trong khi nam giới cạnh tranh ở lĩnh vực công cộng/thương mại. Tuy nhiên đây chỉ là chuẩn mực của tầng lớp trung lưu, không phản ánh thực tế của phụ nữ lao động, phụ nữ nhập cư hay phụ nữ nô lệ.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not describe the “cult of domesticity” as if it applied equally to all American women in this period. It was a middle-class, largely white and Protestant ideal. Working-class and immigrant women (including many Lowell mill workers), farm women, and enslaved women all continued to perform essential wage or productive labor outside – or alongside – domestic duties, regardless of the era’s dominant gender ideology.

#### SAQ model outline: the Market Revolution’s social effects

*Stimulus (paraphrase), Catharine Beecher, A Treatise on Domestic Economy (1841):* Beecher argues that a well-ordered home, managed by an educated wife and mother, is essential to the moral health of the republic, and that domestic management is itself a demanding and dignified profession for women.

**(a) Describe ONE development of the Market Revolution reflected in the excerpt.** Model: Beecher’s argument reflects the “separate spheres” ideology that accompanied the Market Revolution, as paid work moved outside the home and the household was reimagined as a distinctly feminine, moral space.

**(b) Explain ONE way this development differed from the experience of a specific group of American women in the same period.** Model: Unlike the middle-class women Beecher addressed, young unmarried women working in the Lowell textile mills earned independent wages in a factory setting, directly contradicting the ideal of women confined to a purely domestic role.

**(c) Explain ONE broader change in the American economy that helped produce the middle class Beecher was writing for.** Model: The transportation and manufacturing revolution (canals, factories, expanding commerce) created new managerial, professional, and merchant occupations for men, whose growing incomes supported the very household ideal Beecher described.

#### 4.6.2 Immigration and urban growth

The Market Revolution’s expanding factories, cities, and canal- and railroad-construction projects drew a rising tide of immigrants, especially from **Ireland** (many fleeing poverty and, later, catastrophic famine) and the German states (fleeing both economic hardship and, for some, political repression). Concentrated in fast-growing cities such as New York, Boston, and Philadelphia, these immigrants – disproportionately poor, Catholic (in the Irish case), and willing to work for low wages – often faced hostility and discrimination from native-born Protestant Americans, feeding an early nativist backlash even before the mass migrations of the famine years.

##### Theme: MIG – Migration and Settlement

Immigration and urban growth were two faces of the same process: expanding factories and construction projects needed cheap wage labor, and immigrants supplied it, transforming Northern cities into crowded, ethnically diverse, and increasingly stratified places even as they fueled the same economic growth that native-born Americans celebrated.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Cách mạng Thị trường thu hút làn sóng nhập cư, đặc biệt từ Ireland và các bang Đức, đến làm việc trong nhà máy và các dự án xây dựng kênh đào, đường sắt. Họ tập trung ở các thành phố đang phát triển nhanh (New York, Boston, Philadelphia) nhưng thường bị phân biệt đối xử bởi người Mỹ bản xứ theo đạo Tin Lành, đặc biệt vì phần lớn người Ireland theo Công giáo.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

The rapid growth of Irish and German immigrant populations in Northern cities between the 1820s and 1840s is best explained by:

- (A) Federal policies actively recruiting immigrant factory labor
- (B) The demand for cheap wage labor created by expanding factories, canals, and railroads, combined with hardship pushing migrants out of Europe
- (C) The abolition of slavery in Northern states
- (D) The Missouri Compromise's territorial provisions

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Growing Northern factories, canal-digging, and railroad-building projects created enormous demand for cheap wage labor just as economic hardship (and, for many Irish, eventual famine) and political unrest pushed emigrants out of Ireland and the German states – a classic “push-pull” migration pattern. There was no significant federal recruitment program in this period (A is wrong); Northern slavery had already been abolished decades earlier and is not the cause of this migration wave (C is wrong); the Missouri Compromise (D) concerned domestic territorial slavery policy, unrelated to European immigration. **(B).**

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Catharine Beecher's writings promoting an educated, dedicated “domestic sphere” for women are best understood as evidence of:

- (A) A universal reality shared equally by all American women regardless of class or race
- (B) A middle-class cultural ideal that arose alongside the separation of paid work from the home during the Market Revolution
- (C) A radical challenge to traditional gender roles
- (D) Government policy restricting women's legal rights

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Beecher's domestic ideal reflected and reinforced an ideology specific to the growing middle class, whose men increasingly worked away from home in offices, shops, or factories; it was not shared by working-class, immigrant, farm, or enslaved women, whose labor continued outside as well as inside the household (A is wrong). Beecher's writing reinforced, rather than challenged, conventional gender roles (C is wrong), and it reflected a cultural ideology rather than a specific government policy (D is wrong). **(B).**

## 4.7 Expanding Democracy

### 4.7.1 Universal white male suffrage and the spoils system

By the 1820s and 1830s, most states had dropped property qualifications for voting, extending the franchise to nearly all white men regardless of wealth – a genuine democratization of political participation, though it excluded women, Native Americans, and, in most states, free Black men entirely; several Northern states, including Pennsylvania in 1838, actually stripped voting rights from free Black men that they had previously held. Andrew Jackson championed and embodied this more participatory, mass-based political style, rewarding loyal political supporters with government jobs

– the “**spoils system**” (“to the victor belong the spoils”) – which Jackson defended as democratic “rotation in office” that prevented an entrenched, unaccountable bureaucracy.

#### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

The expansion of white male suffrage and the rise of mass party politics (national nominating conventions, energetic popular campaigning, and patronage through the spoils system) marked a genuine democratization of political participation for white men – even as it coincided with tightening, not loosening, restrictions on the political rights of free Black Americans and continuing exclusion of women and Native Americans.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Đến thập niên 1820–1830, hầu hết các bang đã bỏ yêu cầu sở hữu tài sản để bầu cử, mở rộng quyền bầu cử cho gần như mọi đàn ông da trắng – nhưng vẫn loại trừ phụ nữ, người bản địa, và phần lớn đàn ông da đen tự do (một số bang miền Bắc như Pennsylvania năm 1838 còn tước quyền bầu cử họ từng có). Jackson áp dụng “hệ thống chiến lợi phẩm” (spoils system), bổ nhiệm người ủng hộ mình vào các vị trí chính quyền.

#### 4.7.2 The Election of 1824 and the “Corrupt Bargain”

The 1824 presidential election featured four candidates from the same Democratic-Republican Party – Andrew Jackson, John Quincy Adams, William Crawford, and Henry Clay – splitting the vote so thoroughly that no candidate won a majority in the Electoral College, throwing the decision to the House of Representatives (as specified by the Twelfth Amendment). Clay, eliminated as the fourth-place finisher but serving as Speaker of the House, used his influence to help elect Adams; when Adams then appointed Clay as Secretary of State, Jackson’s furious supporters denounced the outcome as a “**corrupt bargain**,” even though Jackson had won a plurality (but not a majority) of both the popular and electoral vote. The controversy galvanized Jackson’s supporters and fueled the formation of the new **Democratic Party** for the 1828 rematch.

| Feature                 | Jeffersonian Democracy (c. 1800–1820s)                                                            | Jacksonian Democracy (c. 1828–1840s)                                                   |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Political participation | Property qualifications still limited voting in many states; elite-led politics                   | Near-universal white male suffrage; mass party politics and popular campaigning        |
| View of federal power   | Rhetorically cautious/strict-constructionist, though Louisiana Purchase was a pragmatic exception | Assertive and expansive, especially in the executive branch (e.g. the Bank veto)       |
| Party organization      | Informal congressional nominating caucus                                                          | National conventions; patronage through the spoils system                              |
| View of economic elites | Wary of concentrated power, but no organized attack on the national bank                          | Explicitly hostile; the Bank War targeted a “moneyed aristocracy”                      |
| Limits of “democracy”   | Excluded women, Native Americans, enslaved and most free Black Americans                          | Same exclusions persisted; some free Black men actually lost voting rights in this era |

Comparing the political culture of Jeffersonian and Jacksonian democracy.

#### 4.7.3 The Election of 1828 and Jacksonian Democracy

In 1828, Andrew Jackson defeated John Quincy Adams in a landslide rematch marked by an unusually personal and vicious campaign – Jackson’s opponents attacked the legality of his marriage to

Rachel Jackson, while Jackson's supporters cast Adams as an aloof, aristocratic elitist out of touch with ordinary Americans. Jackson's victory, celebrated by huge, boisterous crowds at his White House inauguration, is often presented as the triumph of "the common man" and a new, more participatory era of mass democratic politics – **Jacksonian Democracy**.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The outcome of the 1824 election, in which the House of Representatives chose John Quincy Adams over popular-vote leader Andrew Jackson, and Adams's subsequent appointment of Henry Clay as Secretary of State, is best described by contemporaries and historians as:

- |                                                                                                                      |                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) A clear constitutional violation that was later overturned by the Supreme Court                                  | (C) Evidence that the Twelfth Amendment was repealed in 1824 |
| (B) The so-called "corrupt bargain," which fueled Jackson's supporters' anger and helped launch the Democratic Party | (D) An uncontested landslide victory for Jackson             |

### Lời giải chi tiết

Although constitutionally valid under the Twelfth Amendment's provision for House selection among the top three candidates, the sequence of Clay's support for Adams followed by his appointment as Secretary of State looked deeply suspicious to Jackson's supporters, who denounced it as a "corrupt bargain" and used the outrage to build the new Democratic Party's base for 1828. The process was not unconstitutional or overturned (A is wrong) or a repeal of the Twelfth Amendment (C is wrong); Jackson in fact lost this particular election despite winning a plurality (D is wrong). **(B)**.

### Bài tập luyện tập

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 4:

- (a) Briefly describe ONE way suffrage expanded for a specific group of Americans between 1800 and 1840.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way this same period saw voting or political rights *restricted* for a different group of Americans.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE political practice associated with Andrew Jackson's presidency that reflected the new, more participatory style of politics in this era.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Most states eliminated property-ownership requirements for voting between the 1810s and 1830s, extending suffrage to nearly all white men regardless of wealth, a significant expansion from the more restricted, property-based electorate of the early republic.
- (b) During this same period, several Northern states – Pennsylvania in 1838 is a clear example – restricted or eliminated voting rights previously held by free Black men, even as white male suffrage expanded, showing that "democratization" in this era was explicitly racialized.
- (c) Jackson's use of the "spoils system," rewarding political loyalty with government appointments, reflected (and reinforced) a more openly partisan, patronage-driven, mass-participatory style of politics, defended by Jackson as democratic "rotation in office."

## 4.8 Jackson and Federal Power

### 4.8.1 The Bank War

Jackson viewed the Second Bank of the United States, headed by Nicholas Biddle, as an unconstitutional monopoly that enriched a wealthy financial elite at the expense of ordinary Americans. When Congress, encouraged by Jackson's political rivals, voted to recharter the Bank early (in 1832, ahead of its scheduled 1836 expiration) in hopes of forcing a politically damaging veto before the election, Jackson obliged: he vetoed the recharter in a message that denounced the Bank as a dangerous concentration of unaccountable economic power. Jackson won reelection in 1832 handily and then moved to strangle the Bank further by withdrawing federal deposits and redistributing them to state ("pet") banks – a policy that contributed to reckless speculative lending later blamed for the financial panic that struck shortly after Jackson left office.

#### HIPP document analysis: Jackson's Bank veto message, 1832

**Paraphrase:** "It is to be regretted that the rich and powerful too often bend the acts of government to their selfish purposes... when the laws undertake... to make the rich richer and the potent more powerful, the humble members of society – the farmers, mechanics, and laborers – have a right to complain of the injustice of their government."

**Historical situation:** written after Congress passed an early recharter bill for the Second Bank in an election year, hoping to force Jackson into an unpopular veto. **Intended audience:** Congress formally, but really the voting public. **Purpose:** to justify the veto as a defense of ordinary Americans against a privileged financial elite. **Point of view:** a popular president deliberately framing a constitutional and economic dispute in the moral language of class conflict – valuable evidence of how Jackson built political support by casting himself as the champion of "the common man."

#### HIPP document analysis: an anti-Jackson political cartoon, "King Andrew the First" (1833)

**Description:** the cartoon depicts Jackson standing on a torn copy of the Constitution, dressed in royal robes and a crown, holding a scepter labeled "veto" in one hand.

**Historical situation:** published by Jackson's political opponents (the emerging Whig Party) after his Bank veto and his assertive actions during the Nullification Crisis. **Intended audience:** voters skeptical of concentrated executive power. **Purpose:** to portray Jackson's expansive use of presidential power – especially the veto – as tyrannical and unconstitutional. **Point of view:** a hostile Whig perspective that reveals how contemporaries on the losing side of the Bank War understood Jackson's presidency as a dangerous expansion of executive authority, even as Jackson's own supporters celebrated the very same actions as defending the common people.

#### DBQ thesis and outline model

**Prompt:** "Using the documents above and your knowledge of United States history, evaluate the extent to which Andrew Jackson's presidency expanded or threatened constitutional government in the period 1828–1838."

**Model thesis:** Jackson's presidency both expanded popular, majoritarian democracy and repeatedly stretched the constitutional limits of executive power, using the veto, forced removal, and the threat of military force to override Congress, the Supreme Court, and a sovereign Native nation whenever he judged the outcome served "the people."

**Supporting outline:**

**Paragraph 1 (Evidence from the veto message):** Jackson's Bank veto message reframed a constitutional and economic dispute as a moral contest between ordinary Americans and a privileged

elite, justifying an unusually assertive use of the presidential veto against a chartered institution Congress had voted to renew.

*Paragraph 2 (Evidence from the cartoon):* The “King Andrew the First” cartoon shows that Jackson’s contemporaries – not only modern historians – recognized and feared this expansion of executive power in real time, framing it explicitly as monarchical overreach against the Constitution.

*Paragraph 3 (Outside evidence and complication):* Jackson’s refusal to enforce *Worcester v. Georgia* and his willingness to threaten force during the Nullification Crisis extend the same pattern beyond the Bank War, though a strong response should also note Jackson’s genuine expansion of white male democratic participation as a complicating, not merely negative, part of his legacy.

#### 4.8.2 The Nullification Crisis (1832–1833)

South Carolina, angered by high protective tariffs (the 1828 “Tariff of Abominations” and the Tariff of 1832) that raised the cost of imported manufactured goods without protecting a cotton-exporting state’s own economy, asserted – following the constitutional theory of Jackson’s own vice president, John C. Calhoun, who resigned in protest in 1832 – that a state could declare a federal law void within its borders. South Carolina’s **Ordinance of Nullification** declared the tariffs unenforceable in the state and threatened secession if Washington tried to collect the duties by force. Jackson responded forcefully, securing passage of the **Force Bill** (1833) authorizing military enforcement of federal law, while simultaneously supporting Henry Clay’s **Compromise Tariff of 1833**, which gradually lowered the tariff to defuse the immediate crisis. South Carolina backed down, but the underlying dispute over states’ rights versus federal supremacy – closely tied to slaveholding states’ anxieties about federal power – remained unresolved.

#### 4.8.3 Indian Removal and the Trail of Tears

Jackson strongly supported the **Indian Removal Act (1830)**, which authorized the federal government to negotiate (often through coercion or fraud) the relocation of Native nations east of the Mississippi River to designated “Indian Territory” further west, opening enormous tracts of valuable land – especially in the cotton-growing Southeast – to white settlement. The Cherokee Nation challenged Georgia’s attempts to seize its land in *Worcester v. Georgia* (1832), and the Supreme Court, under Chief Justice Marshall, ruled that the Cherokee Nation was a sovereign entity subject only to federal, not state, jurisdiction. Jackson refused to enforce the ruling, and in 1838 – under Jackson’s successor Martin Van Buren, but as the direct culmination of Jackson-era policy – federal troops forced roughly 16,000 Cherokee to march over 1,000 miles to Indian Territory along the **Trail of Tears**; thousands died of exposure, disease, and starvation along the way.

##### Theme: MIG – Migration and Settlement

Indian Removal was a state-directed forced migration, not a voluntary relocation: it was carried out despite a favorable Supreme Court ruling protecting Cherokee sovereignty, illustrating how the era’s “expanding democracy” for white men was inseparable from the coercive displacement of Native nations from their ancestral homelands.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Đạo luật Trục xuất Người bản địa (1830) cho phép chính phủ liên bang buộc các dân tộc bản địa ở phía Đông sông Mississippi di dời sang “Lãnh thổ Người bản địa” ở phía Tây. Dù Tối cao Pháp viện trong vụ *Worcester v. Georgia* (1832) tuyên bố Cherokee là quốc gia có chủ quyền, Jackson từ chối thi hành phán quyết. Năm 1838, khoảng 16.000 người Cherokee bị ép buộc

đi bộ hơn 1.600km trong “Con đường Nước mắt” (Trail of Tears), hàng nghìn người chết vì đói, bệnh và kiệt sức.

**Indian Removal Act (1830) → Worcester v. Georgia (1832) → Trail of Tears (1838):** despite a Supreme Court ruling favorable to Cherokee sovereignty, the executive branch’s refusal to enforce it shows a recurring exam theme – constitutional protections are only as strong as the political will to enforce them.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not describe Jacksonian Democracy simply as an era when “democracy expanded for everyone.” Suffrage and political participation expanded dramatically for white men, but this same era saw the forced removal of Native nations from their homelands, the tightening (not loosening) of restrictions on free Black voting rights in several Northern states, and no expansion of political rights for women. Always specify *which* group’s rights you mean.

### Bài tập luyện tập

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 4:

- (a) Briefly describe Andrew Jackson’s constitutional argument for vetoing the recharter of the Second Bank of the United States in 1832.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE political consequence of Jackson’s Bank War for his 1832 reelection campaign or for the broader American economy.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way Jackson’s approach to the Bank War reflects a broader pattern in his use of executive power during his presidency.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Jackson argued that the Bank was an unconstitutional monopoly that concentrated economic power in the hands of a wealthy elite and unelected private bankers, disproportionately benefiting the rich at the expense of ordinary farmers, mechanics, and laborers.
- (b) Jackson’s veto and his populist framing of the Bank as an enemy of the common people helped him win a decisive reelection victory in 1832; his subsequent removal of federal deposits to state “pet banks,” however, contributed to reckless speculative lending that later economists and historians link to the financial panic that struck the economy shortly after he left office.
- (c) Jackson’s willingness to use the veto aggressively against the Bank paralleled his equally forceful assertion of federal authority during the Nullification Crisis and his refusal to enforce *Worcester v. Georgia* in favor of Indian removal – together showing a presidency defined by an expansive, assertive view of executive power, whether wielded against economic elites, defiant states, or Native sovereignty.

### Bài tập luyện tập

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 4:

- (a) Briefly describe the constitutional theory South Carolina used to justify the Ordinance of Nullification (1832).
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way President Jackson responded to South Carolina’s actions.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way the Nullification Crisis foreshadowed later sectional conflict over states’ rights.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Drawing on John C. Calhoun's theory of nullification, South Carolina claimed that because the states had created the federal Union, an individual state could declare a federal law – in this case, the protective tariffs of 1828 and 1832 – null and void within its own borders if it judged the law unconstitutional.
- (b) Jackson secured passage of the Force Bill (1833), authorizing federal military enforcement of the tariff if necessary, while also supporting Henry Clay's Compromise Tariff of 1833 to gradually lower rates and defuse the crisis peacefully.
- (c) The crisis previewed the sectional argument – that states could resist or reject federal authority they saw as harmful to their regional (and ultimately slaveholding) economic interests – that would resurface with greater intensity in the 1850s and ultimately contribute to secession and civil war.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 4:

- (a) Briefly describe the outcome of *Worcester v. Georgia* (1832).
- (b) Briefly explain why this outcome did not protect the Cherokee Nation from removal.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE long-term consequence of the Trail of Tears (1838) for the Cherokee Nation.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The Supreme Court, under Chief Justice John Marshall, ruled that the Cherokee Nation was a sovereign political entity, and that Georgia state law therefore had no authority within Cherokee territory – only the federal government could deal with the Cherokee Nation.
- (b) President Jackson refused to enforce the Court's ruling, since he supported removal and the executive branch controlled the troops and resources needed to carry out (or prevent) forced relocation; without executive enforcement, a favorable judicial ruling alone could not stop the state of Georgia or the federal removal policy.
- (c) The forced march of the Trail of Tears (1838) killed an estimated one-quarter of the Cherokee Nation's population from exposure, disease, and starvation, and permanently displaced the survivors to Indian Territory (present-day Oklahoma), profoundly disrupting Cherokee society, governance, and connection to ancestral homelands for generations.

## 4.9 The Development of an American Culture

### 4.9.1 The Second Great Awakening

Beginning in the early 1800s and continuing for decades, the **Second Great Awakening** was a wave of Protestant religious revival that swept much of the country, especially the “burned-over district” of upstate New York, where itinerant preachers such as Charles Grandison Finney held emotional camp-meeting revivals. Unlike the older Calvinist emphasis on predestination, revivalist theology stressed that individuals possessed free will and could choose salvation through their own faith and moral effort – a theology of “perfectionism” that implied society itself, not just the individual soul, could be improved and perfected. This theological shift directly fueled the era's reform movements, since converts who believed individuals could achieve their own salvation were primed to believe that committed reformers could also correct society's moral failings.

**Theme: ARC – American and Regional Culture**

The Second Great Awakening's theology of individual moral agency and societal perfectibility is the direct religious root of nearly every major reform movement of this period – temperance, education, asylum reform, abolitionism, and women's rights all drew energy and moral urgency from revivalist Protestantism.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Đại Tỉnh thức lần hai (đầu thế kỷ 19) là làn sóng phục hưng Tin Lành nhấn mạnh con người có thể tự do lựa chọn cứu rỗi qua đức tin và hành động đạo đức, khác với thuyết tiền định Calvin trước đó. Niềm tin rằng cá nhân và xã hội đều có thể “hoàn thiện” đã trực tiếp thúc đẩy các phong trào cải cách: cai rượu, giáo dục, cải cách trại tâm thần/nhà tù, bãi nô, và quyền phụ nữ.

**4.9.2 Transcendentalism and utopian communities**

Alongside evangelical revival, a very different intellectual movement – **transcendentalism** – flourished, centered in Concord, Massachusetts. Ralph Waldo Emerson's essays, including *Nature* (1836) and “Self-Reliance” (1841), and Henry David Thoreau's writings argued that individuals could reach spiritual truth through intuition and communion with nature, transcending organized religion, materialism, and social convention. This spirit of experimentation also produced **utopian communities** that tested alternative models of social and economic organization: Brook Farm (Massachusetts, founded 1841) attempted a transcendentalist experiment in shared labor and intellectual life; the Shakers practiced celibate communal living centered on religious devotion; and Robert Owen's secular, socialist community at New Harmony, Indiana (founded 1825), sought to reorganize economic life around cooperation rather than competition.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Ralph Waldo Emerson's essay “Self-Reliance” (1841), which urges readers to trust their own intuition rather than conform to social convention or institutional authority, is best understood as an expression of:

- |                                                                                  |                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Second Great Awakening evangelical revivalism                                | and communion with nature over materialism and convention |
| (B) Transcendentalism, an intellectual movement emphasizing individual intuition | (C) The “cult of domesticity”                             |
|                                                                                  | (D) Jacksonian spoils-system politics                     |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Emerson and fellow transcendentalists such as Thoreau argued that genuine spiritual and moral truth came from individual intuition and a direct relationship with nature, not from organized religious institutions, social convention, or material accumulation – distinguishing transcendentalism from the emotional, church-centered revivalism of the Second Great Awakening (A is a related but distinct movement). It has no connection to domestic gender ideology (C) or Jackson's patronage politics (D). (B).

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 4:

- Briefly describe ONE core belief of the Second Great Awakening.
- Briefly explain ONE way this belief connected to the era's reform movements.
- Briefly explain ONE way utopian communities such as Brook Farm or New Harmony re-

flected the broader spirit of experimentation in this period.

#### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) The Second Great Awakening taught that individuals possessed free will and could achieve salvation through their own faith and moral choices, rejecting strict Calvinist predestination.
- (b) This belief in individual moral agency extended naturally to a belief that society's flaws – alcohol abuse, inadequate education, inhumane treatment of the mentally ill and incarcerated, and slavery – could likewise be corrected through committed, deliberate reform effort, directly fueling movements like temperance and abolitionism.
- (c) Communities like Brook Farm (a transcendentalist experiment in shared intellectual and physical labor) and Robert Owen's New Harmony (a secular, cooperative economic experiment) both reflected a broader antebellum conviction that existing social and economic arrangements were not fixed, and that deliberately designed alternative communities might achieve a more perfect, harmonious way of life.

## 4.10 Reform Movements

### 4.10.1 Temperance, education, and asylum/prison reform

The Second Great Awakening's reforming energy fanned out across several major movements. The **temperance movement**, organized nationally through groups such as the American Temperance Society (founded 1826), campaigned against alcohol consumption, which reformers blamed for poverty, domestic abuse, and social disorder. **Horace Mann**, as secretary of the Massachusetts Board of Education from 1837, championed **public education reform**, arguing that free, tax-supported "common schools" open to all children were essential to a functioning democracy and to social mobility, and he promoted new "normal schools" to train professional teachers. **Dorothea Dix** investigated the horrific conditions faced by the mentally ill, who were often confined alongside criminals in prisons and almshouses without treatment; her advocacy, beginning with a landmark 1841 report to the Massachusetts legislature, helped drive the creation of state-funded asylums intended to provide humane, therapeutic care.

#### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

Temperance, education, and asylum/prison reform shared a common assumption drawn from Second Great Awakening theology: that social problems were not fixed features of human nature but correctable failures of environment and institutions, and that a well-designed institution (the common school, the state asylum) could morally and practically improve individuals and, in turn, society as a whole.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Phong trào cai rượu, cải cách giáo dục (Horace Mann với hệ thống trường công lập miễn phí) và cải cách trại tâm thần/nhà tù (Dorothea Dix) đều xuất phát từ niềm tin của Đại Tỉnh thức lần hai rằng các vấn đề xã hội có thể được sửa chữa thông qua thể chế được thiết kế tốt, như trường học công và trại tâm thần do bang tài trợ.

| Movement                     | Key leaders / organizations                                               | Core goal                                                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Temperance                   | American Temperance Society (1826)                                        | Reduce or eliminate alcohol consumption                             |
| Education reform             | Horace Mann, Massachusetts Board of Education (from 1837)                 | Free, tax-supported “common schools”; trained teachers              |
| Asylum/prison reform         | Dorothea Dix                                                              | Humane, state-funded treatment of the mentally ill and incarcerated |
| Abolitionism                 | William Lloyd Garrison ( <i>The Liberator</i> , 1831); Frederick Douglass | Immediate, uncompensated end to slavery                             |
| Women’s rights               | Elizabeth Cady Stanton, Lucretia Mott; Seneca Falls (1848)                | Legal and political equality, including suffrage                    |
| Utopian/communal experiments | Brook Farm; New Harmony; the Shakers                                      | Alternative models of social, economic, or religious life           |

Major antebellum reform movements sparked by the Second Great Awakening.

### Bài tập luyện tập

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 4:

- Briefly describe Horace Mann’s central goal for American education.
- Briefly explain ONE argument reformers used to justify state-funded “common schools.”
- Briefly explain ONE way Dorothea Dix’s advocacy paralleled Mann’s approach to reform.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- Horace Mann sought to establish free, tax-supported, universally accessible public schools (“common schools”) open to all children regardless of family wealth, along with professionally trained teachers educated at new “normal schools.”
- Reformers argued that an educated citizenry was essential to the survival of a functioning democracy and that public schooling could reduce poverty and crime by giving children of all backgrounds equal access to social mobility, rather than leaving education a privilege of the wealthy.
- Like Mann, Dix argued that a poorly designed institutional environment – prisons and almshouses that mixed the mentally ill with criminals and offered no treatment – caused otherwise correctable human suffering, and that a well-designed public institution (the state-funded asylum, just as the common school) could humanely improve outcomes for a vulnerable population.

## 4.10.2 Abolitionism

Opposition to slavery grew far more radical in this period. Earlier gradualist efforts, such as the American Colonization Society (founded 1816), had sought to resettle free Black Americans in Africa rather than confront slavery directly. **William Lloyd Garrison**, founder of the newspaper *The Liberator* (1831) and co-founder of the American Anti-Slavery Society (1833), rejected gradualism entirely, demanding the **immediate, uncompensated abolition** of slavery as a moral imperative. **Frederick Douglass**, who escaped slavery in Maryland in 1838, became the movement’s most powerful voice, using his own life story – published as the *Narrative of the Life of Frederick Douglass, an American Slave* (1845) – and his skill as an orator to demolish proslavery arguments before Northern and international audiences. Nat Turner’s Rebellion in Virginia (1831) heightened Southern fears of slave

uprisings and led to harsher slave codes across the South, even as Northern abolitionism grew louder and more organized in the very same years.

#### 4.10.3 The women's rights movement and Seneca Falls (1848)

Many women who became active in abolitionism – including Elizabeth Cady Stanton and Lucretia Mott, who met after being denied full participation as delegates at the 1840 World Anti-Slavery Convention in London – began applying the same arguments about natural rights and equality to their own legal and political status. In July 1848, Stanton and Mott organized the **Seneca Falls Convention** in upstate New York, the first women's rights convention in American history, which issued the **Declaration of Sentiments**, deliberately modeled on the Declaration of Independence, listing grievances against women's legal subordination and demanding expanded rights – including, most controversially even among the delegates, the right to vote, a demand that passed only after Frederick Douglass spoke forcefully in its favor.

##### HIPP document analysis: Declaration of Sentiments, Seneca Falls, 1848

*Paraphrase:* “We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all men and women are created equal...” The document lists grievances against women's legal, economic, and political subordination – including exclusion from the vote, unequal property rights within marriage, and exclusion from higher education and most professions – closely echoing the structure and language of the 1776 Declaration of Independence.

**Historical situation:** written amid the broader reform ferment of the Second Great Awakening and drawing directly on Stanton's and Mott's experience of exclusion from full participation in the abolitionist movement. **Intended audience:** the American public, including skeptical men and women alike. **Purpose:** to launch an organized movement demanding legal and political equality for women. **Point of view:** reformers deliberately appropriating the nation's own founding rhetoric – by mirroring Jefferson's language so closely, the delegates framed women's rights as the logical fulfillment, rather than a radical rejection, of America's founding principles, putting opponents in the awkward position of rejecting “self-evident” American values.

##### Bài tập luyện tập

The decision by Elizabeth Cady Stanton and the Seneca Falls delegates to model the Declaration of Sentiments (1848) closely on the language of the 1776 Declaration of Independence most directly reflects which rhetorical strategy?

- |                                                                                                                               |                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Rejecting American founding principles as fundamentally flawed                                                            | American                                                             |
| (B) Framing women's equality as the logical extension of the nation's own founding ideals, making opposition to it appear un- | (C) Appealing directly to Congress for a constitutional amendment    |
|                                                                                                                               | (D) Allying the women's rights movement with the temperance movement |

##### Lời giải chi tiết

By echoing Jefferson's “self-evident truths” almost word for word, Stanton and the Seneca Falls delegates cast women's demand for legal and political equality not as a radical break from American values but as their logical fulfillment – a strategy that put critics in the position of appearing to reject the nation's own founding principles. This is the opposite of rejecting founding principles (A is wrong); the document was a declaration of grievances and resolutions, not a congressional petition for a specific amendment (C is wrong) or an alliance with temperance specifically (D is wrong, though many reformers did support multiple causes). (B).

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Frederick Douglass's escape from slavery and subsequent career illustrate which broader development within the abolitionist movement of this period?

- (A) A shift toward compensated emancipation and gradual colonization in Africa      (C) Southern planters' increasing support for ending slavery
- (B) The growing prominence of formerly enslaved people as leading voices demanding immediate, uncompensated abolition      (D) The replacement of print media by television as abolitionism's primary tool

<br/>

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Douglass's escape from slavery in 1838 and his subsequent rise as a renowned author and orator exemplify how formerly enslaved people became central, authoritative voices within the immediatist abolitionist movement led by figures like Garrison, using firsthand testimony to counter proslavery propaganda far more powerfully than sympathetic outsiders alone could. This period saw a hardening of proslavery, not growing planter support for abolition (C is wrong); it moved toward immediatism, not gradual colonization (A is wrong); and of course television did not exist yet, print (newspapers, narratives, pamphlets) remained the era's dominant medium (D is wrong). (B).

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using the Declaration of Sentiments excerpt above and your knowledge of Period 4:

- (a) Briefly describe ONE grievance the Seneca Falls delegates raised against women's legal or political status.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE connection between the abolitionist movement and the origins of the organized women's rights movement.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way the Seneca Falls Convention's demands were, or were not, achieved by 1848.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

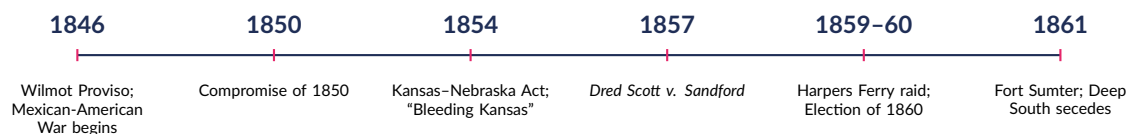
- (a) The delegates protested women's exclusion from the vote, their lack of independent property and legal rights within marriage, and their exclusion from higher education and most professions.
- (b) Leading organizers Elizabeth Cady Stanton and Lucretia Mott had been active abolitionists who experienced firsthand exclusion from full participation (as seated delegates) at the 1840 World Anti-Slavery Convention in London, an experience that convinced them women needed their own organized movement to demand equal rights; Frederick Douglass, a prominent abolitionist, also spoke in favor of women's suffrage at Seneca Falls itself.
- (c) By 1848, none of the Declaration of Sentiments' core demands – including suffrage, equal property rights, and access to higher education and the professions – had been achieved nationally; the convention instead marked the symbolic launching point of an organized movement whose central goal, women's suffrage, would not be achieved nationally until the Nineteenth Amendment in 1920.

# Period 5 --- Slavery, Civil War, and Reconstruction (1844--1877)

**Mục tiêu Unit:** Phân tích tư tưởng “Vận mệnh Hiển nhiên” (Manifest Destiny) và quá trình mở rộng lãnh thổ giữa thế kỷ 19 (sáp nhập Texas 1845, Hiệp ước Oregon 1846, Chiến tranh Mỹ–Mexico 1846–1848 và vùng đất nhượng lại từ Mexico); trình bày các nỗ lực thỏa hiệp về chế độ nô lệ (Thỏa hiệp 1850, Đạo luật Kansas–Nebraska 1854) và nguyên nhân khiến các thỏa hiệp này sụp đổ (vụ *Dred Scott*, phong trào Bleeding Kansas, tranh luận Lincoln–Douglas, cuộc đột kích Harpers Ferry); giải thích diễn biến quân sự chính của Nội chiến (1861–1865) cùng các chính sách quan trọng của chính phủ liên bang thời chiến (Tuyên ngôn Giải phóng Nô lệ, binh lính da đen, Đạo luật Homestead, Tu chính án 13); và phân tích hai mô hình Tái thiết (Tổng thống và Cấp tiến/Quốc hội), vai trò chính trị của người Mỹ gốc Phi thời kỳ này, cùng những nguyên nhân khiến Tái thiết thất bại, dẫn đến Thỏa hiệp 1877.

## 5.1 Contextualizing Period 5

Between 1844 and 1877 the United States nearly destroyed itself over a single question it had postponed since the founding: would slavery expand, endure, or end? Territorial expansion under the banner of “Manifest Destiny” – the annexation of Texas, the acquisition of Oregon, and the conquest of the Mexican Cession – reopened the question of slavery’s future in new lands every time Congress organized a new territory. A succession of compromises (1850, then the Kansas-Nebraska Act of 1854) tried and failed to manage this conflict, while the Supreme Court’s *Dred Scott* decision (1857) closed off compromise as a constitutional option altogether. Abraham Lincoln’s election in 1860, on a platform merely opposing slavery’s expansion, was enough to trigger the secession of the Deep South and four years of civil war (1861–1865) that killed roughly 750,000 Americans, destroyed the Confederacy, and ended slavery. The war’s aftermath – Reconstruction (1865–1877) – briefly extended citizenship and voting rights to formerly enslaved men before white Southern violence and Northern political fatigue rolled Reconstruction back, leaving the promise of racial equality largely unfulfilled for generations.



The sectional crisis, 1846–1861: from territorial expansion to the outbreak of war.

### Theme: NAT – National Identity

Period 5 is the moment when competing definitions of American national identity – a nation dedicated to expanding free-labor democracy versus a nation whose economy and constitutional order depended on protecting slaveholders’ property rights – became impossible to hold together within a single political system, ultimately requiring civil war to resolve which vision would define the nation’s future.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Giai đoạn 1844–1877 xoay quanh một câu hỏi duy nhất: chế độ nô lệ sẽ mở rộng, tồn tại, hay chấm dứt? Việc mở rộng lãnh thổ (Texas, Oregon, vùng đất nhượng từ Mexico) liên tục đặt lại câu hỏi này. Các thỏa hiệp (1850, Kansas–Nebraska 1854) đều thất bại, và phán quyết *Dred Scott* (1857) đóng luôn cánh cửa thỏa hiệp về mặt hiến pháp. Lincoln đắc cử năm 1860 dẫn đến ly khai của miền Nam và bốn năm nội chiến (1861–1865) khiến khoảng 750.000 người Mỹ thiệt mạng. Thời kỳ Tái thiết (1865–1877) sau đó trao quyền công dân và bầu cử cho người Mỹ gốc Phi vừa được giải phóng, nhưng bạo lực của người da trắng miền Nam và sự mệt mỏi chính trị ở miền Bắc đã khiến những thành quả này bị thu hẹp dần.

## Bài tập luyện tập

A historian summarizes Period 5 (1844–1877) as “a period in which territorial expansion, sectional compromise, war, and its aftermath were all organized around a single recurring question.” That question was:

- |                                                                                                                              |                                                          |                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Whether the federal government or state governments should control internal improvements                                 | all                                                      | (C) Whether the United States should adopt a national bank |
| (B) Whether slavery would be permitted to expand into new territories and, eventually, whether it would continue to exist at | (D) Whether immigration from Europe should be restricted |                                                            |

## Lời giải chi tiết

From the Wilmot Proviso (1846) through the Compromise of 1850, the Kansas-Nebraska Act (1854), *Dred Scott* (1857), secession, the Civil War, emancipation, and the Reconstruction amendments, virtually every major political conflict of this period returned to the same underlying issue: slavery’s expansion and, ultimately, its survival. Internal improvements (A) and the national bank (C) were central conflicts of Period 4 (the Jacksonian era) rather than Period 5; immigration restriction (D) became a major national issue later, especially from the 1880s onward. (B).

## 5.2 Manifest Destiny and Territorial Expansion

## 5.2.1 The Ideology of Manifest Destiny

In 1845, journalist John L. O’Sullivan coined the phrase “**Manifest Destiny**” to describe what many white Americans already believed: that the United States was divinely or naturally destined to expand across the North American continent, spreading republican government, Protestant Christianity, and free-market agriculture from the Atlantic to the Pacific. This ideology blended genuine idealism about self-government with racial and cultural assumptions that treated Native nations and Mexican citizens already living on the continent as obstacles to be displaced rather than peoples with equal claims to the land. Manifest Destiny provided the political vocabulary that justified the annexation of Texas, the settlement of Oregon, and, ultimately, war with Mexico.

## Theme: GEO – Geography and the Environment

Manifest Destiny turned geography itself into an ideological argument: proponents described the continent’s rivers, plains, and coastlines as a natural, even providential, boundary for the United States, which made westward conquest appear less like a political choice and more like the fulfillment of a preexisting geographic destiny.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Năm 1845, nhà báo John L. O'Sullivan đặt ra thuật ngữ "Vận mệnh Hiên nhiên" (Manifest Destiny) để mô tả niềm tin rằng Hoa Kỳ có sứ mệnh tự nhiên hoặc do Thượng đế định sẵn để mở rộng khắp lục địa Bắc Mỹ, truyền bá chính thể cộng hòa và nông nghiệp tự do. Tư tưởng này pha trộn giữa lý tưởng về tự trị và các giả định chủng tộc coi người bản địa và người Mexico là trở ngại cần bị gạt bỏ. Đây chính là nền tảng tư tưởng biện minh cho việc sáp nhập Texas, giải quyết Oregon, và cuối cùng là chiến tranh với Mexico.

**5.2.2 Texas Annexation (1845)**

American settlers in the Mexican province of Texas had declared independence in 1836 after defeats at the Alamo and victory at San Jacinto, forming the independent Republic of Texas – but annexation by the United States stalled for nearly a decade because adding a huge new slave state threatened the delicate sectional balance in the Senate. President John Tyler finally secured Texas annexation through a joint resolution of Congress (requiring only simple majorities rather than the two-thirds Senate vote a treaty would need), signed just before he left office in early 1845; Texas formally joined the Union in December 1845. Mexico, which had never recognized Texan independence, considered annexation an act of aggression and severed diplomatic relations with the United States, while the location of the Texas-Mexico border remained bitterly disputed – Texas claimed the Rio Grande, Mexico insisted on the more northerly Nueces River.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Người định cư Mỹ tại Texas (thuộc Mexico) tuyên bố độc lập năm 1836. Việc sáp nhập vào Hoa Kỳ bị trì hoãn gần một thập kỷ vì lo ngại phá vỡ cân bằng số bang tự do/bang nô lệ tại Thượng viện. Tổng thống Tyler cuối cùng sáp nhập Texas bằng nghị quyết chung của Quốc hội (chỉ cần đa số thường) đầu năm 1845; Texas chính thức gia nhập Liên bang tháng 12/1845. Mexico chưa từng công nhận nền độc lập của Texas nên coi đây là hành động xâm lược, và tranh chấp biên giới (sông Rio Grande theo Texas, sông Nueces theo Mexico) trở thành ngòi nổ cho chiến tranh.

**5.2.3 The Oregon Trail and the Oregon Treaty (1846)**

Thousands of American settlers traveled the overland **Oregon Trail** in the 1840s to farm the fertile Willamette Valley, a region jointly occupied by the United States and Great Britain since an 1818 agreement. Expansionist Democrats demanded the entire Oregon Country up to the parallel 54°40' north, popularizing the slogan "Fifty-Four Forty or Fight"; President James K. Polk, however, preferred to avoid simultaneous wars with Britain and Mexico, and negotiated the **Oregon Treaty (June 1846)**, which set the U.S.-Canadian boundary at the 49th parallel – far short of the campaign slogan's demand, but a peaceful resolution achieved just as war with Mexico was breaking out further south.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Người định cư Mỹ di chuyển theo Đường mòn Oregon (Oregon Trail) trong thập niên 1840 để canh tác tại thung lũng Willamette, khu vực Mỹ và Anh cùng chiếm đóng từ 1818. Dù khẩu hiệu "54°40' hoặc là chiến tranh" đòi toàn bộ Oregon, Tổng thống Polk đã đàm phán Hiệp ước Oregon (6/1846), ấn định biên giới Mỹ-Canada tại vĩ tuyến 49 để tránh chiến tranh cùng lúc với cả Anh và Mexico.

**Two annexations, two methods:** Texas (1845) was annexed by a simple congressional joint resolution because a two-thirds Senate treaty vote was unattainable given sectional disagreement over admitting another slave state; Oregon (1846) was resolved by treaty with Britain because it involved a foreign boundary dispute, not a contested domestic vote over slavery's expansion. Both episodes reflect Polk's broader expansionist agenda achieved through different constitutional tools.

### Bài tập luyện tập

A campaign banner from the 1844 presidential election reads "Re-annexation of Texas and Re-occupation of Oregon!" This slogan is best understood as evidence of:

- (A) Bipartisan opposition to any further U.S. territorial expansion
- (B) The Democratic Party's platform of aggressive continental expansion under the ideology of Manifest Destiny
- (C) A treaty already finalized with Mexico over the Texas border
- (D) Southern Whigs' rejection of slavery's expansion into new territories

### Lời giải chi tiết

Democrat James K. Polk ran in 1844 on an explicitly expansionist platform demanding both Texas annexation and full American control of Oregon, capturing the era's Manifest Destiny spirit – the slogan's confident, almost proprietary language ("re-annexation," "re-occupation") reflects the belief that this expansion was a natural right rather than new conquest. This was a Democratic, not bipartisan or Whig, position (A and D are wrong); no treaty with Mexico existed at this time, and the Mexican border dispute was unresolved and became one of the war's direct causes (C is wrong). **(B).**

### Bài tập luyện tập

President Polk's decision to accept the 49th parallel in the Oregon Treaty of 1846, well short of the "Fifty-Four Forty" demanded by expansionists, is best explained by:

- (A) Britain's superior military victory over U.S. forces in the Pacific Northwest
- (B) Polk's desire to avoid fighting Britain and Mexico simultaneously as war with Mexico was breaking out
- (C) A Supreme Court ruling requiring the 49th parallel boundary
- (D) Congressional refusal to fund any settlement in Oregon

### Lời giải chi tiết

With tensions over the Texas border already pushing the United States toward war with Mexico, Polk pragmatically chose a negotiated compromise with Britain over Oregon rather than risk a two-front conflict against two much stronger or more distant military powers at once. No military battle occurred over Oregon (A is wrong), no Supreme Court case addressed this diplomatic boundary (C is wrong), and Congress did not block funding for the settlement (D is wrong). **(B).**

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 5:

- (a) Briefly describe ONE specific way the ideology of Manifest Destiny shaped U.S. territorial policy between 1844 and 1846.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way the annexation of Texas contributed to rising tensions between the United States and Mexico.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way that the resolution of the Oregon boundary dispute differed from the resolution of the Texas-Mexico border dispute.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Manifest Destiny's belief that continental expansion was a natural and even divinely sanctioned right for the United States provided the popular and political justification for both the 1845 annexation of Texas and the aggressive "Fifty-Four Forty" demands over Oregon in 1844–1846.
- (b) Because Mexico had never recognized Texan independence and disputed whether the border lay at the Rio Grande or the Nueces River, U.S. annexation of Texas in 1845 was viewed by Mexico as an act of aggression, severing diplomatic relations and setting the stage for armed conflict along the disputed border.
- (c) The Oregon dispute was resolved peacefully through treaty negotiation with Britain in 1846, whereas the Texas-Mexico border dispute was never resolved diplomatically and instead became a direct trigger of the Mexican-American War later that same year.

## 5.3 The Mexican-American War (1846--1848)

### 5.3.1 Causes of the War

War with Mexico grew directly out of the disputed Texas border and Polk's broader expansionist ambitions, including his desire to acquire California's Pacific ports before Britain could establish influence there. In early 1846, Polk ordered General Zachary Taylor's troops into the contested zone between the Nueces River and the Rio Grande; when a Mexican cavalry unit clashed with American soldiers there in April 1846 (the Thornton Affair), Polk told Congress that Mexico had "shed American blood upon American soil" and requested a declaration of war, which Congress granted in May 1846. Not all Americans supported the war: many Whigs, including a freshman congressman named Abraham Lincoln, challenged Polk's claim through the "Spot Resolutions," demanding he identify the exact spot where blood had been shed on undisputedly American soil, while abolitionist "Conscience Whigs" denounced the war as a thinly veiled land grab designed to expand slave territory.

**Theme: WOR – America in the World**

The Mexican-American War marked the first major U.S. war of foreign conquest, fought explicitly to acquire territory from a sovereign neighbor – a preview of later debates about whether American power in the world should serve expansion and national interest or be constrained by considerations of justice toward weaker nations, a tension articulated at the time by war critics like Lincoln and Henry David Thoreau (who was jailed for refusing to pay taxes supporting the war).

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Chiến tranh với Mexico bắt nguồn từ tranh chấp biên giới Texas và tham vọng bành trướng của Polk, đặc biệt là mong muốn chiếm các cảng California trước khi Anh có ảnh hưởng ở đó. Đầu năm 1846, quân đội Mỹ tiến vào vùng tranh chấp; sau vụ đụng độ tháng 4/1846, Polk

tuyên bố Mexico đã “đổ máu người Mỹ trên đất Mỹ” và xin Quốc hội tuyên chiến. Không phải người Mỹ nào cũng ủng hộ chiến tranh: nhiều nghị sĩ Whig (trong đó có Abraham Lincoln) và những người theo chủ nghĩa bãi nô coi đây là cuộc chiến nhằm mở rộng lãnh thổ nô lệ.

### 5.3.2 The Wilmot Proviso

In August 1846, barely three months into the war, Pennsylvania congressman David Wilmot introduced an amendment to a military appropriations bill: the **Wilmot Proviso**, which would have banned slavery in any territory acquired from Mexico as a result of the war. The Proviso passed the House of Representatives (where the more populous free states held a majority) repeatedly over the following years but consistently failed in the Senate (where slave and free states held equal numbers); it was never enacted, but its sectional, nearly party-line voting pattern revealed something crucial – that the war’s territorial spoils would reopen the fight over slavery’s expansion regardless of how the fighting itself concluded.

#### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

The Wilmot Proviso demonstrated that slavery’s expansion, not the war itself, was becoming the central axis of American political conflict: the measure divided Congress almost entirely along sectional rather than party lines, foreshadowing the collapse of the existing two-party system and the eventual rise of a purely sectional Republican Party in the following decade.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Năm 1846, nghị sĩ David Wilmot đề xuất cấm chế độ nô lệ tại bất kỳ vùng đất nào giành được từ Mexico. Điều khoản này (Wilmot Proviso) được Hạ viện thông qua nhiều lần nhưng luôn bị Thượng viện bác bỏ, không bao giờ trở thành luật – nhưng cách bỏ phiếu chia theo vùng miền (không theo đảng phái) cho thấy vấn đề mở rộng nô lệ sẽ trở thành trục xung đột chính trị trung tâm của nước Mỹ.

#### LEQ thesis model: territorial expansion and sectional conflict

**Prompt:** Evaluate the extent to which territorial expansion between 1844 and 1848 intensified sectional conflict over slavery.

**Model thesis:** Territorial expansion between 1844 and 1848 dramatically intensified sectional conflict over slavery because every new acquisition – Texas, Oregon, and above all the Mexican Cession – forced Congress to decide whether slavery would be permitted in land that had never before been part of the United States, transforming a previously containable moral and economic disagreement into an unavoidable, recurring constitutional crisis.

**Outline:** (1) *Texas annexation (1845)* added one enormous slave state and revived fears of a growing “Slave Power” dominating national politics. (2) *The Wilmot Proviso (1846)* showed that any territory won from Mexico would immediately become a battleground over slavery, producing sectional (not party) voting patterns in Congress even while the war was still being fought. (3) *The Mexican Cession (1848)* was so vast that it made the question of slavery’s status in the West unavoidable, directly producing the crisis that required the Compromise of 1850 – expansion did not create sectional conflict from nothing, but it repeatedly reopened and intensified a conflict that earlier compromises (like the Missouri Compromise) had only ever postponed.

### 5.3.3 The Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo and the Mexican Cession

American forces under Zachary Taylor and Winfield Scott won a series of victories culminating in the capture of Mexico City in September 1847, forcing Mexico to negotiate. The **Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo (February 1848)** ended the war: Mexico recognized the Rio Grande as the Texas border and ceded the vast **Mexican Cession** – including present-day California, Nevada, Utah, and most of Arizona, New Mexico, and Colorado – to the United States in exchange for \$15 million and the assumption of Mexican citizens' claims against the U.S. government. The treaty nominally promised to protect the property, religion, and civil rights of the roughly 100,000 Mexican residents who suddenly found themselves living within U.S. borders, but these guarantees were widely violated in the following decades as Anglo-American settlers seized land and political power across the new Southwest.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Sau khi Mỹ chiếm được Thành phố Mexico (9/1847), Hiệp ước Guadalupe Hidalgo (2/1848) chấm dứt chiến tranh: Mexico công nhận Rio Grande là biên giới Texas và nhượng lại vùng đất rộng lớn (California, Nevada, Utah, phần lớn Arizona, New Mexico, Colorado) cho Mỹ đổi lấy 15 triệu đô la. Hiệp ước hứa bảo vệ quyền tài sản và dân sự của khoảng 100.000 người Mexico đang sinh sống tại vùng đất mới, nhưng những cam kết này phần lớn bị vi phạm trong các thập kỷ sau.

#### Bài tập luyện tập

The Wilmot Proviso's failure to pass the Senate, despite repeated passage in the House between 1846 and 1848, is best explained by:

- |                                                                                                                                 |                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Unanimous Southern support in the House                                                                                     | (C) A presidential veto that could not be overridden                 |
| (B) The equal number of free and slave states represented in the Senate, which blocked measures restricting slavery's expansion | (D) The Supreme Court's ruling that the Proviso was unconstitutional |

#### Lời giải chi tiết

Because the Senate gave every state, regardless of population, two votes, the even split between free and slave states in the late 1840s allowed Southern senators to consistently block the Wilmot Proviso even as it passed the more populous, free-state-majority House. The House vote was sectional, not unanimous by region (A mischaracterizes it); no presidential veto was needed since the bill never passed the Senate (C is wrong); the Supreme Court did not rule on the Proviso, which never became law (D is wrong). **(B)**.

#### Bài tập luyện tập

The Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo (1848) most directly caused which of the following developments in American politics?

- |                                                                                                                        |                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) The immediate abolition of slavery throughout the United States                                                    | (C) The permanent resolution of the Oregon boundary dispute |
| (B) A renewed and urgent national debate over whether slavery would be permitted in the newly acquired Mexican Cession | (D) The formation of the Confederate States of America      |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

By adding such an enormous new territory to the United States, the treaty forced Congress to confront – far more urgently than before – the question of whether slavery would extend into the new Southwest, a debate that directly produced the crisis resolved (temporarily) by the Compromise of 1850. Slavery was not abolished anywhere by this treaty (A is wrong); the Oregon boundary had already been settled two years earlier by a separate treaty with Britain in 1846 (C is wrong); the Confederacy would not form until 1861, thirteen years later (D is wrong). (B).

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 5:

- (a) Briefly explain ONE way the Mexican-American War (1846–1848) was connected to the earlier annexation of Texas.
- (b) Briefly describe the significance of the Wilmot Proviso, even though it never became law.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE consequence of the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo for American sectional politics after 1848.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The unresolved dispute over whether the Texas-Mexico border lay at the Rio Grande or the Nueces River, left open by Texas's 1845 annexation, directly triggered the armed clash in 1846 that Polk used to justify a declaration of war against Mexico.
- (b) Although it never passed the Senate and never became law, the Wilmot Proviso revealed that Congress would vote along sectional rather than party lines whenever the expansion of slavery into new territory was at stake, foreshadowing the sectional political realignment of the 1850s.
- (c) The Mexican Cession's vast size made the question of slavery's status in the West impossible to avoid any longer, directly producing the sectional crisis that Congress attempted to resolve with the Compromise of 1850.

## 5.4 The Compromise of 1850

### 5.4.1 Terms of the Compromise

The discovery of gold in California (1848) brought a flood of settlers and pushed California to apply for admission as a free state in 1849, which would have upset the Senate's careful balance between free and slave states. Henry Clay proposed an omnibus bill to resolve this and several related disputes at once; when it failed to pass as a single package, Senator Stephen Douglas broke it into separate bills, each passed by a shifting coalition of senators who supported different individual provisions. The resulting **Compromise of 1850** admitted California as a free state, organized the New Mexico and Utah territories under **popular sovereignty** (letting territorial settlers themselves decide the status of slavery by vote), settled the Texas-New Mexico boundary dispute (with Texas receiving \$10 million in compensation for surrendered land claims), and abolished the slave trade – though not slavery itself – in Washington, D.C.

**Theme: PCE – Politics and Power**

The Compromise of 1850's reliance on popular sovereignty represented a deliberate attempt to remove the volatile question of slavery's expansion from Congress and hand it instead to territorial settlers – a strategy that seemed to depoliticize the issue but in practice merely relocated the conflict, setting the stage for the violent settler conflict in Kansas just four years

later.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Việc phát hiện vàng ở California (1848) khiến bang này xin gia nhập Liên bang như một bang tự do, đe dọa phá vỡ cân bằng Thượng viện. Henry Clay đề xuất một dự luật tổng hợp; khi thất bại, Stephen Douglas chia nhỏ thành nhiều dự luật riêng được thông qua bởi các liên minh khác nhau. Thỏa hiệp 1850 gồm: California là bang tự do; New Mexico và Utah áp dụng “chủ quyền nhân dân” (popular sovereignty) để tự quyết định về nô lệ; giải quyết biên giới Texas–New Mexico; và cấm buôn bán nô lệ (không cấm chế độ nô lệ) tại Washington D.C.

### 5.4.2 The Fugitive Slave Act of 1850

The Compromise’s most controversial element was a dramatically strengthened **Fugitive Slave Act**, demanded by Southern senators as the price of accepting California’s free-state admission. The new law denied accused fugitives the right to a jury trial or even to testify on their own behalf, empowered federal commissioners (paid more for ruling in favor of the slaveholder than the accused) to decide cases, and imposed heavy fines and imprisonment on ordinary Northern citizens who refused to assist in capturing an alleged fugitive or who aided an escape. The law provoked fierce Northern resistance: several states passed “personal liberty laws” obstructing enforcement, abolitionists staged dramatic rescues (such as that of Anthony Burns in Boston, 1854), and the law’s cruelty directly inspired Harriet Beecher Stowe to write *Uncle Tom’s Cabin*.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Điều khoản gây tranh cãi nhất là Đạo luật Nô lệ Bỏ trốn (Fugitive Slave Act) được siết chặt: người bị cáo buộc là nô lệ bỏ trốn không có quyền xét xử bởi bồi thẩm đoàn, không được tự bào chữa; công dân miền Bắc từ chối hỗ trợ bắt giữ có thể bị phạt tù. Đạo luật này gây ra làn sóng phản đối mạnh mẽ ở miền Bắc, dẫn đến các đạo luật “tự do cá nhân” của các bang, các vụ giải cứu nổi tiếng, và trực tiếp truyền cảm hứng cho Harriet Beecher Stowe viết *Uncle Tom’s Cabin*.

**The Compromise of 1850, in brief:** (1) California admitted free; (2) New Mexico and Utah organized under popular sovereignty; (3) Texas-New Mexico border settled, Texas paid \$10 million; (4) slave trade (not slavery) banned in Washington, D.C.; (5) a much stronger Fugitive Slave Act. It bought roughly four years of uneasy sectional peace before the Kansas-Nebraska Act reopened the crisis.

#### Bài tập luyện tập

A Boston newspaper editorial from 1851 condemns “a law that turns every citizen into a slave-catcher against his own conscience, denying a man his freedom without so much as a jury to hear his case.” This editorial is most directly criticizing:

- |                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (A) The Missouri Compromise of 1820 | (C) The Kansas-Nebraska Act of 1854 |
| (B) The Fugitive Slave Act of 1850  | (D) The Wilmot Proviso              |

#### Lời giải chi tiết

The editorial’s specific complaints – ordinary citizens compelled to assist in capturing accused fugitives, and the denial of a jury trial to the accused – match precisely the provisions of the strengthened Fugitive Slave Act of 1850, the most controversial part of that year’s compro-

mise. The Missouri Compromise (A, 1820) concerned a geographic line for slavery's expansion, not fugitive-slave enforcement; the Kansas-Nebraska Act (C, 1854) concerned popular sovereignty in the Kansas and Nebraska territories; the Wilmot Proviso (D) was a failed proposal to ban slavery in the Mexican Cession, unrelated to fugitive-slave enforcement. **(B)**.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The provision of the Compromise of 1850 that most directly applied the principle of “popular sovereignty” was:

- (A) The admission of California as a free state      (C) The abolition of the slave trade in Washington, D.C.  
(B) The organization of the New Mexico and Utah territories, where settlers would themselves decide the status of slavery      (D) The strengthened Fugitive Slave Act

### Lời giải chi tiết

Popular sovereignty specifically meant letting the settlers of a territory vote on whether to permit slavery there, rather than Congress deciding by statute or geographic line – exactly the arrangement applied to New Mexico and Utah in 1850. California's admission as a free state (A) was a direct congressional decision, not a settler vote; the D.C. slave-trade ban (C) and the Fugitive Slave Act (D) were unrelated congressional statutes, not exercises of territorial self-determination. **(B)**.

### Bài tập luyện tập

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 5:

- (a) Briefly explain why California's application for statehood in 1849 created a political crisis.  
(b) Briefly describe ONE specific provision of the Compromise of 1850 other than California's admission.  
(c) Briefly explain ONE reason the Compromise of 1850 failed to permanently resolve sectional conflict over slavery.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) California's request to enter the Union as a free state threatened to upset the equal balance of free and slave states in the Senate, a balance both sections had carefully protected since the Missouri Compromise of 1820.  
(b) The Compromise also organized the New Mexico and Utah territories under popular sovereignty, allowing settlers there to decide the status of slavery for themselves, and it strengthened the Fugitive Slave Act to satisfy Southern demands.  
(c) The dramatically strengthened Fugitive Slave Act provoked such fierce Northern resistance – personal liberty laws, public rescues, and works like *Uncle Tom's Cabin* – that sectional tensions over slavery actually deepened rather than subsided in the years immediately following the Compromise.

## 5.5 The Failure of Compromise

### 5.5.1 Uncle Tom's Cabin (1852)

Harriet Beecher Stowe's novel *Uncle Tom's Cabin* (1852), written partly in direct response to the Fugitive Slave Act, dramatized the cruelty of slavery and the moral horror of families separated by

sale, becoming an enormous bestseller that reshaped Northern public opinion about slavery as never before. The novel provoked furious Southern rebuttals (so-called “anti-Tom” novels defending slavery as paternalistic and benign) and, according to a story often (if perhaps apocryphally) told about Lincoln’s first meeting with Stowe, was credited with helping to make the coming war possible by turning an abstract political dispute into an urgent moral one for millions of Northern readers.

#### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

*Uncle Tom’s Cabin* illustrates how literature and popular culture could reshape political consciousness around the social structure of slavery: by depicting enslaved people as sympathetic individuals with families and moral dignity, Stowe’s novel made slavery’s human costs vivid to Northern readers who had never encountered the institution directly, accelerating the shift of Northern public opinion against compromise with the South.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Tiểu thuyết *Uncle Tom’s Cabin* (1852) của Harriet Beecher Stowe, viết một phần để phản đối Đạo luật Nô lệ Bỏ trốn, mô tả sự tàn khốc của chế độ nô lệ và nỗi đau chia lìa gia đình, trở thành cuốn sách bán chạy nhất và làm thay đổi mạnh mẽ dư luận miền Bắc. Cuốn sách gây ra phản ứng dữ dội từ miền Nam và được cho là đã góp phần biến một tranh chấp chính trị trừu tượng thành một vấn đề đạo đức cấp bách.

### 5.5.2 The Kansas-Nebraska Act and “Bleeding Kansas” (1854)

Senator Stephen Douglas, eager to organize the Nebraska Territory (partly to secure a northern route for a transcontinental railroad through Chicago) and needing Southern votes to do so, proposed the **Kansas-Nebraska Act (1854)**: it divided the region into Kansas and Nebraska territories and applied **popular sovereignty** to both, explicitly repealing the Missouri Compromise line of 36°30’ that had banned slavery there since 1820. The law provoked outrage across the North, where it was seen as a betrayal of a thirty-four-year-old sectional agreement, and it triggered a rush of pro-slavery and antislavery settlers into Kansas, each side determined to control the territory’s vote on slavery. Violence soon followed – pro-slavery “border ruffians” sacked the free-soil town of Lawrence in May 1856, and abolitionist John Brown retaliated days later with the Pottawatomie Massacre, murdering five pro-slavery settlers – while rival territorial governments (a pro-slavery constitution drafted at Lecompton and a free-soil constitution drafted at Topeka) competed for legitimacy, earning the territory the nickname “**Bleeding Kansas**.”

#### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

Bleeding Kansas showed that popular sovereignty, far from depoliticizing the slavery question as its supporters hoped, could produce actual armed conflict between rival settler factions competing to control a territorial government – a preview, on a small scale, of the large-scale civil war that would follow within a decade.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Thượng nghị sĩ Stephen Douglas đề xuất Đạo luật Kansas-Nebraska (1854), chia vùng đất thành hai lãnh thổ Kansas và Nebraska, áp dụng chủ quyền nhân dân và bãi bỏ ranh giới 36°30’ của Thỏa hiệp Missouri. Đạo luật này gây phẫn nộ ở miền Bắc và khiến người định cư ủng hộ/phản đối nô lệ đổ về Kansas để giành quyền kiểm soát, dẫn đến bạo lực (vụ cướp phá Lawrence, vụ thảm sát Pottawatomie của John Brown) – giai đoạn này được gọi là “Kansas Đắm máu” (Bleeding Kansas).

(!) **Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not confuse the three major congressional attempts to manage slavery's expansion. The **Missouri Compromise (1820)** drew a permanent geographic line (36°30') across the Louisiana Purchase territory. The **Compromise of 1850** applied popular sovereignty only to the newly organized New Mexico and Utah territories (from the Mexican Cession) while admitting California as a free state by direct congressional vote. The **Kansas-Nebraska Act (1854)** explicitly repealed the Missouri Compromise line and extended popular sovereignty into territory (Kansas and Nebraska) that had been guaranteed to freedom since 1820 – this repeal, not the 1850 compromise, is what provoked the most intense Northern backlash and directly caused the formation of the Republican Party.

### 5.5.3 The Rise of the Republican Party

Outrage over the Kansas-Nebraska Act's repeal of the Missouri Compromise line drove antislavery Whigs, Free-Soilers, and disaffected antislavery Democrats to form a new political party in 1854: the **Republican Party**. Unlike abolitionists, the new party did not initially call for ending slavery where it already existed, but it firmly opposed slavery's further expansion into any federal territory. The party ran its first presidential candidate, John C. Frémont, in 1856 (losing to Democrat James Buchanan but demonstrating surprising sectional strength across the North), and grew rapidly enough to elect Abraham Lincoln president just four years later.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Sự phẫn nộ trước việc bãi bỏ ranh giới Thỏa hiệp Missouri đã thúc đẩy các thành viên Whig, Free-Soil và Dân chủ chống nô lệ thành lập Đảng Cộng hòa năm 1854. Đảng này ban đầu không kêu gọi xóa bỏ nô lệ ở nơi đã tồn tại, mà chỉ phản đối việc mở rộng nô lệ vào lãnh thổ liên bang. Ứng viên đầu tiên John C. Frémont (1856) thua Buchanan nhưng cho thấy sức mạnh khu vực đáng kể, giúp Lincoln đắc cử chỉ bốn năm sau.

### 5.5.4 Dred Scott v. Sandford (1857)

Dred Scott, an enslaved man who had lived with his owner for years in the free state of Illinois and the free Wisconsin Territory before returning to Missouri, sued for his freedom on the grounds that residence in free territory had made him free. Chief Justice Roger Taney's majority opinion in **Dred Scott v. Sandford** (1857) went far beyond the immediate case: it ruled that Black Americans, whether enslaved or free, could never be U.S. citizens and therefore had no standing to sue in federal court at all, that they possessed, in Taney's infamous phrase, "no rights which the white man was bound to respect," and – most explosively – that Congress had no constitutional power to prohibit slavery in any federal territory, which retroactively declared the already-repealed Missouri Compromise line unconstitutional and threw the legal legitimacy of popular sovereignty itself into doubt.

#### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

*Dred Scott* used the Supreme Court's authority to entrench a rigid racial hierarchy into constitutional law itself, declaring that Black Americans – enslaved or free – stood permanently outside the political community of citizens. The ruling closed off compromise as a constitutional option: if Congress could never ban slavery in any territory, there was no longer any legislative middle ground left between the sections to negotiate over.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Dred Scott, một người nô lệ từng sống tại bang tự do Illinois và lãnh thổ tự do Wisconsin, kiện đòi tự do. Chánh án Roger Taney tuyên bố người da đen – dù tự do hay nô lệ – không bao giờ có thể là công dân Mỹ, "không có quyền nào mà người da trắng buộc phải tôn trọng," và Quốc hội không có quyền cấm chế độ nô lệ tại bất kỳ lãnh thổ liên bang nào – điều này vô hiệu hóa

ranh giới Thỏa hiệp Missouri (đã bị bãi bỏ trước đó) và đe dọa cả tính hợp pháp của chủ quyền nhân dân.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not assume the Emancipation Proclamation (1863) or any wartime measure automatically “overturned” *Dred Scott*. As a Supreme Court constitutional ruling, *Dred Scott* could only be undone by a constitutional amendment or a later Court decision reinterpreting the Constitution – which is exactly what happened with the **Fourteenth Amendment (1868)**, whose birthright-citizenship clause explicitly reversed Taney’s ruling that Black Americans could never be citizens. On the exam, connect *Dred Scott* directly to the Fourteenth Amendment, not to the Emancipation Proclamation, when asked what reversed its citizenship holding.

#### DBQ thesis model: the collapse of compromise, 1850–1861

**Prompt:** Evaluate the extent to which political compromise over slavery became impossible between 1850 and 1861.

**Model thesis:** Although the Compromise of 1850 briefly suggested that sectional conflict over slavery could still be managed through legislative bargaining, political compromise became effectively impossible after 1854 because the Kansas-Nebraska Act’s repeal of the Missouri Compromise line destroyed the geographic middle ground both sections had relied upon, and the *Dred Scott* decision of 1857 then closed off popular sovereignty itself as a constitutional option, leaving no remaining legislative or judicial mechanism through which North and South could negotiate slavery’s future.

**Outline:** (1) 1850–1854: the Compromise of 1850 (documents/evidence: its territorial and Fugitive Slave Act provisions) still relied on the possibility of negotiated, legislative bargains between sections. (2) 1854–1857: the Kansas-Nebraska Act’s repeal of the 36°30’ line and the resulting violence in “Bleeding Kansas” showed that popular sovereignty produced conflict rather than resolving it. (3) 1857–1860: *Dred Scott* eliminated Congress’s constitutional authority to restrict slavery in the territories at all, while the Lincoln-Douglas debates revealed that even Northern and Southern Democrats could no longer agree on how to interpret popular sovereignty after that ruling – by 1860, no compromise formula remained that both sections would accept.

#### 5.5.5 The Lincoln-Douglas Debates (1858)

Competing for an Illinois Senate seat in 1858, Republican challenger Abraham Lincoln and incumbent Democrat Stephen Douglas held seven famous debates across the state, focused above all on slavery’s expansion. At the Freeport debate, Lincoln pressed Douglas to reconcile his support for popular sovereignty with the *Dred Scott* ruling that Congress could not ban slavery in the territories; Douglas’s answer, the **Freeport Doctrine**, argued that a territory could still exclude slavery in practice simply by refusing to pass the local “police regulations” (such as slave codes) that slavery needed to function – a clever legal answer that helped Douglas win reelection to the Senate in Illinois but that alienated Southern Democrats, who wanted federal protection for slavery in the territories, contributing directly to the Democratic Party’s fatal split in 1860.

#### HIPP document analysis: the Lincoln-Douglas debates, Freeport, 1858

*Paraphrase, Stephen Douglas, the “Freeport Doctrine”:* the people of a territory can, by lawful means, exclude slavery from their limits before forming a state constitution, “no matter what the Supreme Court may hereafter decide,” because slavery cannot exist a single day unless

supported by local police regulations, and a territorial legislature can simply refuse to enact them.

**Historical situation:** delivered during the 1858 Illinois Senate campaign, one year after *Dred Scott* (1857) had ruled Congress could not ban slavery in the territories. **Intended audience:** Illinois voters, but also, given wide press coverage, a national audience including Southern Democrats. **Purpose:** to preserve Douglas's popular-sovereignty position for a Northern electorate without openly repudiating the Supreme Court. **Point of view:** an ambitious senator threading a needle between two audiences – the answer saved Douglas's Senate seat in 1858 but cost him crucial Southern Democratic support in the presidential election of 1860, illustrating how thoroughly *Dred Scott* had narrowed the space for political compromise.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Trong cuộc tranh cử Thượng viện Illinois năm 1858, Lincoln và Douglas tổ chức bảy cuộc tranh luận nổi tiếng. Tại Freeport, Lincoln buộc Douglas phải giải thích cách dung hòa chủ quyền nhân dân với phán quyết *Dred Scott*; câu trả lời của Douglas ("Học thuyết Freeport") cho rằng lãnh thổ vẫn có thể loại trừ nô lệ bằng cách không ban hành các quy định pháp lý cần thiết để nô lệ tồn tại. Câu trả lời này giúp Douglas thắng cử tại Illinois nhưng làm mất lòng tin của đảng Dân chủ miền Nam, góp phần dẫn đến sự chia rẽ đảng Dân chủ năm 1860.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The formation of the Republican Party in 1854 is best explained as a direct response to:

- |                                                                                    |                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) The Compromise of 1850's admission of California as a free state               | of popular sovereignty into previously free territory |
| (B) The Kansas-Nebraska Act's repeal of the Missouri Compromise line and extension | (C) The <i>Dred Scott</i> decision of 1857            |
|                                                                                    | (D) The Fugitive Slave Act of 1793                    |

### Lời giải chi tiết

The Kansas-Nebraska Act's repeal of the 36°30' line – opening territory long guaranteed to freedom to the possibility of slavery – was the immediate catalyst that drove anti-Nebraska Whigs, Free-Soilers, and antislavery Democrats to organize a new, single-issue Northern party in 1854. The Compromise of 1850 (A) predates and is unrelated to the party's founding; *Dred Scott* (C, 1857) came three years after the party already existed; the 1793 Fugitive Slave Act (D) is a much earlier and less inflammatory law than the 1850 version. (B).

### Bài tập luyện tập

The ruling in *Dred Scott v. Sandford* (1857) most directly undermined which political solution to the slavery-expansion debate?

- |                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) The Wilmot Proviso                                                                                                                                                   | eral territory                                                                                 |
| (B) Popular sovereignty, since the Court held that neither Congress nor a territorial legislature acting under congressional authority could exclude slavery from a fed- | (C) The Fugitive Slave Act of 1850                                                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | (D) The Missouri Compromise line, which the Court declared was still legally in effect in 1857 |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

By ruling that Congress itself lacked constitutional power to ban slavery in federal territories, Taney's opinion logically undermined popular sovereignty as well, since a territorial government could not exercise power (banning slavery) that Congress itself did not possess to delegate – exactly the tension Lincoln pressed Douglas on at Freeport. The Wilmot Proviso (A) had already failed to pass a decade earlier and was not the direct target of this ruling; the Fugitive Slave Act (C) was untouched by this case; the Court actually declared the Missouri Compromise line unconstitutional and void, not still in effect (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

A 1856 newspaper headline reads: “Free-Soil Settlers Driven from Lawrence; Rival Constitutions Submitted at Topeka and Lecompton.” This headline most directly reflects events in:

- (A) Missouri during the Nullification Crisis      (C) Texas during the annexation crisis of 1845  
(B) Kansas Territory following the Kansas-Nebraska Act's application of popular sovereignty      (D) Virginia following John Brown's raid

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The sack of the free-soil town of Lawrence and the competing pro-slavery (Lecompton) and free-soil (Topeka) territorial constitutions were defining events of “Bleeding Kansas,” the violent struggle over slavery's status that erupted after the Kansas-Nebraska Act applied popular sovereignty to the territory in 1854. The Nullification Crisis (A) occurred in South Carolina in the early 1830s over tariffs; the Texas annexation crisis (C) predates this episode by over a decade; John Brown's raid on Harpers Ferry (D) occurred in Virginia in 1859, a different event and location. **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 5:

- (a) Briefly explain how the Kansas-Nebraska Act (1854) differed from the Missouri Compromise (1820) in its approach to slavery's expansion.  
(b) Briefly describe ONE specific consequence of the Kansas-Nebraska Act for national party politics.  
(c) Briefly explain how the *Dred Scott* decision (1857) narrowed the range of acceptable political compromise over slavery.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The Missouri Compromise permanently banned slavery north of 36°30' by direct congressional statute, while the Kansas-Nebraska Act repealed that line and instead let settlers in Kansas and Nebraska themselves vote on slavery's status through popular sovereignty.  
(b) Outrage over the Act's repeal of the Missouri Compromise line directly caused the formation of the new Republican Party in 1854, uniting former Whigs, Free-Soilers, and antislavery Democrats around opposition to slavery's expansion.  
(c) By ruling that Congress had no constitutional power to ban slavery in any federal territory, *Dred Scott* eliminated the legal basis both for the old Missouri Compromise line and, implicitly, for popular sovereignty itself, leaving no remaining constitutionally acceptable compromise formula for regulating slavery's expansion.

## 5.6 Rising Sectional Tensions, 1859--1861

### 5.6.1 John Brown's Raid on Harpers Ferry (1859)

In October 1859, radical abolitionist John Brown – already notorious for the Pottawatomie Massacre in Kansas – led a small armed band in seizing the federal arsenal at Harpers Ferry, Virginia, intending to arm enslaved people for a mass uprising against slavery. U.S. Marines under Colonel Robert E. Lee quickly recaptured the arsenal and captured Brown, who was tried for treason and hanged in December 1859. The raid terrified the South, confirming long-standing fears of slave insurrection and Northern abolitionist violence; when prominent Northern intellectuals such as Ralph Waldo Emerson publicly praised Brown as a martyr, many white Southerners concluded that mainstream Northern opinion secretly sympathized with armed rebellion against slavery, deepening sectional distrust just a year before the presidential election.

#### Theme: NAT – National Identity

Reactions to John Brown's raid reveal two starkly different visions of American national identity colliding: Southern white society interpreted the raid as proof that the North sought slavery's violent destruction, while some Northern abolitionists interpreted Brown as a righteous martyr for a national ideal of liberty betrayed by slavery – each side increasingly viewed the other not as a political rival but as a fundamental threat to the nation's future.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Tháng 10/1859, nhà bãi nô cực đoan John Brown dẫn một nhóm vũ trang nhỏ chiếm kho vũ khí liên bang tại Harpers Ferry, Virginia, với ý định trang bị vũ khí cho người nô lệ để nổi dậy. Lực lượng Thủy quân lục chiến Mỹ do Robert E. Lee chỉ huy nhanh chóng dập tắt cuộc nổi dậy; Brown bị xử tử tháng 12/1859. Vụ việc khiến miền Nam hoảng sợ, càng củng cố niềm tin rằng miền Bắc ngầm ủng hộ bạo lực chống chế độ nô lệ.

### 5.6.2 The Election of 1860

The Democratic Party fractured at its 1860 convention over whether to demand federal protection for slavery in the territories; Northern Democrats nominated Stephen Douglas on a popular-sovereignty platform, while Southern Democrats walked out and nominated John C. Breckinridge on a platform demanding federal slave-code protection. A remnant of former Whigs formed the Constitutional Union Party, nominating John Bell on a vague platform of simply preserving the Union. Into this fractured field, the Republican Party nominated Abraham Lincoln on a platform that opposed slavery's expansion into any federal territory without calling for its abolition where it already existed. With his opposition split three ways, Lincoln won a clear Electoral College majority while capturing barely 40% of the national popular vote and not appearing on the ballot at all in most of the Deep South.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Đảng Dân chủ chia rẽ tại đại hội 1860: Dân chủ miền Bắc đề cử Douglas (chủ quyền nhân dân), Dân chủ miền Nam đề cử Breckinridge (đòi bảo hộ liên bang cho nô lệ). Đảng Liên minh Hiến pháp đề cử Bell. Đảng Cộng hòa đề cử Lincoln, phản đối mở rộng nô lệ (không đòi xóa bỏ nô lệ hiện có). Với phe đối lập bị chia ba, Lincoln thắng cử đoàn đại cử tri rõ ràng dù chỉ giành khoảng 40% phiếu phổ thông toàn quốc và hầu như không có tên trên lá phiếu ở miền Nam sâu.

### 5.6.3 Secession of the Deep South

South Carolina seceded from the Union on December 20, 1860, within weeks of Lincoln's election, followed by Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas by February 1861; each

state's secession declarations explicitly cited the protection of slavery, not abstract states' rights, as their central grievance. These seven Deep South states formed the **Confederate States of America** in Montgomery, Alabama, in February 1861, electing Jefferson Davis as provisional president and adopting a constitution that explicitly protected slavery. Last-minute compromise proposals, including the Crittenden Compromise (which would have extended the Missouri Compromise line to the Pacific), failed in Congress, and the Upper South states (Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas) initially remained in the Union, waiting to see how the crisis would unfold.

**Secession timeline:** South Carolina (Dec. 1860) → Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, Texas (Jan.–Feb. 1861) → Confederate States of America formed at Montgomery, Alabama (Feb. 1861) → Fort Sumter attacked (April 1861) → Upper South (Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, Arkansas) secedes only after Lincoln calls for troops to suppress the rebellion.

### LEQ thesis model: what caused the Civil War?

**Prompt:** Evaluate the extent to which the institution of slavery, more than any other single factor, was the primary cause of the outbreak of the Civil War by 1861.

**Model thesis:** Although states' rights, economic divergence, and clashing visions of federal power all shaped the sectional crisis, slavery was the underlying cause of the Civil War, because every major point of conflict between 1846 and 1861 – the Wilmot Proviso, the Compromise of 1850, the Kansas-Nebraska Act, *Dred Scott*, and the secessionists' own stated justifications in 1860–1861 – centered specifically on slavery's protection or expansion, not on states' rights or economics in the abstract.

**Outline:** (1) *Territorial disputes* (the Wilmot Proviso, popular sovereignty in Kansas) were always fights over whether slavery would expand, not generic disputes over territorial governance. (2) *Dred Scott and the Lincoln-Douglas debates* show the conflict as explicitly constitutional and moral, centered on Black citizenship and property rights in enslaved people. (3) *Complexity:* Southern secessionists did invoke “states' rights,” but South Carolina's own declaration of causes shows that the specific right they defended was the right to hold enslaved property – so states' rights functioned as the vehicle for defending slavery, not an independent cause standing apart from it.

### Bài tập luyện tập

South Carolina's official “Declaration of the Immediate Causes” for secession (December 1860) is best summarized as arguing that secession was justified primarily because:

- |                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Northern states had imposed unfair protective tariffs on Southern agricultural exports                                       | (C) The federal government had refused to fund internal improvements in the South             |
| (B) Northern states had failed to enforce the Fugitive Slave Act and Lincoln's Republican Party threatened the future of slavery | (D) South Carolina sought to abolish slavery more quickly than the federal government allowed |

### Lời giải chi tiết

South Carolina's actual secession declaration centers explicitly on slavery: it complains that Northern states had failed to enforce the Fugitive Slave Act, had elected a president (Lincoln) “whose opinions and purposes are hostile to slavery,” and warns that Republican control of

the federal government endangered the institution's future – making protection of slavery, not tariffs or internal improvements (issues more associated with the Nullification Crisis decades earlier), the explicit central grievance. Option D directly contradicts secessionists' actual goal, which was to preserve, not abolish, slavery. **(B)**.

### Bài tập luyện tập

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 5:

- (a) Briefly explain why Lincoln's election in November 1860 triggered the secession of South Carolina and other Deep South states so quickly.
- (b) Briefly describe ONE way the Democratic Party's split in 1860 contributed to Lincoln's victory.
- (c) Briefly explain why the Upper South states did not secede immediately alongside the Deep South in late 1860 and early 1861.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Although Lincoln had promised not to interfere with slavery where it already existed, Deep South secessionists viewed his election – on a platform opposing slavery's expansion, without any Southern electoral votes – as proof that the federal government would no longer protect slaveholders' long-term political and economic interests.
- (b) The Democratic Party's split into Northern (Douglas) and Southern (Breckinridge) factions divided the anti-Republican vote three or four ways, allowing Lincoln to win a clear Electoral College majority despite capturing only a plurality of the national popular vote.
- (c) Upper South states such as Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas initially chose to remain in the Union and wait, only seceding after Lincoln's April 1861 call for troops to suppress the Deep South's rebellion forced them to choose between fighting fellow Southerners or joining the Confederacy.

## 5.7 The Civil War: Military Conflict

### 5.7.1 Fort Sumter and Mobilization

Confederate artillery opened fire on the federal garrison at **Fort Sumter** in Charleston Harbor on April 12–13, 1861, forcing its surrender and beginning the Civil War. Lincoln responded by calling for 75,000 volunteer troops to suppress what he described as an insurrection, a call that pushed the Upper South states – Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas – to secede rather than supply troops to fight fellow Southerners, expanding the Confederacy to eleven states. Four slave-holding **border states** (Missouri, Kentucky, Maryland, and Delaware) remained in the Union, sometimes only through determined federal political and even military pressure, such as the suspension of habeas corpus and imposition of martial law in Maryland to prevent secession from cutting off Washington, D.C.



The Civil War and Reconstruction, 1861–1877.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Pháo binh Liên minh miền Nam (Confederacy) nổ súng vào Đồn Sumter tại Charleston (12–13/4/1861), mở đầu Nội chiến. Lincoln kêu gọi 75.000 tình nguyện quân, khiến các bang Thượng Nam (Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, Arkansas) ly khai để không phải chiến đấu chống lại đồng bào miền Nam. Bốn bang biên giới có chế độ nô lệ (Missouri, Kentucky, Maryland, Delaware) vẫn ở lại Liên bang, đôi khi nhờ áp lực chính trị và quân sự mạnh mẽ từ chính quyền liên bang.

## 5.7.2 Union and Confederate Strategy and Advantages

The Union entered the war with overwhelming material advantages: a population of roughly 22 million against the Confederacy's 9 million (of whom about 3.5 million were enslaved and therefore not part of the Confederate army's manpower pool), the vast majority of the nation's factories and railroad mileage, and a navy capable of enforcing the **Anaconda Plan**, a strategy of blockading Southern ports and controlling the Mississippi River to strangle the Confederate economy. The Confederacy, however, fought a defensive war on familiar terrain with strong initial military leadership – many top West Point-trained officers, including Robert E. Lee and Thomas “Stonewall” Jackson, resigned from the U.S. Army to fight for their home states – and needed only to outlast Northern political will rather than conquer Union territory outright, while hoping (ultimately in vain) that European powers dependent on Southern cotton, especially Britain, might intervene on the Confederacy's behalf.

| Factor                | Union (North)                                                                                   | Confederacy (South)                                                                                        |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Population            | ~22 million                                                                                     | ~9 million, including about 3.5 million enslaved people                                                    |
| Industry & rail-roads | ~90% of U.S. manufacturing capacity; dense rail network                                         | Overwhelmingly agricultural; limited factories and rail mileage                                            |
| Military leadership   | Inconsistent early on; effective commanders (Grant, Sherman) emerged only after years of trial  | Many top West Point-trained officers (Lee, Jackson) sided with the Confederacy from the outset             |
| Strategic position    | Had to invade and conquer to win; needed to control the Mississippi and blockade Southern ports | Fought largely defensively on home terrain; needed only to outlast Northern will to continue fighting      |
| Navy & finance        | Controlled U.S. Navy; enforced the Anaconda Plan blockade; stronger tax base and banking system | Minimal navy; blockade crippled cotton exports and war-material imports; currency collapsed from inflation |

Comparative Union and Confederate advantages at the outset of the Civil War, 1861.

## Theme: ARC – American and Regional Culture

The Confederacy built its wartime nationalism around a distinct regional culture centered on slaveholding as a positive social good, states' rights, and an idealized planter-led social order – a cultural identity strong enough to sustain a costly war effort for four years, even as the Confederacy's material disadvantages made ultimate defeat increasingly likely.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Liên bang miền Bắc có lợi thế áp đảo về dân số, công nghiệp, đường sắt và hải quân (thực hiện Kế hoạch Anaconda phong tỏa cảng miền Nam và kiểm soát sông Mississippi). Ngược lại, Liên

minh miền Nam chiến đấu phòng thủ trên địa hình quen thuộc, có chỉ huy quân sự xuất sắc ban đầu (Lee, Jackson), và chỉ cần kéo dài đủ lâu để miền Bắc mất ý chí chiến đấu, đồng thời hy vọng (không thành) sự can thiệp của châu Âu vì phụ thuộc vào bông vải miền Nam.

### 5.7.3 Turning Points: Antietam, Gettysburg, and Vicksburg

The Battle of **Antietam** (September 17, 1862) remains the bloodiest single day in American military history, with roughly 23,000 combined casualties; though tactically a draw, it was a crucial strategic Union victory because it halted Lee's invasion of Maryland, discouraged British and French recognition of the Confederacy, and gave Lincoln the political opening he needed to issue the preliminary Emancipation Proclamation. The summer of 1863 brought the war's decisive turning point: at **Gettysburg** (July 1–3, 1863), Union forces repelled Lee's second invasion of the North, culminating in the disastrous failure of Pickett's Charge, while at **Vicksburg** (surrendered July 4, 1863), Ulysses S. Grant's prolonged siege gave the Union full control of the Mississippi River, splitting the Confederacy in two and cutting it off from Texas and Arkansas supplies.

#### SAQ model outline: turning points of the Civil War

**Prompt:** Using your knowledge of the Civil War, respond to parts (a), (b), and (c).

**(a) Explain ONE way the Battle of Antietam (1862) was significant beyond its immediate battlefield outcome.** Model: Although tactically indecisive, Antietam halted Lee's invasion of Maryland and gave Lincoln the political opening to issue the preliminary Emancipation Proclamation, transforming the war's purpose to include the abolition of slavery.

**(b) Explain ONE reason historians identify July 1863 as the war's turning point.** Model: The near-simultaneous Union victories at Gettysburg (which repelled Lee's second invasion of the North) and Vicksburg (which gave the Union full control of the Mississippi River, splitting the Confederacy) permanently shifted momentum toward the Union for the remainder of the war.

**(c) Explain ONE way Union military strategy changed in the war's final two years.** Model: Beginning in 1864, Union commanders such as Sherman adopted a strategy of "total war," deliberately targeting Southern infrastructure, railroads, and civilian resources (as in the March to the Sea) to destroy the Confederacy's capacity and will to keep fighting, not just its armies in the field.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Trận Antietam (17/9/1862) là ngày đẫm máu nhất trong lịch sử quân sự Mỹ; dù bất phân thắng bại về mặt chiến thuật, đây là chiến thắng chiến lược quan trọng của Liên bang vì ngăn chặn Lee xâm lược Maryland và tạo cơ hội chính trị cho Lincoln ban hành Tuyên ngôn Giải phóng Nô lệ. Mùa hè 1863 mang lại bước ngoặt quyết định: Gettysburg (1–3/7) đẩy lùi cuộc xâm lược thứ hai của Lee, còn Vicksburg (4/7) giúp Liên bang kiểm soát hoàn toàn sông Mississippi, chia cắt Liên minh miền Nam làm đôi.

### 5.7.4 Sherman's March and Appomattox

General William Tecumseh Sherman's capture of Atlanta (September 1864) boosted Northern morale and helped secure Lincoln's reelection that November; Sherman then led his "**March to the Sea**" from Atlanta to Savannah (November–December 1864), deliberately practicing "total war" by destroying railroads, factories, and food supplies across Georgia to break the Confederacy's capacity and will to continue fighting. With Union forces closing in from multiple directions, General Robert E. Lee surrendered the Army of Northern Virginia to Ulysses S. Grant at **Appomattox Court House** on April 9, 1865, effectively ending the war, though scattered Confederate forces surrendered over the following weeks. Just five days after Appomattox, on April 14, 1865, Lincoln was assassinated by John

Wilkes Booth, an act that removed the president most committed to a moderate, reconciliatory approach to Reconstruction just as that process was beginning.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Sau khi chiếm Atlanta (9/1864), tướng Sherman thực hiện “Cuộc hành quân ra biển” (March to the Sea), phá hủy đường sắt, nhà máy và nguồn lương thực khắp Georgia để bẻ gãy ý chí chiến đấu của miền Nam. Tướng Robert E. Lee đầu hàng tại Appomattox Court House ngày 9/4/1865, kết thúc chiến tranh trên thực tế. Chỉ năm ngày sau, Lincoln bị ám sát (14/4/1865), làm mất đi vị tổng thống có lập trường ôn hòa nhất đối với quá trình Tái thiết sắp diễn ra.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

A chart (described in text) comparing Union and Confederate casualties, industrial output, and rail mileage in 1861 would most strongly support which explanation for the Confederacy's ultimate defeat?

- |                                                                                                                          |                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) The Confederacy lacked capable military leadership throughout the war                                                | early tactical successes                                                                |
| (B) The Union's material advantages in population, industry, and infrastructure eventually overwhelmed the Confederacy's | (C) European powers provided decisive military aid to the Union                         |
|                                                                                                                          | (D) The Confederacy voluntarily surrendered without any significant battlefield defeats |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Despite skilled early Confederate generalship, the Union's overwhelming and growing advantages in population, factories, railroads, and naval power allowed it to sustain a long war of attrition and eventually apply total-war strategies (like Sherman's March) that the Confederacy simply could not match or outlast. The Confederacy in fact had strong military leadership, especially early in the war (A is wrong); European powers never provided decisive aid to either side (C is wrong); the Confederacy suffered major battlefield defeats (Gettysburg, Vicksburg, and ultimately Appomattox) rather than surrendering without them (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

The strategic significance of the Union victory at Vicksburg (July 1863) lay primarily in:

- |                                                                                              |                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Ending the war immediately                                                               | (C) Freeing all enslaved people in Confederate territory  |
| (B) Giving the Union full control of the Mississippi River, splitting the Confederacy in two | (D) Forcing Britain to formally recognize the Confederacy |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Grant's successful siege of Vicksburg gave Union forces uncontested control of the entire Mississippi River, physically cutting the Confederacy off from Texas, Arkansas, and much of Louisiana and severely disrupting Confederate supply and communication lines – a strategic blow nearly as important as Gettysburg, which occurred at almost the same moment. The war continued for nearly two more years after Vicksburg (A is wrong); the Emancipation Proclamation, not this battle, addressed emancipation (C is wrong); Britain never formally recognized the Confederacy at any point in the war (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 5:

- (a) Briefly explain ONE material advantage the Union held over the Confederacy at the start of the Civil War.
- (b) Briefly describe ONE way the Battle of Antietam (1862) affected the political direction of the war.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way Union military strategy in 1864–1865 differed from earlier phases of the war.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The Union possessed a much larger population, the great majority of the nation's factories and railroad mileage, and a navy capable of blockading Southern ports and controlling major rivers, advantages that grew more decisive the longer the war continued.
- (b) Although tactically indecisive, Antietam stopped Lee's invasion of Maryland and gave Lincoln the political standing he needed to issue the preliminary Emancipation Proclamation just days later, transforming the war's purpose to include ending slavery.
- (c) Beginning with Sherman's 1864 campaigns, Union strategy shifted toward "total war," deliberately destroying Southern railroads, factories, and food supplies (as in the March to the Sea) to break the Confederacy's economic capacity and civilian morale, not merely to defeat its armies in battle.

## 5.8 Civil War Government Policy

### 5.8.1 The Emancipation Proclamation (1863)

Lincoln issued a preliminary Emancipation Proclamation on September 22, 1862, days after Antietam, warning that he would free enslaved people in any state still in rebellion as of January 1, 1863; when that date arrived and no Confederate state had returned to the Union, Lincoln issued the final **Emancipation Proclamation**, formally declaring enslaved people in Confederate-held territory free. Legally grounded in the president's war powers as commander-in-chief, the Proclamation targeted the Confederacy's labor resources as a military measure, transformed the Union's war aims to explicitly include abolition, discouraged British and French intervention on behalf of a Confederacy now clearly fighting to preserve slavery, and opened the door for Black men to enlist in the Union armed forces.

**HIPP document analysis: the Emancipation Proclamation, January 1, 1863**

*Paraphrase:* "All persons held as slaves within any State, or designated part of a State, the people whereof shall then be in rebellion against the United States, shall be then, thenceforward, and forever free... And I further declare and make known, that such persons of suitable condition will be received into the armed service of the United States."

**Historical situation:** issued as a wartime executive order roughly two years into the Civil War, following the Union's strategically significant victory at Antietam in September 1862. **Intended audience:** enslaved people in Confederate territory, Union soldiers and officers who would now enforce it, and European governments watching the war's moral and political stakes.

**Purpose:** to weaken the Confederate war effort by undermining its labor system, to reframe the war explicitly as a struggle against slavery, and to open Black enlistment in Union forces.

**Point of view:** a wartime commander-in-chief exercising military authority rather than a lawmaker passing permanent legislation – explaining precisely why the Proclamation's language carefully limits itself to areas "in rebellion," a legal boundary students must not overlook.

(!) **Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not describe the Emancipation Proclamation as freeing “all enslaved people in the United States.” By its own explicit terms, it applied only to enslaved people in Confederate territory still in rebellion as of January 1, 1863 – it did **not** free enslaved people in the loyal border states (Missouri, Kentucky, Maryland, Delaware) or in Confederate areas already under Union military control (such as parts of Tennessee and Louisiana), because Lincoln’s legal authority rested on war powers targeting the enemy, not on a general abolition statute. Full, nationwide abolition required the **Thirteenth Amendment (1865)**.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Lincoln ban hành Tuyên ngôn Giải phóng Nô lệ sơ bộ ngày 22/9/1862 sau Antietam, cảnh báo sẽ giải phóng nô lệ tại các bang còn nổi loạn tính đến 1/1/1863. Tuyên ngôn chính thức chỉ áp dụng cho vùng lãnh thổ Liên minh miền Nam đang chiến đấu chống Liên bang – dựa trên quyền chiến tranh của tổng thống, không áp dụng cho các bang biên giới trung thành hay vùng đã bị Liên bang chiếm đóng. Đây là bước ngoặt biến mục tiêu chiến tranh thành cuộc đấu tranh chống chế độ nô lệ, đồng thời mở đường cho binh lính da đen gia nhập quân đội Liên bang.

### 5.8.2 Black Soldiers and the United States Colored Troops

Following the Emancipation Proclamation, roughly 180,000 Black men – both freeborn Northerners and formerly enslaved men who had escaped or been liberated – served in the Union Army’s **United States Colored Troops (USCT)**, about 10% of all Union soldiers by war’s end, alongside thousands more in the Navy. The 54th Massachusetts Infantry, an all-Black regiment led by Colonel Robert Gould Shaw, won widespread admiration for its courageous (though ultimately unsuccessful) assault on Fort Wagner in July 1863, helping shift Northern public opinion in favor of Black military service. Black soldiers initially received lower pay than white soldiers (\$10 per month versus \$13) until Congress equalized pay in 1864, and they faced special dangers if captured, since Confederate policy at times treated captured Black soldiers as escaped slaves subject to re-enslavement or summary execution, as at the Fort Pillow Massacre (1864).

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Sau Tuyên ngôn Giải phóng, khoảng 180.000 người đàn ông da đen phục vụ trong Quân đoàn Da màu Hoa Kỳ (USCT), chiếm khoảng 10% quân đội Liên bang. Trung đoàn 54 Massachusetts (chỉ huy bởi Đại tá Robert Gould Shaw) nổi tiếng với cuộc tấn công Fort Wagner (7/1863). Binh lính da đen ban đầu bị trả lương thấp hơn lính da trắng cho đến khi Quốc hội cân bằng lương năm 1864, và đối mặt nguy cơ bị tái nô lệ hóa hoặc hành quyết nếu bị bắt.

### 5.8.3 The Homestead Act, the Morrill Act, and Financing the War

With Southern congressmen no longer present to block them, Republican-controlled wartime Congresses passed major economic legislation: the **Homestead Act (1862)** granted 160 acres of public land to settlers who lived on and improved it for five years, accelerating westward settlement; the **Morrill Land-Grant Act (1862)** granted federal land to states to fund public colleges specializing in agriculture and mechanical arts, the origin of many state universities. To finance the war, the Union relied on the Legal Tender Act (1862), which issued paper currency known as “**greenbacks**” not directly backed by gold, the National Banking Act (1863), which created a national banking system and more uniform currency, war bonds, and the nation’s first federal income tax. The Confederacy, by contrast, relied heavily on printing unbacked paper currency with far less financial infrastructure, producing runaway inflation that devastated its economy well before its armies were finally defeated.

**Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology**

Freed from Southern congressional opposition, the wartime Republican Congress permanently expanded the federal government's economic role – funding land-grant colleges, subsidizing westward settlement, creating a national banking and currency system, and financing the war through new instruments like the income tax and greenbacks – laying institutional groundwork for the federal government's much larger economic role in the decades after the war.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Không còn nghị sĩ miền Nam cản trở, Quốc hội thời chiến thông qua Đạo luật Homestead (1862, cấp 160 mẫu đất công cho người định cư) và Đạo luật Morrill (1862, cấp đất liên bang cho các bang xây dựng trường đại học nông nghiệp-kỹ thuật). Để tài trợ chiến tranh, Liên bang phát hành tiền giấy “greenbacks” không được bảo chứng hoàn toàn bằng vàng, thành lập hệ thống ngân hàng quốc gia (1863), phát hành trái phiếu chiến tranh và thuế thu nhập liên bang đầu tiên. Ngược lại, Liên minh miền Nam chủ yếu in tiền không có bảo chứng, gây ra lạm phát phi mã.

**5.8.4 The Thirteenth Amendment (1865)**

Because the Emancipation Proclamation was a wartime executive measure of uncertain permanent legal standing that had explicitly excluded the border states and Union-controlled Confederate areas, only a constitutional amendment could guarantee slavery's permanent, nationwide abolition. Congress passed the **Thirteenth Amendment** on January 31, 1865, and the states ratified it by December 6, 1865, abolishing slavery and involuntary servitude throughout the United States (except as punishment for a crime) – closing the legal gap the Emancipation Proclamation had left open and completing, in law, the process of emancipation that the war had begun.

**Emancipation Proclamation (1863) vs. Thirteenth Amendment (1865):** the Proclamation was a wartime executive order under the president's war powers, applying only to enslaved people in Confederate territory still in rebellion. The Thirteenth Amendment was a permanent constitutional amendment abolishing slavery and involuntary servitude everywhere in the United States, including the border states the Proclamation had never covered.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Which of the following best explains why the border states of Missouri, Kentucky, Maryland, and Delaware were exempt from the Emancipation Proclamation of 1863?

- |                                                                                                                                 |                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Slavery had already been abolished in those states before 1863                                                              | states had remained loyal to the Union                         |
| (B) The Proclamation's legal authority rested on the president's war powers against states in rebellion, and these slaveholding | (C) Congress specifically voted to exempt these four states    |
|                                                                                                                                 | (D) The Confederacy controlled these states militarily in 1863 |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Because Lincoln issued the Proclamation as a wartime military measure targeting the resources of states in active rebellion against the United States, it had no legal basis to apply to slaveholding states that had remained loyal to the Union – those states' continued practice of slavery was untouched until the Thirteenth Amendment in December 1865. Slavery remained legal in these states through 1865, not already abolished (A is wrong); this exemption followed auto-

matically from the Proclamation's legal basis rather than from a specific congressional vote (C is wrong); the Confederacy did not control these Union-loyal border states (D is wrong). **(B)**.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The primary purpose of the Homestead Act (1862) and the Morrill Land-Grant Act (1862), passed in the same year by a Republican-controlled Congress, was to:

- (A) Compensate Confederate soldiers for lost property
- (B) Promote westward settlement and public higher education using federal land, made possible once Southern congressional opposition was removed
- (C) Establish new slave territories in the West
- (D) Fund the Union Navy's blockade of Southern ports

### Lời giải chi tiết

With Southern representatives who had long blocked such measures no longer in Congress, Republicans quickly passed the Homestead Act (granting free land to settlers) and the Morrill Act (funding land-grant colleges for agricultural and mechanical education), both using the same underlying tool of federal public land to promote settlement and education. Neither law compensated Confederates (A is wrong) or funded the Navy (D is wrong); both laws in fact promoted free-labor settlement, not new slave territories (C is wrong). **(B)**.

### Bài tập luyện tập

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 5:

- (a) Briefly explain the legal basis and territorial limits of the Emancipation Proclamation (1863).
- (b) Briefly describe ONE way Black Americans contributed to the Union war effort after 1863.
- (c) Briefly explain why the Thirteenth Amendment (1865) was necessary even after the Emancipation Proclamation had already been issued.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Lincoln issued the Proclamation under his war powers as commander-in-chief, and it applied only to enslaved people in Confederate territory still in rebellion as of January 1, 1863, explicitly excluding the loyal border states and Union-occupied areas of the Confederacy.
- (b) Roughly 180,000 Black men served in the Union Army's United States Colored Troops after 1863, fighting in major engagements such as the 54th Massachusetts Infantry's assault on Fort Wagner, while thousands more served in the Union Navy.
- (c) Because the Emancipation Proclamation was a wartime executive order of uncertain permanent legal standing that had never applied to the border states or already-occupied Confederate areas, only a constitutional amendment could guarantee slavery's complete and permanent abolition throughout the entire United States, which the Thirteenth Amendment accomplished in December 1865.

## 5.9 Reconstruction: Competing Plans

### 5.9.1 Presidential Reconstruction: Lincoln and Johnson

Even before the war ended, Lincoln proposed a lenient **"Ten Percent Plan" (1863)**, offering to readmit a Confederate state once just 10% of its 1860 voters swore future loyalty to the Union; Congress

countered with the stricter Wade-Davis Bill (1864), requiring a majority loyalty oath, which Lincoln pocket-vetoed, revealing executive-legislative tension over Reconstruction even before the fighting stopped. After Lincoln's assassination, his successor Andrew Johnson – a Southern Unionist Democrat and former slaveholder retained on Lincoln's 1864 ticket for political balance – continued a lenient approach: he issued sweeping pardons to former Confederates (including many wealthy planters) and allowed Southern states to rejoin the Union quickly after meeting only minimal conditions, such as ratifying the Thirteenth Amendment and formally renouncing secession.

#### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

The sharp divergence between Lincoln's and Johnson's lenient approach and the Radical Republican Congress's much stricter demands reflects a fundamental disagreement over the constitutional locus of Reconstruction authority – should the executive branch, exercising wartime and pardon powers, control the terms of reunion, or should Congress, exercising its power over the admission of states and its concern for freedpeople's rights, set the terms instead?

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Trước khi chiến tranh kết thúc, Lincoln đề xuất “Kế hoạch Mười Phần trăm” (1863), cho phép một bang miền Nam tái gia nhập nếu chỉ 10% cử tri năm 1860 tuyên thệ trung thành. Quốc hội phản đối bằng Dự luật Wade-Davis (1864, yêu cầu đa số tuyên thệ), nhưng Lincoln phủ quyết bỏ túi. Sau khi Lincoln bị ám sát, Andrew Johnson tiếp tục chính sách khoan dung: ân xá rộng rãi cho cựu Liên minh miền Nam và cho phép các bang tái gia nhập nhanh chóng với điều kiện tối thiểu.

### 5.9.2 Black Codes and the Freedmen's Bureau

Southern state legislatures elected under Johnson's lenient plan – often including former Confederate officials – passed restrictive **Black Codes (1865–1866)** that limited freedpeople's rights: laws requiring signed annual labor contracts, vagrancy statutes that allowed the arrest and forced labor of unemployed Black people, and restrictions on land ownership, firearm possession, and freedom of movement, together designed to reconstruct a subordinate Black labor force resembling slavery in practice even after its legal abolition. The federal **Freedmen's Bureau** (established March 1865) worked to counter these conditions by distributing food and medical care, negotiating fairer labor contracts, providing legal assistance, and building schools for freedpeople – an educational legacy that includes the founding of Howard University – though chronic underfunding, understaffing, and limited support from Johnson's administration constrained its long-term reach.

#### HIPP document analysis: Mississippi Black Code, 1865

*Paraphrase:* “Every freedman, free negro, and mulatto...shall...have a lawful home or employment, and shall have written evidence thereof... Any freedman...found on the second Monday in January...with no lawful employment or business...shall be deemed a vagrant, and on conviction thereof shall be fined.”

**Historical situation:** passed by Mississippi's legislature in late 1865, one of the first and harshest Black Codes, enacted under Johnson's lenient Presidential Reconstruction before Congress intervened. **Intended audience:** local courts, employers, and freedpeople themselves. **Purpose:** to compel formerly enslaved people back into a coerced, low-wage agricultural labor system through the threat of arrest and forced labor for unemployment. **Point of view:** a former slaveholding legislature using facially race-neutral vagrancy language to reproduce the economic controls of slavery – valuable evidence for why Congress, once it saw laws like this, concluded that Presidential Reconstruction had failed to protect freedpeople

and moved toward stricter Congressional Reconstruction.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Các cơ quan lập pháp miền Nam dưới chính sách khoan dung của Johnson thông qua “Bộ luật Da đen” (Black Codes, 1865–66), hạn chế quyền của người vừa được giải phóng: buộc ký hợp đồng lao động, luật “lang thang” cho phép bắt giữ và cưỡng bức lao động người thất nghiệp, hạn chế quyền sở hữu đất và vũ khí. Cục Người Tự do (Freedmen’s Bureau, thành lập 3/1865) cố gắng đối phó bằng cách cung cấp lương thực, y tế, hỗ trợ pháp lý và xây dựng trường học, nhưng thiếu kinh phí và nhân lực nghiêm trọng.

### 5.9.3 Congressional (Radical) Reconstruction

Outraged by the Black Codes and Southern intransigence, the Republican-controlled Congress refused to seat the newly elected Southern representatives and passed the Civil Rights Act of 1866 over Johnson’s veto, guaranteeing citizenship and equal legal rights regardless of race. To place these protections beyond a future Congress’s or Court’s reach, Congress passed the **Fourteenth Amendment** (passed 1866, ratified 1868), which established birthright citizenship (explicitly reversing *Dred Scott*), guaranteed equal protection and due process of law, reduced congressional representation for any state that denied male citizens the vote, and barred former Confederate officials from holding office without congressional pardon. Johnson’s continued obstruction – including his attempt to remove Secretary of War Edwin Stanton in defiance of the Tenure of Office Act – led the House to impeach him in 1868; the Senate acquitted him by a single vote, but his political authority was permanently crippled. The **Reconstruction Acts (1867)** then divided the former Confederacy (excluding already-readmitted Tennessee) into five military districts under Army supervision, requiring new state constitutions guaranteeing Black male suffrage and ratification of the Fourteenth Amendment before readmission, while the **Fifteenth Amendment** (passed 1869, ratified 1870) prohibited denying the vote on the basis of race, color, or previous condition of servitude – though it left room for later loopholes such as poll taxes and literacy tests, and it did not extend suffrage to women, a limitation that split the women’s suffrage movement over whether to support it.

| Feature                     | Presidential<br>(Lincoln / Johnson)                                               | Radical / Congressional Reconstruction                                                                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Approach to ex-Confederates | Lenient; Ten Percent Plan (Lincoln) and broad pardons (Johnson)                   | Stricter; barred many ex-Confederate officials from office without congressional pardon                            |
| Readmission requirements    | Renounce secession; ratify Thirteenth Amendment                                   | Ratify Fourteenth Amendment; new state constitutions guaranteeing Black male suffrage (Reconstruction Acts, 1867)  |
| Protection for freedpeople  | Minimal; allowed Black Codes to restrict freedpeople's rights                     | Civil Rights Act (1866), Fourteenth (1868) and Fifteenth (1870) Amendments; military enforcement in five districts |
| Key figures                 | Abraham Lincoln; Andrew Johnson                                                   | Thaddeus Stevens, Charles Sumner, and the Radical Republican Congress                                              |
| Outcome                     | Enabled Black Codes and rapid return of ex-Confederate leaders to political power | Expanded federal power and Black political participation, but provoked lasting Southern white political backlash   |

Presidential versus Radical (Congressional) Reconstruction, 1865–1870.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not confuse the three Reconstruction-era amendments. The **Thirteenth Amendment (1865)** abolished slavery. The **Fourteenth Amendment (1868)** established birthright citizenship and equal protection under the law (directly reversing *Dred Scott's* citizenship holding) and addressed representation and former Confederate officials – but it did not itself guarantee the right to vote. The **Fifteenth Amendment (1870)** specifically prohibited denying the vote on the basis of race, color, or previous condition of servitude. On the exam, match each amendment to its precise, distinct legal content rather than treating all three as one general “civil rights” package.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Quốc hội thông qua Đạo luật Dân quyền 1866 (phủ quyết Johnson bị bác bỏ), sau đó là Tu chính án 14 (1868, quyền công dân theo nơi sinh, bảo vệ bình đẳng trước pháp luật) và Tu chính án 15 (1870, cấm từ chối quyền bầu cử vì chủng tộc). Đạo luật Tái thiết 1867 chia miền Nam thành năm quân khu, yêu cầu hiến pháp bang mới đảm bảo quyền bầu cử cho đàn ông da đen. Johnson bị Hạ viện luận tội năm 1868 nhưng thoát bị phế truất tại Thượng viện chỉ với một phiếu chênh lệch.

#### 5.9.4 Black Political Participation

Enabled by the Reconstruction Acts' suffrage requirements, roughly 2,000 Black Americans held public office during Reconstruction at the local, state, and federal levels, including U.S. Senators Hiram Revels and Blanche K. Bruce of Mississippi and numerous state legislators across the former Confederacy. These interracial “Reconstruction governments” established the South's first public school systems, expanded civic infrastructure, and wrote new state constitutions with broader civil rights protections than any the region had known before – a genuine, if ultimately temporary, transformation of Southern political life.

**Theme: MIG – Migration and Settlement**

Emancipation triggered enormous internal movement as freedpeople exercised freedom of movement for the first time – searching for family members separated by the domestic slave trade, seeking wage labor and land, and moving toward cities and towns with schools, churches, and political organizations – movement that itself became a foundation for the new political participation of the Reconstruction era.

**SAQ model outline: the Reconstruction amendments**

**Prompt:** Using your knowledge of the Reconstruction era, respond to parts (a), (b), and (c).

**(a) Explain what the Thirteenth Amendment (1865) accomplished that the Emancipation Proclamation (1863) had not.** Model: Unlike the Proclamation, which applied only to Confederate territory in rebellion, the Thirteenth Amendment permanently abolished slavery and involuntary servitude throughout the entire United States, including the border states the Proclamation had explicitly excluded.

**(b) Explain ONE specific protection established by the Fourteenth Amendment (1868).** Model: The Fourteenth Amendment established birthright citizenship for all persons born in the United States, directly reversing the *Dred Scott* ruling's denial of Black citizenship, and guaranteed all citizens equal protection and due process of law.

**(c) Explain ONE limitation of the Fifteenth Amendment (1870).** Model: Although the Fifteenth Amendment barred states from denying the vote based on race, it did not prohibit ostensibly race-neutral barriers such as poll taxes and literacy tests, which Southern states later used to disenfranchise Black voters, and it did not extend suffrage to women of any race.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Nhờ Đạo luật Tái thiết, khoảng 2.000 người Mỹ gốc Phi giữ chức vụ công quyền trong thời kỳ Tái thiết, bao gồm các Thượng nghị sĩ Hiram Revels và Blanche K. Bruce của Mississippi. Các chính quyền Tái thiết đa chủng tộc này thiết lập hệ thống trường công đầu tiên ở miền Nam và mở rộng các quyền dân sự trong hiến pháp bang – một sự chuyển đổi thực sự nhưng chỉ tồn tại trong thời gian ngắn.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

The Fourteenth Amendment's birthright citizenship clause is best understood as a direct constitutional response to which earlier Supreme Court ruling?

- (A) *Marbury v. Madison* (1803) ruled that Black Americans could never be U.S. citizens  
(B) *Worcester v. Georgia* (1832)  
(C) *Dred Scott v. Sandford* (1857), which had (D) *Plessy v. Ferguson* (1896)

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The Fourteenth Amendment's declaration that all persons born or naturalized in the United States are citizens was drafted specifically to overturn Chief Justice Taney's 1857 ruling in *Dred Scott* that Black Americans, free or enslaved, could never hold U.S. citizenship. *Marbury* (A, 1803) concerned judicial review; *Worcester v. Georgia* (B, 1832) concerned Cherokee sovereignty; *Plessy v. Ferguson* (D) came in 1896, after this period, and concerned segregation rather than citizenship. (C).

**Bài tập luyện tập**

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 5:

- (a) Briefly explain ONE key difference between Presidential Reconstruction under Johnson and Congressional (Radical) Reconstruction.
- (b) Briefly describe ONE specific right or protection granted to freedpeople by the Fourteenth Amendment (1868).
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way Black Americans exercised political power during Reconstruction.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Johnson's Presidential Reconstruction required only minimal conditions (ratifying the Thirteenth Amendment, renouncing secession) and allowed rapid readmission with broad pardons for ex-Confederates, while Congressional Reconstruction imposed stricter requirements, including new state constitutions guaranteeing Black male suffrage and ratification of the Fourteenth Amendment, enforced by military districts.
- (b) The Fourteenth Amendment guaranteed birthright citizenship to all persons born in the United States, directly reversing *Dred Scott*, and guaranteed equal protection and due process of law to all citizens.
- (c) Enabled by Reconstruction-era suffrage requirements, roughly 2,000 Black Americans held public office during Reconstruction, including U.S. Senators Hiram Revels and Blanche K. Bruce, and interracial state legislatures established the South's first public school systems.

## 5.10 The Failure of Reconstruction

### 5.10.1 White Paramilitary Violence and Redeemer Governments

White supremacist organizations, most notoriously the **Ku Klux Klan** (founded in Tennessee, 1865–1866) and similar groups such as the White League and Red Shirts, used violence, intimidation, arson, and murder to suppress Black political participation and to terrorize Reconstruction governments and their supporters, Black and white alike. Federal Enforcement Acts and the Ku Klux Klan Act (1870–1871) temporarily curbed this violence through federal prosecutions and, in parts of South Carolina, martial law, but enforcement weakened as Northern political commitment to Reconstruction faded through the 1870s. Conservative white Southern Democrats, calling themselves “**Redeemers**,” gradually retook control of Southern state governments throughout the decade through a combination of organized violence, voter intimidation, and electoral fraud, ending Reconstruction-era governments state by state well before Reconstruction officially ended nationwide.

**Theme: ARC – American and Regional Culture**

Redeemer governments justified their return to power through a regional cultural narrative – later called the “Lost Cause” – that romanticized the Confederacy, minimized slavery's centrality to secession, and portrayed Reconstruction governments as corrupt and illegitimate impositions on the white South, a narrative that helped legitimize the violent restoration of white political control across the region for generations.

**HIPP document analysis: Thomas Nast, “Worse Than Slavery,” Harper's Weekly, 1874**

*Description:* the cartoon depicts a Klansman and a White League member clasping hands over a shield bearing a skull, standing above a terrified Black family huddled together, with a burning schoolhouse and a lynched man visible in the background.

**Historical situation:** published in a leading Northern illustrated magazine as Redeemer violence

intensified across the South and Northern public support for Reconstruction was visibly weakening. Intended audience: Northern readers whose continued political support was needed to sustain federal enforcement of Reconstruction. Purpose: to warn that white paramilitary violence was reversing the gains of emancipation and Reconstruction, effectively restoring conditions the cartoonist judged worse than slavery itself. Point of view: a Northern Republican-sympathizing artist alarmed by waning federal commitment – valuable evidence that some Northern observers recognized Reconstruction’s unraveling even as it was happening, though this recognition ultimately proved insufficient to reverse the political trend.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Các tổ chức khủng bố người da trắng, đặc biệt là Ku Klux Klan (thành lập tại Tennessee, 1865–66), dùng bạo lực, đe dọa và giết người để đàn áp sự tham gia chính trị của người da đen. Các Đạo luật Cưỡng chế liên bang (1870–71) tạm thời kiềm chế bạo lực nhưng việc thực thi suy yếu dần khi miền Bắc mất dần cam kết với Tái thiết. Các chính quyền “Redeemer” (Dân chủ bảo thủ da trắng) dần giành lại quyền kiểm soát các bang miền Nam qua bạo lực và gian lận bầu cử suốt thập niên 1870.

#### 5.10.2 Northern Fatigue and the Compromise of 1877

The Panic of 1873, a severe economic depression, redirected Northern political attention toward economic issues and away from Reconstruction, while Supreme Court decisions such as the *Slaughterhouse Cases* (1873) and *United States v. Cruikshank* (1876) narrowed the Fourteenth Amendment’s practical protections and weakened the federal government’s legal tools for prosecuting racial violence. Reconstruction’s fate was sealed by the disputed **Election of 1876** between Republican Rutherford B. Hayes and Democrat Samuel Tilden: Tilden won the popular vote and appeared to lead in the Electoral College, but twenty electoral votes from South Carolina, Florida, Louisiana, and Oregon were disputed and contested by rival vote-counting boards. A special Electoral Commission and an informal political bargain – the **Compromise of 1877** – awarded Hayes the presidency in exchange for the withdrawal of remaining federal troops from Southern statehouses, ending federal military enforcement of Reconstruction-era civil rights protections and allowing the last Redeemer governments to consolidate power.

##### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

The Compromise of 1877 illustrates how Reconstruction’s collapse was ultimately a political decision, not an inevitable historical outcome: national Republican leaders chose to trade federal protection of Black Southerners’ civil and political rights for the presidency itself, a bargain that reveals how conditional and fragile the federal government’s commitment to racial equality had become barely a decade after the Fifteenth Amendment.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Cuộc Khủng hoảng kinh tế 1873 khiến miền Bắc tập trung vào vấn đề kinh tế thay vì Tái thiết, trong khi các phán quyết của Tối cao Pháp viện thu hẹp sự bảo vệ của Tu chính án 14. Cuộc bầu cử tổng thống 1876 gây tranh cãi (Hayes và Tilden) được giải quyết bằng Thỏa hiệp 1877: Hayes được trao chức tổng thống đổi lấy việc rút toàn bộ quân đội liên bang khỏi miền Nam, chấm dứt việc thực thi liên bang đối với các quyền dân sự thời Tái thiết.

#### 5.10.3 Sharecropping and the Legacy of Reconstruction

Land redistribution to freedpeople was never seriously implemented on a wide scale – Johnson had already reversed General Sherman’s wartime Special Field Order No. 15, which had briefly granted

some coastal land to freed families, and most former Confederate land remained in the hands of its prewar owners. As a result, most freedpeople, along with many poor white farmers, became **sharecroppers**, working land owned by others in exchange for a share of the harvested crop; the accompanying **crop-lien system**, under which farmers borrowed against future harvests for seed, tools, and supplies at high interest from local merchants, frequently trapped sharecropping families in cycles of debt that functioned as a new, economically coercive form of bondage. Reconstruction's collapse left the door open for the system of legal segregation and disenfranchisement – known as Jim Crow – that would come to dominate the South for decades beyond the close of this period.

**The arc of Reconstruction's failure:** Black Codes (1865) → Congressional Reconstruction and Black political participation (1867–1870s) → KKK violence and Redeemer governments (1870s) → Compromise of 1877 (withdrawal of federal troops) → sharecropping and, in the following decades, Jim Crow segregation. Reconstruction expanded freedom and citizenship in law before white Southern violence and Northern political fatigue rolled much of that promise back in practice.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Việc phân chia đất đai cho người vừa được giải phóng chưa bao giờ được thực hiện trên diện rộng, khiến phần lớn họ (và nhiều nông dân da trắng nghèo) trở thành tá điền (sharecroppers), canh tác đất của người khác để đổi lấy một phần thu hoạch. Hệ thống “cầm cố mùa vụ” (crop-lien system) thường khiến họ mắc nợ triền miên, tạo ra một hình thức lệ thuộc kinh tế mới. Sự sụp đổ của Tái thiết mở đường cho hệ thống phân biệt chủng tộc hợp pháp (Jim Crow) thống trị miền Nam trong nhiều thập kỷ sau đó.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The outcome of the disputed Election of 1876, resolved by the informal “Compromise of 1877,” is best summarized as:

- |                                                                                                                         |                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Samuel Tilden was awarded the presidency in exchange for expanding federal civil rights enforcement in the South    | effectively ending Reconstruction                                                     |
| (B) Rutherford B. Hayes was awarded the presidency in exchange for withdrawing remaining federal troops from the South, | (C) The election was annulled and a new nationwide election was held in 1877          |
|                                                                                                                         | (D) Congress permanently barred former Confederate states from presidential elections |

### Lời giải chi tiết

Facing a deadlocked, disputed count of twenty electoral votes from four states, congressional negotiators brokered an informal bargain in which Republican Rutherford B. Hayes received the disputed votes and the presidency, while Democrats secured the withdrawal of the last federal troops from Southern state capitals – removing the military enforcement that had propped up Reconstruction governments and enabling Redeemer Democrats to consolidate control. Tilden, the Democrat, did not receive the presidency despite winning the popular vote (A is wrong); no new election was held (C is wrong); no state was permanently barred from future elections (D is wrong). **(B).**

### Bài tập luyện tập

**Short-answer question (SAQ style).** Using your knowledge of Period 5:

- (a) Briefly explain ONE method white Southerners used to undermine Black political parti-

pation during the 1870s.

(b) Briefly describe the terms of the Compromise of 1877 and its immediate effect on Reconstruction.

(c) Briefly explain ONE way the sharecropping system that emerged after the Civil War limited the economic freedom of formerly enslaved people.

#### Lời giải chi tiết

(a) White paramilitary organizations such as the Ku Klux Klan used violence, intimidation, and murder to prevent Black citizens from voting or holding office, while Redeemer Democratic governments used fraud and organized intimidation to retake control of state governments throughout the 1870s.

(b) In the Compromise of 1877, Republican Rutherford B. Hayes was awarded the contested presidency in exchange for withdrawing the last remaining federal troops from Southern state-houses, which removed the military enforcement that had sustained Reconstruction governments and allowed Redeemer Democrats to consolidate power across the South.

(c) Under sharecropping and the accompanying crop-lien system, freedpeople who owned no land had to borrow against future harvests at high interest from landowners or merchants, frequently falling into cycles of debt that bound them economically to the same land and landowners in ways that closely resembled the coerced dependency of slavery.

## Period 6 --- The Gilded Age (1865--1898)

**Mục tiêu Unit:** Giải thích bối cảnh kinh tế–chính trị nước Mỹ sau Nội chiến qua khái niệm “Gilded Age”; phân tích quá trình mở rộng miền Tây (đường sắt xuyên lục địa hoàn thành năm 1869, khai mỏ, chăn nuôi gia súc, canh tác trên đồng cỏ) và xung đột với người bản địa (Trận Little Bighorn 1876, thảm sát Wounded Knee 1890, Đạo luật Dawes 1887, Luận điểm Biên giới của Turner 1893); đánh giá tầm nhìn “New South” của Henry Grady so với thực tế chế độ tá điền và luật Jim Crow (*Plessy v. Ferguson* 1896); trình bày quá trình công nghiệp hóa (Carnegie – tích hợp dọc; Rockefeller – tích hợp ngang; Thuyết Darwin Xã hội; Phúc âm của Cải; Đạo luật Chống Độc quyền Sherman 1890); phân tích chính trị thời Mạ Vàng (bộ máy chính trị, chế độ chia phần, Đạo luật Công vụ Pendleton 1883); giải thích làn sóng “di dân mới” và phản ứng bài ngoại (Đạo luật Cấm người Hoa 1882); mô tả sự hình thành tầng lớp trung lưu, quá trình đô thị hóa và phong trào cải cách (Hull House); và trình bày phong trào Populist (Cương lĩnh Omaha 1892) cùng cuộc bầu cử 1896.

### 6.1 Contextualizing Period 6

After the Compromise of 1877 withdrew federal troops from the South and ended Reconstruction, the United States entered an era of explosive industrial growth, rapid urbanization, and continental settlement – alongside deepening inequality, labor conflict, and political corruption. Novelist Mark Twain and co-author Charles Dudley Warner coined the term “**Gilded Age**” in their 1873 satirical novel of the same name: a surface of gold leaf (glittering industrial fortunes, grand mansions, world’s fairs) covering something far less noble beneath (corrupt political machines, dangerous factories, overcrowded tenements, and violently suppressed strikes). Between 1865 and 1898, the trans-Mississippi West was settled and its Native peoples subdued; a national industrial economy emerged around steel, oil, and railroads; millions of new immigrants arrived and reshaped American cities; and farmers and workers organized – with limited success – to challenge the power of capital. By 1898, on the eve of the Spanish-American War, the political and economic structures of modern America were largely in place.

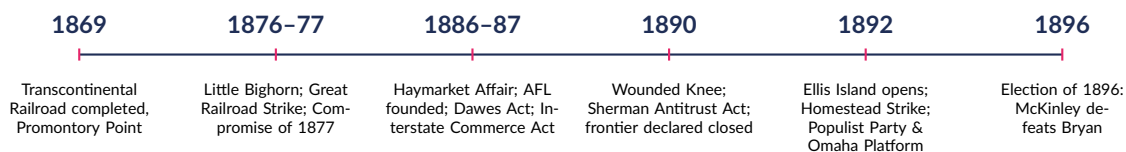
#### Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology

Period 6 is fundamentally the story of industrial capitalism reorganizing American life at unprecedented speed: a national rail network integrated regional markets, corporations replaced small firms as the dominant business form, and a mostly immigrant industrial workforce produced steel, oil, and manufactured goods on a scale no other nation matched by 1900 – while wealth concentrated dramatically at the top.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

**VN** “Gilded Age” (Thời kỳ Mạ Vàng) là tên một tiểu thuyết châm biếm năm 1873 của Mark Twain, ám chỉ nước Mỹ thời kỳ này: bề ngoài lấp lánh như vàng (những khối tài sản khổng lồ, hội chợ thế giới, biệt thự xa hoa) nhưng bên trong là bất bình đẳng, tham nhũng chính trị và điều kiện lao động tồi tệ. Giai đoạn 1865–1898 chứng kiến ba quá trình song song: (1) chinh phục và định cư miền Tây, khuất phục người bản địa; (2) công nghiệp hóa với thép, dầu mỏ, đường sắt; (3) làn sóng di dân khổng lồ và đô thị hóa nhanh chóng – tất cả diễn ra trong khi chính quyền

liên bang gần như đứng ngoài, theo tư tưởng *laissez-faire*.



Period 6 at a glance: industrial, political, and social turning points, 1869–1896.

**Causation chain of Period 6:** end of Reconstruction (1877) and federal retreat from the South → completion of a national rail network → industrial consolidation (steel, oil) under *laissez-faire* government → mass immigration and rapid urbanization → labor conflict (strikes, unions) and farmer discontent (Populism) as the human cost of “progress” becomes impossible to ignore → a political realignment in the Election of 1896 that preserves the industrial order even as it absorbs some of Populism’s demands.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The term “Gilded Age,” as used by historians to describe the United States between 1865 and 1898, most directly refers to:

- (A) A period in which the federal government aggressively regulated big business on behalf of workers and consumers
- (B) A period of surface prosperity and glittering industrial wealth that concealed deep inequality, political corruption, and labor unrest
- (C) A period in which the frontier had already closed and westward migration had ceased entirely
- (D) A period defined primarily by peaceful, harmonious relations between capital and labor

### Lời giải chi tiết

Mark Twain and Charles Dudley Warner’s 1873 novel gave the era its name precisely because gilding – a thin layer of gold over a base material – captured how dazzling fortunes and grand public displays (mansions, world’s fairs, department stores) masked less flattering realities: weak federal regulation (the opposite of A), continuing westward settlement and conflict through 1890 (C is wrong – the frontier was not declared closed until the 1890 census), and frequent, often violent labor conflict such as the Great Railroad Strike, Haymarket, Homestead, and Pullman (D is wrong). **(B)**.

## 6.2 Westward Expansion

### 6.2.1 Railroads, mining, and the cattle kingdom

The **First Transcontinental Railroad**, built with massive federal land grants and loans to the Union Pacific (building west from Nebraska, relying heavily on Irish immigrant labor) and Central Pacific (building east from California, relying heavily on Chinese immigrant labor), was completed when the two lines met at **Promontory Point, Utah, in May 1869**. The railroad integrated the West into national markets, carrying settlers, cattle, and ore eastward and manufactured goods westward. Mineral strikes – the Comstock Lode silver discovery in Nevada (1859) and the Black Hills gold rush in the Dakota Territory (1874, after an expedition led by George Custer confirmed gold on land guaranteed to the Lakota by treaty) – drew boomtowns of miners, merchants, and speculators, many of

which emptied out once the ore ran dry. On the open range, Texas longhorns were driven north along trails such as the Chisholm Trail to railheads like Abilene and Dodge City, Kansas, creating the iconic (and ethnically diverse – many cowboys were Black or Mexican *vaqueros*) era of the long cattle drive; the invention of barbed wire (Joseph Glidden, 1874), the railroad's spread directly into cattle country, and a catastrophic winter in 1886–87 that killed huge portions of unsheltered herds together ended the open-range cattle industry by the late 1880s.

### 6.2.2 Farming the Plains

The Homestead Act (1862) continued to draw settlers onto the Great Plains after the war, culminating in dramatic events like the Oklahoma land rush of 1889. New technology made Plains farming possible at scale: the steel plow (to cut through thick prairie sod), mechanical reapers and threshers, windmills to pump groundwater, and “dry farming” techniques adapted to the region’s low rainfall. Even so, “sodbusters” faced brutal isolation, drought, insect plagues, and volatile crop prices, and many fell into debt to banks, railroads, and grain elevator operators – grievances that fed directly into the farmer protest movements discussed in Section 6.10.

### 6.2.3 Conflict with Plains peoples and the closing of the frontier

Westward settlement repeatedly violated treaties with Plains nations and destroyed the buffalo herds central to Plains cultures and economies. When the Black Hills gold rush brought miners onto land guaranteed to the Lakota by the Fort Laramie Treaty (1868), war followed: at the **Battle of the Little Bighorn (June 1876)**, Lakota, Northern Cheyenne, and Arapaho warriors led by Sitting Bull and Crazy Horse annihilated Lieutenant Colonel George Custer’s detachment of the Seventh Cavalry. The U.S. Army responded with an intensified campaign that forced most remaining Plains peoples onto reservations within a few years. In December 1890, at **Wounded Knee, South Dakota**, the Seventh Cavalry killed as many as 250–300 Lakota men, women, and children who had gathered around the Ghost Dance movement (a spiritual revival promising the return of the buffalo and the removal of white settlers); Wounded Knee is generally regarded as the last major episode of armed conflict between the U.S. military and Plains peoples. Federal Indian policy simultaneously shifted toward forced assimilation: the **Dawes Act (1887)** dissolved most communal tribal landholding, allotting individual family plots (typically 160 acres) to Native households and declaring the remaining “surplus” land open to white settlement – by 1934, this policy had reduced Native landholding from roughly 138 million to about 48 million acres. The 1890 census superintendent reported that a continuous frontier line could no longer be identified on population maps, and historian **Frederick Jackson Turner**, in his **“Frontier Thesis” (1893)**, argued that the existence of “free land” on a westward-moving frontier had shaped American democracy, individualism, and national character – and that its closing marked the end of a defining chapter in American history.

#### Theme: GEO – Geography and the Environment

The Plains environment itself – semi-arid grassland unsuited to traditional Eastern farming methods, home to vast buffalo herds central to Native subsistence – shaped every aspect of westward settlement, from the technologies (barbed wire, windmills, dry farming) that made non-Native settlement possible to the ecological destruction (the near-extinction of the buffalo) that helped force Plains peoples onto reservations.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Đường sắt xuyên lục địa hoàn thành năm 1869 tại Promontory Point (Utah), nối liền cả nước và mở đường cho khai mỏ, chăn nuôi gia súc, canh tác trên đồng cỏ miền Tây. Quá trình định cư này liên tục vi phạm các hiệp ước với người bản địa: Trận Little Bighorn (1876) là chiến thắng hiếm hoi của liên minh Lakota–Cheyenne trước quân đội Mỹ, nhưng đến thảm sát Wounded Knee (1890) thì sự kháng cự vũ trang của người bản địa gần như chấm dứt. Đạo luật Dawes (1887) chia đất bộ lạc thành các lô đất cá nhân nhằm cưỡng ép đồng hóa, khiến người bản địa

mất phần lớn đất đai. Luận điểm Biên giới của Turner (1893) cho rằng chính “biên giới” đang khép lại đã định hình tinh thần dân chủ và cá nhân chủ nghĩa của nước Mỹ.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not confuse the **Battle of the Little Bighorn (1876)** with the **Wounded Knee Massacre (1890)**. Little Bighorn was a military battle in which Native forces defeated U.S. Army troops (a rare and famous Native victory, provoked by treaty violations during the Black Hills gold rush). Wounded Knee, fourteen years later, was not a battle between comparable forces but a one-sided massacre of a largely disarmed group associated with the Ghost Dance movement, and it is conventionally treated as the symbolic end of armed Native resistance on the Plains – the two events sit at opposite ends of the same conflict, not as interchangeable examples of it.

#### HIPP Document Analysis: A Reformer's Case for the Dawes Act, 1887

*Excerpt (paraphrased):* A congressional reformer supporting the General Allotment Act argues that dividing tribal land into individual family farms will “elevate” Native peoples by teaching them private property, English-language schooling, and Christian farming life, ending their dependence on communal landholding and government rations.

**Historical situation:** written as Native military resistance was collapsing after decades of war and confinement to reservations, and as “Friends of the Indian” reform groups (mostly white, well-meaning by their own lights) gained influence in Washington. **Intended audience:** fellow members of Congress and the reform-minded public who saw assimilation, not extermination, as the humane policy. **Purpose:** to justify replacing communal tribal landholding with individual allotments as an act of uplift rather than dispossession. **Point of view:** a well-intentioned outsider whose paternalistic assumptions ignored Native objections and Indigenous land-use traditions – explaining why the law’s actual effect, opening “surplus” land to white settlers and reducing Native landholding by roughly two-thirds over the following decades, contradicted its stated humanitarian purpose.

#### LEQ Thesis Model: Government Policy and the Transformation of the West

**Prompt:** Evaluate the extent to which federal government policy, more than private economic forces, drove the transformation of the trans-Mississippi West between 1865 and 1893.

**Model thesis:** Although private economic actors – railroad investors, cattle drovers, miners, and homesteading farmers – supplied much of the West’s population and capital, federal government policy was the decisive force that made this settlement possible and shaped its consequences, through land grants that financed the transcontinental railroad, the Homestead Act’s distribution of public land, military campaigns that broke Native resistance, and the Dawes Act’s restructuring of Native landholding.

**Outline:**

- Para. 1 (railroads and land): federal land grants and loans built the Union Pacific–Central Pacific line (1869), without which large-scale cattle drives, mining exports, and Plains farming would have been commercially impossible.
- Para. 2 (military and Indian policy): the U.S. Army’s campaigns following Little Bighorn (1876) and Wounded Knee (1890), followed by the Dawes Act (1887), were direct government actions that cleared and reorganized land for non-Native settlement.
- Para. 3 (complexity): acknowledge the role of private initiative (homesteaders, cattle

drovers, mining speculators) and market forces (falling farm prices, technology), but argue these operated within a framework – land grants, treaties and their violation, allotment policy – that only the federal government had the power to create.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The completion of the transcontinental railroad at Promontory Point in 1869 most directly contributed to which broader development of Period 6?

- (A) The permanent decline of federal involvement in western economic development
- (B) The integration of western mining, cattle, and farming economies into a national market, accelerating both settlement and conflict with Plains peoples
- (C) The immediate end of conflict between the United States and Plains nations
- (D) A sharp decrease in immigration to the United States

### Lời giải chi tiết

By linking western resources and settlers directly to eastern markets and manufacturing centers, the transcontinental railroad accelerated every form of western economic activity – mining, cattle drives, and commercial farming – while also bringing more settlers, soldiers, and infrastructure into contact (and conflict) with Plains peoples, whose land and buffalo herds were directly threatened. (A) is wrong because the railroad itself depended on enormous federal land grants and loans, showing deepened, not reduced, federal involvement; (C) is wrong, since conflict intensified in the 1870s-1880s (Little Bighorn, the Black Hills war) after the railroad's completion; (D) is wrong, since immigration in fact increased sharply in this period, feeding railroad and industrial labor demand. **(B)**.

### Bài tập luyện tập

**SAQ-style question.** Use your knowledge of Period 6 to answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE specific way the Dawes Act (1887) was intended to change Native American landholding and culture.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE difference between the outcome of the Battle of the Little Bighorn (1876) and the Wounded Knee Massacre (1890).
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way Frederick Jackson Turner's Frontier Thesis (1893) reflected contemporary anxieties about the changes described in (a) and (b).

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) The Dawes Act broke up communally held tribal land into individual family allotments (typically 160 acres), intending to convert Native peoples into individual farmers integrated into white property norms, while declaring remaining land “surplus” and open to non-Native settlers.
- (b) At Little Bighorn, allied Lakota, Cheyenne, and Arapaho forces defeated and annihilated a detachment of the U.S. Seventh Cavalry under Custer, a rare outright Native military victory; at Wounded Knee fourteen years later, the same Seventh Cavalry killed hundreds of largely disarmed Lakota men, women, and children, an event with no comparable military engagement and widely treated as the end of organized armed Native resistance.
- (c) Turner's thesis reflected anxiety that the “closing” of the frontier – confirmed by the 1890

census and symbolized by events like Wounded Knee and the Dawes Act's dismantling of tribal land – meant the United States had lost the westward safety valve and formative experience he believed had shaped American democracy and character, raising uncertain questions about the nation's future identity.

## 6.3 The New South

### 6.3.1 Henry Grady's "New South" and its limits

In an 1886 speech and years of editorials in the *Atlanta Constitution*, journalist **Henry Grady** promoted a vision of a "New South": a region reconciled with the North, diversifying beyond cotton monoculture into textile mills, iron and steel (centered in Birmingham, Alabama), and railroads, attracting Northern capital investment while preserving white political and social supremacy. In reality, the South remained the nation's poorest and most agricultural region throughout the period: industrial growth was real but limited and low-wage, and the vast majority of Southerners – Black and white alike – remained trapped in agricultural poverty. Under **sharecropping**, landless farmers (disproportionately, though not exclusively, formerly enslaved people) worked land owned by others in exchange for a share of the crop, while under **tenant farming**, farmers rented land for cash or a fixed share but supplied their own tools and livestock, giving them somewhat greater independence; both systems, however, operated within a **crop-lien system** in which farmers borrowed against future harvests at high interest from merchants and landlords, trapping generations of families in cyclical debt regardless of legal status.

### 6.3.2 Jim Crow and Plessy v. Ferguson (1896)

After Reconstruction ended (1877), white "Redeemer" governments across the South systematically rolled back Black political power. By the 1890s, states had enacted **Jim Crow laws** mandating racial segregation in transportation, schools, and public accommodations, alongside devices designed to disenfranchise Black voters – poll taxes, literacy tests, and "grandfather clauses" that exempted white voters whose ancestors had voted before Reconstruction. Extralegal violence, including lynching (documented and campaigned against by journalist Ida B. Wells), reinforced this racial hierarchy outside the law entirely. In **Plessy v. Ferguson (1896)**, the Supreme Court upheld Louisiana's law requiring segregated railroad cars, ruling 7–1 that legally mandated segregation did not violate the Fourteenth Amendment so long as facilities were "separate but equal." In practice, facilities for Black Americans were almost never equal, and the doctrine gave constitutional legitimacy to segregation across the South (and much of the North, in de facto form) for nearly six decades, until *Brown v. Board of Education* (1954).

#### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

The gap between Henry Grady's rhetoric of a reconciled, industrializing "New South" and the entrenched reality of sharecropping, tenant farming, and Jim Crow illustrates how a region's public self-image can diverge sharply from the economic and racial structures actually governing most people's daily lives – a pattern APUSH exams frequently ask students to evaluate critically rather than accept at face value.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Henry Grady quảng bá hình ảnh "New South" – một miền Nam hòa giải với miền Bắc, công nghiệp hóa (dệt may, thép ở Birmingham) và thu hút vốn đầu tư – nhưng thực tế miền Nam vẫn nghèo và phụ thuộc nông nghiệp. Chế độ tá điền (sharecropping) và thuê đất (tenant farming), cùng hệ thống vay nợ thế chấp mùa vụ (crop-lien), khiến nông dân da đen và da trắng nghèo mắc nợ triền miên. Sau khi Tái thiết kết thúc, các chính quyền da trắng ban hành luật Jim Crow

phân biệt chủng tộc và các thủ đoạn tước quyền bầu cử của người da đen. Phán quyết *Plessy v. Ferguson* (1896) hợp pháp hóa nguyên tắc “tách biệt nhưng bình đẳng,” kéo dài phân biệt chủng tộc gần 60 năm.

(!) **Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not treat “sharecropping” and “tenant farming” as identical terms. A **sharecropper** typically owned nothing – the landlord supplied land, housing, tools, and seed, and the sharecropper repaid this with a large share (often half) of the harvest, leaving little control over farming decisions. A **tenant farmer** rented land (for cash or a smaller crop share) but owned his own tools, animals, and seed, giving him somewhat more autonomy and a marginally higher rung on the agricultural ladder. Both groups, however, were often caught in the same crop-lien debt system, so the distinction matters for describing economic status, not for describing the region’s overall poverty.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The Supreme Court’s ruling in *Plessy v. Ferguson* (1896) is best understood as:

- |                                                                                                                                |                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) A decision that struck down all Southern segregation laws as unconstitutional                                              | cover to Jim Crow for decades                                              |
| (B) A decision upholding legally mandated racial segregation under the doctrine of “separate but equal,” giving constitutional | (C) A decision that restored full Black voting rights in the South         |
|                                                                                                                                | (D) A decision limited only to segregation in federal government buildings |

### Lời giải chi tiết

*Plessy v. Ferguson* upheld a Louisiana law requiring racially separate railroad cars, ruling that segregated facilities did not violate the Fourteenth Amendment’s Equal Protection Clause as long as they were nominally “equal” – a standard almost never honored in practice, and one that gave the Jim Crow system constitutional legitimacy until *Brown v. Board of Education* in 1954. (A) states the opposite of the actual holding; (C) is unrelated – Black voting rights were simultaneously being stripped away through poll taxes and literacy tests, not restored; (D) is too narrow – the ruling’s logic applied broadly across state and private facilities, not just federal buildings. (B).

### Bài tập luyện tập

#### SAQ-style question.

- Briefly explain ONE difference between Henry Grady’s vision of the “New South” and the economic reality most Southerners experienced after 1877.
- Briefly explain ONE method Southern states used to disenfranchise Black voters in the late nineteenth century.
- Briefly explain ONE way *Plessy v. Ferguson* (1896) affected the legal status of racial segregation in the United States.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- Grady promoted a vision of a diversified, industrializing, reconciled South, but most Southerners – Black and white – remained trapped in cotton-dependent sharecropping or tenant farming and chronic crop-lien debt, with industrial growth limited mostly to a few cities like Birmingham.

(b) Southern states used poll taxes, literacy tests administered arbitrarily by white registrars, and grandfather clauses (exempting voters whose ancestors could vote before Reconstruction) to disenfranchise Black voters while technically avoiding an explicit racial bar prohibited by the Fifteenth Amendment.

(c) By upholding “separate but equal” as constitutional, *Plessy v. Ferguson* gave Jim Crow segregation laws federal constitutional legitimacy, allowing legally mandated racial segregation to persist across the South (and in de facto forms elsewhere) until it was overturned by *Brown v. Board of Education* in 1954.

## 6.4 Industrialization and Big Business

### 6.4.1 Vertical and horizontal integration

**Andrew Carnegie** built Carnegie Steel into the nation’s dominant steel producer through **vertical integration**: owning or controlling every stage of production, from raw materials (iron ore and coal supplies) through transportation (railroads and ore ships) to manufacturing itself (Bessemer-process steel mills such as the Homestead Works near Pittsburgh), eliminating middlemen and reducing costs at every step. **John D. Rockefeller**, by contrast, built Standard Oil’s dominance of the oil refining industry through **horizontal integration**: buying out or merging with competing refineries until Standard Oil controlled roughly 90 percent of American oil refining capacity by the early 1880s. In 1882, Rockefeller’s lawyers pioneered the legal **trust**, in which stockholders of formerly competing companies transferred their shares to a single board of trustees who ran the combined enterprise as one, a structure designed partly to evade state laws restricting corporate size and cross-state ownership.

| Aspect        | Vertical Integration                                                                               | Horizontal Integration                                                            |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Strategy      | Control every stage of production of a single good, from raw material to finished product          | Buy out or merge with competing firms at the same stage of production             |
| Key figure    | Andrew Carnegie                                                                                    | John D. Rockefeller                                                               |
| Industry      | Steel (Carnegie Steel)                                                                             | Oil refining (Standard Oil)                                                       |
| Goal          | Eliminate middlemen and dependence on outside suppliers, reducing costs and increasing reliability | Eliminate competition to control price and supply of a single stage of production |
| Legal vehicle | Direct corporate ownership of suppliers and distributors                                           | The trust (1882) – shares of rival firms held by a single board of trustees       |

Two dominant strategies of industrial consolidation in Period 6.

### 6.4.2 Justifying wealth: Social Darwinism and the Gospel of Wealth

Industrialists and their intellectual defenders justified vast concentrations of wealth through **Social Darwinism**, a misapplication of Charles Darwin’s biological theory (popularized by Herbert Spencer and, in the United States, Yale sociologist William Graham Sumner) that argued economic competition sorted society’s “fittest” members to the top, and that government assistance to the poor interfered with natural, beneficial progress. Andrew Carnegie offered a related but distinct argument in his 1889 essay, commonly known as the “**Gospel of Wealth**,” which held that the wealthy had accumulated their fortunes through superior ability serving the public good, but also bore a moral duty as “trustees” to redistribute their wealth during their lifetimes for the broader public benefit (funding libraries, universities, and concert halls) rather than passing it entirely to heirs or hoarding it.

### 6.4.3 Early (weak) regulation: the Sherman Antitrust Act

Public alarm at the power of trusts led Congress to pass the **Sherman Antitrust Act (1890)**, the first federal law banning “every contract, combination... or conspiracy in restraint of trade.” In practice, the law was enforced weakly and inconsistently during the 1890s: the Supreme Court’s ruling in *United States v. E.C. Knight Co.* (1895) held that manufacturing (in that case, a sugar-refining trust controlling roughly 98 percent of the industry) was not technically “commerce” and therefore largely outside the Act’s reach, while the federal government instead used the law more aggressively against labor unions, most notably to justify the injunction that broke the Pullman Strike in 1894.

#### Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology

Vertical and horizontal integration were not simply business strategies but structural transformations of the American economy: by 1900, a small number of giant corporations dominated entire industries, wielding economic power – and, through lobbying and campaign financing, considerable political power – that dwarfed that of any individual state government, a central reason later Progressive reformers targeted corporate consolidation directly.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Carnegie xây dựng Carnegie Steel bằng tích hợp dọc (vertical integration) – kiểm soát mọi công đoạn từ khai thác nguyên liệu đến sản xuất thép. Rockefeller xây dựng Standard Oil bằng tích hợp ngang (horizontal integration) – mua lại hoặc sáp nhập các đối thủ cùng ngành, kiểm soát khoảng 90% ngành lọc dầu Mỹ. Thuyết Darwin Xã hội biện minh cho sự bất bình đẳng bằng “chọn lọc tự nhiên” trong kinh tế; “Phúc âm của Cải” (*Gospel of Wealth*, 1889) của Carnegie lại lập luận rằng người giàu có trách nhiệm đạo đức phải dùng tài sản làm từ thiện. Đạo luật Chống Độc quyền Sherman (1890) là luật liên bang đầu tiên cấm độc quyền, nhưng ban đầu được thực thi rất yếu, thậm chí còn bị dùng để chống lại công đoàn nhiều hơn là chống lại các tập đoàn.

**The Sherman Antitrust Act’s early weakness (1890–1898):** narrow judicial interpretation (*E.C. Knight*, 1895) exempted most manufacturing trusts from the law; the federal government instead applied it forcefully against the American Railway Union during the Pullman Strike (1894). Robust “trust-busting” enforcement did not arrive until Theodore Roosevelt’s presidency in the following period.

#### HIPP Document Analysis: Andrew Carnegie, “Wealth” (*Gospel of Wealth*), 1889

*Excerpt (paraphrased):* Carnegie argues that the concentration of wealth in a few hands, though it produces “the contrast between the palace of the millionaire and the cottage of the laborer,” is the price of a system of competition that has raised overall living standards; the wealthy, he argues, should administer their surplus fortunes during their own lifetimes as trustees for the public good, funding institutions like libraries rather than leaving fortunes to heirs.

**Historical situation:** published in the *North American Review* at the height of Gilded Age wealth concentration and mounting public criticism of industrial “robber barons.” **Intended audience:** fellow wealthy industrialists and the broader educated public debating the fairness of concentrated wealth. **Purpose:** to defend the underlying system of competitive capitalism while channeling elite guilt (or public criticism) into voluntary philanthropy rather than government redistribution or labor reform. **Point of view:** written by one of the era’s wealthiest industrialists, whose own fortune depended on paying Homestead steelworkers low wages under dangerous conditions – a tension worth noting when evaluating how sincerely his philanthropic argument addressed the structural causes of inequality he described.

**LEQ Thesis Model: Robber Barons or Captains of Industry?**

**Prompt:** Evaluate the extent to which the business practices of industrialists such as Carnegie and Rockefeller benefited American society more than they harmed it, 1865–1900.

**Model thesis:** While industrialists like Carnegie and Rockefeller dramatically lowered consumer prices, built modern industries, and funded lasting public institutions, their business practices also depended on dangerous, low-wage labor and the suppression of unions, meaning their contributions to national economic growth came at a direct and severe cost to the industrial workforce that made that growth possible.

**Outline:**

- Para. 1 (benefits): vertical and horizontal integration drove down the cost of steel and oil, funding infrastructure and consumer goods nationwide; philanthropy (Carnegie libraries, universities) left a lasting public legacy.
- Para. 2 (harms): labor conditions in mills and refineries were dangerous and low-paid, and industrialists used private security forces (Pinkertons at Homestead) and political influence to crush organized labor.
- Para. 3 (complexity): argue that the same vertical/horizontal strategies that lowered costs also concentrated economic power so completely that ordinary workers and consumers had little recourse against price-setting or wage-setting by a handful of firms, a tension the weak Sherman Antitrust Act (1890) could not resolve.

**DBQ thesis and outline model**

**Prompt:** “Using the Carnegie document above and your knowledge of United States history, evaluate the extent to which Gilded Age industrialists’ own justifications for concentrated wealth matched the actual economic and social effects of their business practices, 1865–1900.”

**Model thesis:** Industrialists like Carnegie justified enormous personal fortunes as the natural and socially beneficial byproduct of a competitive system that lowered prices and, through voluntary philanthropy, returned wealth to the public – but this self-justification obscured the severe human cost (dangerous conditions, suppressed wages, crushed strikes) that same competitive system imposed on the industrial workforce whose labor generated those fortunes in the first place.

**Supporting outline:**

*Paragraph 1 (Document evidence):* Carnegie’s “Wealth” frames concentrated fortunes as the fair, even necessary, price of competitive progress and casts philanthropy as sufficient moral compensation, revealing how industrialists rhetorically converted inequality into a story of public benefit.

*Paragraph 2 (Outside evidence – labor conditions):* The 1892 Homestead Strike, in which Carnegie’s own company used Pinkerton guards against striking steelworkers, shows the gap between Carnegie’s public philanthropic image and his company’s actual labor practices.

*Paragraph 3 (Outside evidence – weak regulation):* The Sherman Antitrust Act’s narrow judicial interpretation in *United States v. E.C. Knight Co.* (1895) left industrialists’ self-regulating justification largely unchecked by government power through the end of the century, reinforcing how thoroughly the era’s legal and political institutions deferred to industrialists’ own account of their role.

**Bài tập luyện tập**

Which of the following best distinguishes Andrew Carnegie's approach to building Carnegie Steel from John D. Rockefeller's approach to building Standard Oil?

- |                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Carnegie relied on horizontal integration, while Rockefeller relied on vertical integration                                                                     | oil refineries                                                                                                     |
| (B) Carnegie controlled every stage of steel production from raw materials to finished product, while Rockefeller achieved dominance mainly by buying out competing | (C) Carnegie's company was a legal trust, while Rockefeller's company never used any form of corporate combination |
|                                                                                                                                                                     | (D) Carnegie and Rockefeller used identical business strategies to dominate the same industry                      |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Carnegie Steel's dominance rested on vertical integration – owning mines, transportation, and mills so that every stage of steel production was under one company's control – while Standard Oil's dominance rested on horizontal integration, consolidating competing refineries (through the 1882 trust device) until it controlled roughly 90% of refining capacity. (A) reverses the two strategies; (C) is incorrect because it was Rockefeller, not Carnegie, who pioneered the legal trust structure; (D) is wrong since they operated in different industries (steel vs. oil) using different consolidation strategies. **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập****SAQ-style question.**

- (a) Briefly explain ONE difference between vertical integration and horizontal integration as business strategies.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way industrialists such as Carnegie used ideas like Social Darwinism or the Gospel of Wealth to justify their fortunes.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE reason the Sherman Antitrust Act (1890) failed to significantly restrain trusts during the 1890s.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Vertical integration means a single company controls every stage of production of one good, from raw materials to finished product (Carnegie Steel); horizontal integration means a company achieves dominance by buying out or merging with competitors operating at the same stage of production (Standard Oil).
- (b) Social Darwinism held that economic competition naturally sorted society's "fittest" members to the top, implying government should not interfere with (or redistribute) concentrated wealth; Carnegie's Gospel of Wealth argued instead that the wealthy earned their fortunes fairly through this competitive system but had a moral duty to redistribute surplus wealth voluntarily through philanthropy.
- (c) The Supreme Court's narrow interpretation of "commerce" in *United States v. E.C. Knight Co.* (1895) exempted most manufacturing trusts from the law's reach, and the federal government initially applied the Act more forcefully against labor unions (as in the Pullman Strike injunction) than against the industrial trusts it was ostensibly designed to restrain.

**6.5 Gilded Age Politics**

### 6.5.1 Political machines and the spoils system

In rapidly growing cities, **political machines** – most famously New York City's Democratic **Tammany Hall**, run in the late 1860s and early 1870s by "Boss" William M. Tweed – provided practical services (jobs, small loans, help navigating city bureaucracy or naturalization) to poor and immigrant voters in exchange for reliable votes and political loyalty. This system delivered real, tangible help unavailable from a still-minimal city government, but it was also riddled with graft: the Tweed Ring siphoned tens of millions of dollars from city contracts before journalists and cartoonist Thomas Nast's caricatures in *Harper's Weekly* helped expose the scandal, leading to Tweed's conviction in 1873. At the federal level, the **spoils (patronage) system** rewarded a winning party's supporters with government jobs regardless of qualification, producing an inefficient, frequently corrupt federal workforce and consuming enormous amounts of politicians' time and energy on office-seekers.

### 6.5.2 Civil service reform: the Pendleton Act (1883)

The dangers of unchecked patronage were made vivid in 1881, when a disappointed office-seeker, Charles Guiteau, assassinated President **James Garfield**, who died that September. Public outrage helped pass the **Pendleton Civil Service Act (1883)**, which created a bipartisan Civil Service Commission and required that certain federal jobs be awarded through competitive examinations rather than political connections – a first, still-partial step (many jobs remained patronage-based for decades) toward a professionalized federal bureaucracy. Beyond civil service, national politics in this era were often described as "stalemated": tightly contested elections, narrow congressional majorities, and two parties competitive nationwide but divided mainly over cultural and patronage issues (rather than sharp economic policy differences, apart from the tariff) meant the federal government rarely acted decisively on the era's major economic and social problems.

#### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

Gilded Age political machines and the spoils system reveal a paradox: informal, often corrupt local networks filled real gaps left by weak, understaffed government, while federal politics – despite frequent elections and high voter turnout – remained largely deferential to business interests and unable to build durable coalitions for substantive economic reform until forced to act by crises like Garfield's assassination.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Bộ máy chính trị (political machine) như Tammany Hall ở New York cung cấp dịch vụ thiết thực (việc làm, hỗ trợ nhập tịch) cho cử tri nghèo và di dân để đổi lấy phiếu bầu, nhưng đi kèm tham nhũng nghiêm trọng (vụ bê bối Tweed Ring). Ở cấp liên bang, chế độ chia phần (spoils system) trao chức vụ chính phủ cho người ủng hộ đảng thắng cử bất kể năng lực. Vụ ám sát Tổng thống Garfield năm 1881 bởi một người xin việc bị từ chối đã thúc đẩy Đạo luật Công vụ Pendleton (1883), lần đầu tiên yêu cầu thi tuyển cạnh tranh cho một số vị trí liên bang.

**Sequence: patronage crisis to reform.** Spoils system entrenched after decades of use → Garfield assassinated by a disappointed office-seeker (1881) → public outrage → Pendleton Civil Service Act (1883) creates competitive exams for some federal jobs – a limited but historically important first step toward a professional civil service.

#### SAQ Model Outline: Political Machines and Civil Service Reform

**Prompt:** (a) Briefly explain ONE reason political machines like Tammany Hall gained influence in Gilded Age cities. (b) Briefly explain ONE consequence of the assassination of President Garfield. (c) Briefly explain ONE limitation of the Pendleton Civil Service Act (1883).

**Model answer (a):** Political machines gained influence because rapidly growing, poorly staffed

city governments could not meet the practical needs of poor and immigrant residents, and machines like Tammany Hall filled that gap directly – providing jobs, assistance, and a sense of belonging in exchange for votes.

**Model answer (b):** Garfield's assassination by a disappointed office-seeker in 1881 discredited the patronage (spoils) system in the eyes of the public and created the political momentum needed to pass the Pendleton Civil Service Act two years later.

**Model answer (c):** The Pendleton Act initially covered only a minority of federal positions, leaving most government jobs still subject to political patronage for decades, so its immediate effect on the overall spoils system was limited even as it established an important long-term precedent.

### Bài tập luyện tập

Urban political machines such as Tammany Hall maintained the loyalty of poor and immigrant voters primarily by:

- |                                                                                                                       |                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Enforcing strict civil service examinations for all city jobs                                                     | (C) Campaigning exclusively on national tariff policy |
| (B) Providing direct, practical services – jobs, assistance, and favors – in exchange for political loyalty and votes | (D) Refusing to engage with immigrant communities     |

### Lời giải chi tiết

Machines like Tammany Hall thrived precisely because they offered poor and immigrant city residents tangible, immediate help – jobs, loans, assistance with the naturalization process, even coal or food in hard times – filling gaps left by minimal, understaffed city governments, in exchange for dependable votes. (A) describes the opposite of how machine-era patronage worked; (C) mischaracterizes machine politics, which operated on local favors, not abstract national policy debates; (D) is factually backward, since machines specifically targeted and courted immigrant communities. **(B)**.

### Bài tập luyện tập

#### SAQ-style question.

- (a) Briefly explain ONE way the spoils (patronage) system shaped federal government hiring before 1883.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE cause of the Pendleton Civil Service Act (1883).
- (c) Briefly explain ONE reason national politics in the Gilded Age is often described by historians as “stalelated.”

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Under the spoils system, a winning political party rewarded its supporters with federal government jobs regardless of their qualifications, treating public office primarily as a reward for party loyalty rather than a position requiring competence.
- (b) The assassination of President Garfield in 1881 by Charles Guiteau, a disappointed office-seeker, discredited unrestrained patronage in the eyes of the public and provided the political momentum for civil service reform.
- (c) Because the two major parties were closely and evenly matched nationally, held only narrow

congressional majorities, and largely avoided sharp disagreement on economic policy beyond the tariff, the federal government rarely mustered the sustained political will to act decisively on major economic or social problems of the era.

## 6.6 Immigration and Migration

### 6.6.1 The “New Immigrants”

Beginning in the 1880s, the composition of immigration to the United States shifted sharply. Earlier “Old Immigrants” had come predominantly from Northern and Western Europe (Britain, Germany, Ireland, Scandinavia), were mostly Protestant (apart from many Irish Catholics), and often settled as farmers. The new wave, known as “**New Immigrants**,” came predominantly from Southern and Eastern Europe – Italy, Poland, Russia (including large numbers of Jewish emigrants fleeing pogroms), Greece, and the Austro-Hungarian Empire – and were overwhelmingly Roman Catholic, Jewish, or Eastern Orthodox. New Immigrants settled disproportionately in dense urban ethnic enclaves (Manhattan’s Lower East Side, Chicago’s various immigrant wards) rather than agricultural regions, taking industrial jobs in factories, garment shops, and construction that fueled the era’s urban growth.

### 6.6.2 Processing immigration: Ellis Island and the West Coast

Beginning January 1, 1892, most European immigrants arriving in New York Harbor were processed at the newly opened federal immigration station on **Ellis Island**, where officials conducted brief medical and legal inspections; the vast majority (roughly 98 percent) were admitted within hours. On the West Coast, immigration – overwhelmingly Chinese and, later, other Asian arrivals – faced far harsher, more prolonged interrogation and detention procedures, a pattern that would be formalized at San Francisco Bay’s Angel Island Immigration Station after it opened in 1910; even before that facility existed, Chinese arrivals were already subject to unusually invasive questioning and lengthy detention under the restrictions of the Chinese Exclusion Act (1882), discussed further in Section 6.7.

| Feature            | “Old” Immigrants (pre-1880s, dominant)                             | “New” Immigrants (1880s–1920s, dominant)                                       |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Origin             | Northern & Western Europe (Britain, Germany, Ireland, Scandinavia) | Southern & Eastern Europe (Italy, Poland, Russia, Greece, Austria-Hungary)     |
| Religion           | Mostly Protestant, with a large Irish Catholic minority            | Mostly Roman Catholic, Jewish, or Eastern Orthodox                             |
| Settlement pattern | Often rural / agricultural settlement                              | Overwhelmingly urban, industrial factory labor                                 |
| Nativist reaction  | Significant (especially anti-Catholic Know-Nothings, 1850s)        | Intensified further: American Protective Association, calls for literacy tests |

Shifting immigration patterns between the mid-nineteenth century and the Gilded Age.

### Theme: MIG – Migration and Settlement

The shift from “Old” to “New” Immigration was not simply a change in numbers but in perceived cultural distance: New Immigrants’ unfamiliar languages, religions, and urban settlement patterns made them appear more “foreign” to native-born Protestant Americans than earlier immigrant groups, intensifying nativist responses discussed in Section 6.7 even as the American economy depended heavily on their labor.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Từ thập niên 1880, làn sóng “di dân mới” (New Immigrants) từ Nam và Đông Âu (Ý, Ba Lan, Nga, Do Thái, Hy Lạp) – chủ yếu theo Công giáo, Do Thái giáo, hoặc Chính thống giáo – thay thế dần “di dân cũ” từ Bắc và Tây Âu (Anh, Đức, Ireland, Bắc Âu), vốn chủ yếu theo Tin Lành. Di dân mới định cư đông đúc ở các khu ổ chuột đô thị và làm việc trong nhà máy, khác với di dân cũ thường định cư ở vùng nông thôn. Ellis Island (mở cửa 1892) là trạm tiếp nhận chính ở New York, trong khi di dân châu Á ở bờ Tây (chủ yếu người Hoa) phải chịu quy trình thẩm vấn khắt khe hơn nhiều.

## Bài tập luyện tập

Compared to earlier “Old Immigrants,” the “New Immigrants” arriving after the 1880s were most likely to:

- |                                                                                                                          |                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Come predominantly from Northern and Western Europe and settle as farmers                                            | dustrial neighborhoods                                             |
| (B) Come predominantly from Southern and Eastern Europe, be Catholic, Jewish, or Orthodox, and settle in dense urban in- | (C) Face no nativist opposition of any kind                        |
|                                                                                                                          | (D) Be processed exclusively through Angel Island in San Francisco |

## Lời giải chi tiết

The defining features of the “New Immigration” were geographic origin (Southern and Eastern Europe), religion (predominantly Catholic, Jewish, or Orthodox, contrasting with the largely Protestant older immigrant population), and settlement pattern (concentrated urban industrial neighborhoods rather than farmland). (A) describes the earlier “Old Immigrant” pattern; (C) is false, since New Immigrants faced substantially intensified nativist hostility (Section 6.7); (D) is incorrect both geographically (most New Immigrants arrived via Ellis Island on the East Coast) and chronologically (Angel Island opened in 1910, after most of Period 6). (B).

## 6.7 Responses to Immigration

Rising immigration, especially of “New Immigrants,” provoked a powerful **nativist** backlash among native-born, largely Protestant Americans who blamed immigrants for urban crime, poverty, radicalism (fears intensified after the Haymarket Affair, discussed in Section 6.12, since several defendants were foreign-born), and competition for jobs. The **American Protective Association (APA)**, founded in 1887, organized specifically against Catholic immigration and Catholic officeholders, reflecting fears that Catholic immigrants owed primary loyalty to the Pope rather than American democratic institutions. Anti-Chinese sentiment on the West Coast, fueled by economic competition (especially after railroad construction work declined) and explicit racial prejudice, culminated in the **Chinese Exclusion Act (1882)**, the first major federal law to ban immigration based explicitly on nationality: it barred Chinese laborers from entering the United States for ten years (later extended and made permanent in 1902, not repealed until 1943) and denied existing Chinese residents the ability to become naturalized citizens.

## Theme: NAT – National Identity

Nativist movements and the Chinese Exclusion Act reveal that Gilded Age Americans were actively contesting who counted as a legitimate future citizen: religion (Catholic vs. Protestant) and race (Chinese vs. European) both functioned as boundaries that native-born reformers and lawmakers used to define – and restrict – American national identity, well before broader immigration quota laws arrived in the 1920s.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Làn sóng di dân mới gây ra phản ứng bài ngoại (nativism) mạnh mẽ. Hội American Protective Association (1887) nhắm vào người Công giáo. Ở bờ Tây, định kiến chủng tộc và cạnh tranh việc làm dẫn đến Đạo luật Cấm người Hoa (Chinese Exclusion Act, 1882) – đạo luật liên bang đầu tiên cấm nhập cư dựa trên quốc tịch/sắc tộc cụ thể, cấm lao động Trung Quốc nhập cảnh trong 10 năm (sau đó gia hạn và trở thành vĩnh viễn năm 1902) và không cho người Hoa đã ở Mỹ nhập tịch.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not conflate Gilded Age nativism (the American Protective Association, the Chinese Exclusion Act) with the earlier **Know-Nothing (American) Party** of the 1850s, which targeted mainly Irish and German Catholic immigrants and briefly became a significant national political party before collapsing over the slavery issue. Gilded Age nativism operated in a different context (mass Southern/Eastern European and Chinese immigration, industrial labor competition, fear of imported radicalism) and, in the Chinese Exclusion Act, achieved something the Know-Nothings never did: a permanent federal law restricting immigration by nationality.

## Bài tập luyện tập

The Chinese Exclusion Act (1882) is historically significant primarily because it was:

- |                                                                                                                                |                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) The first federal law to grant citizenship to all immigrants regardless of origin                                          | and racial prejudice                                          |
| (B) The first major federal law to ban immigration based explicitly on national origin, reflecting West Coast economic anxiety | (C) A law that applied equally to immigrants from all nations |
|                                                                                                                                | (D) Immediately repealed within one year of passage           |

## Lời giải chi tiết

The Chinese Exclusion Act broke new legal ground by barring an entire nationality (Chinese laborers) from immigrating to the United States, reflecting West Coast labor competition fears and explicit racial prejudice; it remained in force, later extended and made permanent, until its repeal in 1943. (A) is the opposite of the law's actual effect, which denied Chinese immigrants even the right to naturalize; (C) is wrong, since the law targeted one nationality specifically rather than applying uniformly; (D) is wrong, since the Act was renewed and strengthened (Geary Act, 1892) rather than repealed. **(B)**.

## Bài tập luyện tập

## SAQ-style question.

- (a) Briefly explain ONE cause of nativist opposition to immigration during the Gilded Age.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE specific provision of the Chinese Exclusion Act (1882).
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way nativist organizations like the American Protective Association differed from the Chinese Exclusion Act in the immigrant groups they primarily targeted.

## Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Native-born Americans often blamed immigrants – especially Catholic, Jewish, and Chinese arrivals – for urban poverty, crime, radicalism, and competition for industrial jobs, fears intensified by events like the Haymarket Affair, which involved several foreign-born defendants.

(b) The Chinese Exclusion Act barred Chinese laborers from entering the United States for ten years and denied Chinese immigrants already in the country the right to become naturalized citizens.

(c) The American Protective Association focused primarily on opposing Catholic immigrants (mainly from Ireland, Italy, and other Catholic parts of Europe) and Catholic political influence, while the Chinese Exclusion Act targeted Chinese immigrants specifically on the basis of national origin and race rather than religion.

## 6.8 Development of the Middle Class

Industrial and corporate growth expanded a professional and white-collar **middle class** – managers, clerks, accountants, engineers – distinct from both industrial capitalists and wage laborers. This middle class drove a new **consumer culture**: department stores such as Macy's in New York, Marshall Field's in Chicago, and Wanamaker's in Philadelphia offered fixed prices, wide selection, and inviting displays under one roof, while mail-order catalogs from firms like Montgomery Ward and Sears, Roebuck brought consumer goods to rural households far from any city. Gender norms shifted gradually within this middle class: growing numbers of women pursued higher education at expanding women's colleges, took up new clerical and retail jobs (as typists, telephone operators, and department store clerks), and organized women's clubs devoted to civic and cultural improvement, contributing to an emerging "New Woman" ideal associated with greater independence, athletic activity (the bicycle craze), and public visibility. Rising middle-class incomes and shorter working hours also expanded commercial leisure: baseball became a genuinely national pastime, amusement parks such as Coney Island drew huge crowds, and the 1893 World's Columbian Exposition in Chicago showcased both industrial achievement and a new culture of mass consumer spectacle.

### Theme: ARC – American and Regional Culture

The rise of department stores, mail-order catalogs, and organized leisure activities reflects how industrial mass production reshaped everyday culture: Americans increasingly defined social status through purchased goods and leisure experiences rather than solely through production or craft, a cultural shift that historians treat as a defining feature of modern American consumer society.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Tầng lớp trung lưu (quản lý, nhân viên văn phòng, kỹ sư) mở rộng nhanh chóng nhờ công nghiệp hóa, thúc đẩy văn hóa tiêu dùng: cửa hàng bách hóa (Macy's, Marshall Field's, Wanamaker's) và catalogue đặt hàng qua thư (Sears, Montgomery Ward) phổ biến hàng tiêu dùng khắp nước Mỹ. Vai trò giới có sự thay đổi: phụ nữ trung lưu học đại học nhiều hơn, làm việc văn phòng, tham gia câu lạc bộ phụ nữ – hình thành hình mẫu "Người phụ nữ mới" (New Woman). Giải trí đại chúng (bóng chày, công viên giải trí Coney Island, Hội chợ Thế giới Chicago 1893) cũng phát triển mạnh.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The rise of department stores and mail-order catalogs during the Gilded Age most directly reflects which broader development?

- (A) The decline of industrial manufacturing in favor of agriculture      (C) A nationwide return to small, local artisan production
- (B) The growth of a consumer culture tied to an expanding middle class and national markets connected by rail      (D) Federal government regulation of retail prices

### Lời giải chi tiết

Department stores and mail-order catalogs depended directly on two Gilded Age developments: a growing urban and rural middle class with rising discretionary income, and a national rail network (Section 6.2) capable of shipping mass-produced goods efficiently across the country, including to remote farm households via catalog order. (A) is wrong, since industrial manufacturing was expanding, not declining; (C) is wrong, since these retail innovations displaced, rather than restored, small-scale local production; (D) is wrong, since prices were set by the stores themselves in a largely unregulated marketplace. **(B)**.

## 6.9 Urbanization and Its Challenges

### 6.9.1 Tenements and the machine

Explosive urban population growth – driven by both immigration and internal migration from rural areas – far outpaced housing and infrastructure development in major cities. Many working-class and immigrant families crowded into **tenements**: multi-family buildings, often poorly ventilated, lacking adequate plumbing, and susceptible to fire and disease, exemplified by conditions on Manhattan's Lower East Side. Reformer and photojournalist **Jacob Riis** documented these conditions in *How the Other Half Lives* (1890), using pioneering flash photography to bring tenement poverty vividly before middle-class readers. City governments, chronically underfunded and understaffed relative to their exploding populations, often relied on political machines (Section 6.5) to informally deliver basic services – at the price of corruption and inefficiency.

### 6.9.2 The settlement house movement

Educated, reform-minded women pioneered a new response to urban poverty: the **settlement house**. In 1889, **Jane Addams** and Ellen Gates Starr founded **Hull House** in Chicago, a settlement house located directly within an immigrant, working-class neighborhood, offering childcare, English classes, healthcare referrals, cultural and recreational programs, and vocational training. Hull House and similar settlement houses across the country trained a generation of women (and some men) in what became the professional field of social work, and their staff – who lived among the communities they served rather than merely visiting – became influential advocates for urban reforms including child labor laws, public health regulation, and improved housing codes, laying important groundwork for the broader Progressive-era reform agenda of the following period.

#### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

Tenement housing and the settlement house movement together illustrate how urbanization created entirely new categories of social problems – and entirely new institutions, from investigative journalism to professionalized social work, designed specifically to document and address them, well before government itself took on major responsibility for social welfare.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Đô thị hóa nhanh khiến nhà ở và cơ sở hạ tầng không theo kịp dân số, dẫn đến các khu nhà ở tập thể (tenements) chật chội, mất vệ sinh – được nhà báo Jacob Riis ghi lại trong cuốn *How*

*the Other Half Lives* (1890). Phong trào nhà định cư (settlement house), tiêu biểu là Hull House do Jane Addams sáng lập tại Chicago năm 1889, cung cấp dịch vụ giáo dục, y tế, chăm sóc trẻ em cho cư dân nhập cư nghèo, đồng thời đặt nền móng cho ngành công tác xã hội và các cải cách đô thị sau này.

#### HIPP Document Analysis: Jacob Riis, *How the Other Half Lives*, 1890

**Excerpt (paraphrased):** Riis describes a Lower East Side tenement in which a single room, without direct light or ventilation, houses an entire immigrant family plus boarders, illustrating overcrowding, disease risk, and the moral and physical toll of tenement poverty on children in particular.

**Historical situation:** published as New York City's tenement population reached historic density, following decades of accelerating immigration with little corresponding investment in housing regulation. **Intended audience:** a largely native-born, middle- and upper-class readership unfamiliar with tenement conditions firsthand. **Purpose:** to shock reform-minded readers into supporting stricter housing codes and broader urban reform, using photography as evidence rather than relying on statistics alone. **Point of view:** a Danish-immigrant journalist writing sympathetically but still through a moralizing, sometimes stereotyping lens common to reformers of his era – explaining both the book's real impact on housing reform and the limits of its perspective on the immigrant communities it depicted.

#### Bài tập luyện tập

Jacob Riis's *How the Other Half Lives* (1890) is most directly significant because it:

- |                                                                                                                            |                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Proved that tenement housing conditions in American cities had already improved dramatically by 1890                   | for housing reform                                                           |
| (B) Used vivid written description and photography to expose tenement conditions to middle-class readers and build support | (C) Was commissioned by the federal government as an official housing report |
|                                                                                                                            | (D) Focused exclusively on rural farming conditions                          |

#### Lời giải chi tiết

Riis combined firsthand description and pioneering flash photography of tenement interiors to make urban poverty vivid and undeniable to readers who had never entered such buildings, helping build public momentum for housing and sanitation reform. (A) misstates the book's argument, which documented ongoing crisis, not improvement; (C) is factually incorrect – Riis was an independent journalist, not a government official; (D) is wrong, since the book focused specifically on urban tenement conditions, not rural farming. (B).

#### Bài tập luyện tập

Jane Addams's Hull House (founded 1889) is best described as:

- |                                                                                                                                                            |                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) A federal government housing agency                                                                                                                    | emerging social work profession                        |
| (B) A settlement house providing education, childcare, and social services to immigrant and working-class Chicago residents, and a training ground for the | (C) A labor union representing Chicago factory workers |
|                                                                                                                                                            | (D) A private boarding school for wealthy families     |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Hull House was a settlement house: Addams and her staff lived directly within an immigrant, working-class Chicago neighborhood and offered practical services – childcare, English instruction, healthcare referrals, and cultural programs – while training a generation of reformers in what became the professional field of social work. (A) is wrong, since Hull House was privately founded and run, not a government agency; (C) is wrong, since it was a social-service institution, not a labor organization; (D) is the opposite of Hull House's actual clientele, which was poor and working-class rather than wealthy. (B).

**6.10 Farmers and the Populist Movement****6.10.1 The Farmers' Alliance and the rise of the People's Party**

Falling crop prices (driven by global overproduction), high railroad shipping rates and discriminatory pricing, high interest rates on farm loans, and a deflationary money supply tied to the gold standard (which increased the real burden of debt as prices fell) drove deep farmer discontent across the South, Midwest, and West. Farmers organized through the **Farmers' Alliance** movement – separate Southern, Northern, and Colored Farmers' Alliances – which built cooperative buying and selling networks and political education campaigns during the 1870s and 1880s. In 1892, Alliance activists founded the **People's Party (Populist Party)**, nominating James B. Weaver for president; Weaver won over a million popular votes and 22 electoral votes across several Western states, a genuine third-party breakthrough rare in American political history.

**6.10.2 The Omaha Platform and free silver**

At its founding convention in Omaha, Nebraska in 1892, the People's Party adopted the **Omaha Platform**, calling for: the free and unlimited coinage of silver ("**free silver**") to expand the money supply and ease farmers' debt burdens; a graduated federal income tax; direct election of U.S. senators (rather than election by state legislatures); government ownership of railroads, telegraphs, and telephones; a "subtreasury" system of government-operated crop storage and low-interest loans; an eight-hour workday; and a secret ("Australian") ballot. Free silver became the platform's most politically potent demand: Populists and allied "silverites" argued that expanding the money supply through silver coinage would raise farm prices and ease debt, while conservative gold-standard advocates (concentrated among Eastern creditors and business interests) insisted only a strictly gold-backed currency preserved sound money and investor confidence.

**Theme: PCE – Politics and Power**

The Populist movement marks a rare moment in Gilded Age politics when farmers – normally politically fragmented by region – built a genuinely national coalition and a competitive third party capable of directly challenging the two-party establishment, forcing free silver, the income tax, and direct election of senators onto the national political agenda even before most of these reforms became law.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Nông dân miền Nam, Trung Tây và miền Tây chịu ảnh hưởng bởi giá nông sản giảm, cước phí đường sắt cao, lãi suất vay cao, và chế độ bản vị vàng gây giảm phát khiến nợ thực tế tăng lên. Họ tổ chức thành Farmers' Alliance rồi thành lập Đảng Nhân dân (People's Party/Populist Party) năm 1892. Cương lĩnh Omaha (1892) đòi: đúc bạc tự do (free silver) để mở rộng cung tiền, thuế thu nhập lũy tiến, bầu trực tiếp Thượng nghị sĩ, quốc hữu hóa đường sắt và điện tín, ngày làm việc 8 giờ. Ứng viên Populist James B. Weaver giành hơn 1 triệu phiếu phổ thông và 22 phiếu đại cử tri năm 1892 – một thành công hiếm có cho đảng thứ ba.

**Omaha Platform (1892), key planks:** free and unlimited coinage of silver; graduated income tax; direct election of senators; government ownership of railroads/telegraph/telephone; sub-treasury system; eight-hour workday; secret ballot. Several of these demands – the income tax (Sixteenth Amendment, 1913), direct election of senators (Seventeenth Amendment, 1913), and expanded railroad regulation – were enacted only during the following Progressive Era.

### HIPP Document Analysis: The Omaha Platform, 1892

*Excerpt (paraphrased):* The People's Party's founding platform declares that "the fruits of the toil of millions are boldly stolen to build up colossal fortunes for a few," and calls for free coinage of silver, a graduated income tax, direct election of senators, and government ownership of the railroads.

**Historical situation:** adopted at the party's founding convention amid a farm debt crisis, falling crop prices, and growing distrust of railroad corporations and Eastern banks. **Intended audience:** farmers, and to a lesser extent industrial laborers, across the South, Midwest, and West, as well as the two major parties the Populists hoped to pressure. **Purpose:** to unify agrarian discontent into a specific, actionable political program capable of winning national office. **Point of view:** written by farmer-activists and reform intellectuals (like Ignatius Donnelly) who saw concentrated corporate and financial power, not simply bad weather or overproduction, as the root cause of rural economic distress – explaining the platform's sweeping demand for direct government intervention in currency, transportation, and communication.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The Populist (People's Party) demand for the "free and unlimited coinage of silver" was primarily intended to:

- |                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Reduce the overall money supply and lower crop prices further                                                                            | (C) Eliminate paper currency entirely in favor of a barter economy                            |
| (B) Expand the money supply to raise crop prices and ease the burden of repaying debts contracted in increasingly scarce gold-backed dollars | (D) Transfer control of currency policy from the federal government to individual state banks |

### Lời giải chi tiết

Under the gold standard, a limited and slow-growing gold supply kept the money supply tight, pushing prices (including crop prices) downward and making debts contracted in dollars effectively more expensive to repay over time. Populists and silverites argued that also coining silver freely would expand the money supply, reverse deflation, raise crop prices, and ease debt burdens for indebted farmers. (A) describes the opposite of the policy's intended effect; (C) misdescribes free silver, which remained a metal-backed currency policy, not a rejection of currency itself; (D) is inaccurate, since free silver was a proposed national monetary policy administered by the federal government, not a transfer of authority to states. **(B).**

### Bài tập luyện tập

#### SAQ-style question.

(a) Briefly explain ONE specific economic grievance that drove farmers to organize the Farmers' Alliance and later the People's Party.

- (b) Briefly explain ONE major demand of the 1892 Omaha Platform.  
(c) Briefly explain ONE way the Populist movement's demands influenced later Progressive-Era reforms.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Falling crop prices caused by global overproduction, combined with high railroad shipping rates, high interest rates on farm loans, and a deflationary gold-backed currency that increased the real value of debts, left many farmers – especially in the South, Midwest, and West – in worsening financial distress.  
(b) The Omaha Platform called for the free and unlimited coinage of silver to expand the money supply and ease farm debt (other acceptable answers include a graduated income tax, direct election of senators, or government ownership of railroads and telegraphs).  
(c) Although the People's Party itself declined as an independent political force after 1896, several of its specific demands were later enacted during the Progressive Era, including the graduated federal income tax (Sixteenth Amendment, 1913) and the direct election of senators (Seventeenth Amendment, 1913).

## 6.11 Government's Role in the Economy

For most of the Gilded Age, federal economic policy operated under a *laissez-faire* ideology: the belief that government should minimize interference in private business, protecting property rights and freedom of contract rather than regulating wages, prices, or working conditions. Federal and state courts frequently reinforced this stance, striking down early state regulatory laws as violations of businesses' constitutional rights – a pattern that would intensify into the early twentieth century's "Lochner era." Even so, the period saw the first tentative steps toward federal economic regulation. Public outrage at discriminatory railroad practices (charging higher rates for short hauls than long hauls, offering secret rebates to favored shippers, and colluding through "pools" to fix prices) led Congress to pass the **Interstate Commerce Act (1887)**, creating the **Interstate Commerce Commission (ICC)** – the first independent federal regulatory agency – and requiring that railroad rates be "reasonable and just." In practice, the ICC's enforcement powers were initially weak, and federal courts often ruled in railroads' favor in the agency's early years, much as the Sherman Antitrust Act (Section 6.4) was applied only weakly against industrial trusts. Overall, government at every level in this period more often *assisted* business (through protective tariffs, railroad land grants, and the use of state militias and federal troops to suppress strikes) than it regulated business in the broader public interest – a balance that would begin shifting only in the Progressive Era.

### Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology

The Interstate Commerce Act (1887) and the Sherman Antitrust Act (1890) represent a genuine, if limited, ideological shift: the first sustained federal acknowledgment that unregulated corporate power could harm the public interest. Their weak initial enforcement, however, shows that *laissez-faire* assumptions and judicial skepticism of regulation remained dominant throughout Period 6, with more effective regulatory capacity arriving only after 1900.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Chính sách kinh tế liên bang thời Mạ Vàng chủ yếu theo tư tưởng *laissez-faire* – hạn chế can thiệp vào doanh nghiệp tư nhân. Tuy nhiên, trước áp lực công luận về giá cước đường sắt bất công, Quốc hội thông qua Đạo luật Thương mại Liên bang (Interstate Commerce Act, 1887), thành lập Ủy ban Thương mại Liên bang (ICC) – cơ quan quản lý liên bang độc lập đầu tiên – yêu cầu giá cước đường sắt phải "hợp lý và công bằng." Nhưng quyền lực thực thi ban đầu

của ICC rất yếu, tương tự Đạo luật Sherman. Nhìn chung, chính phủ thời kỳ này hỗ trợ doanh nghiệp (thuế quan bảo hộ, cấp đất cho đường sắt, dùng quân đội dẹp đình công) nhiều hơn là bảo vệ lợi ích công chúng.

**Interstate Commerce Act (1887):** created the ICC, the first independent federal regulatory agency, to police railroad rate discrimination (rebates, pooling, long-haul/short-haul pricing disparities). Along with the Sherman Antitrust Act (1890), it marked the first federal departure from pure laissez-faire economic policy – though both laws remained weakly enforced throughout Period 6.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The Interstate Commerce Act (1887) is best understood as:

- |                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) A law abolishing all railroad corporations in the United States                                                                                                         | policy                                                                     |
| (B) The first federal law creating an independent regulatory commission to police unfair railroad pricing practices, marking an early, limited departure from laissez-faire | (C) A law that immediately ended all forms of railroad rate discrimination |
|                                                                                                                                                                             | (D) A state, not federal, law applicable only in the Midwest               |

### Lời giải chi tiết

The Interstate Commerce Act created the Interstate Commerce Commission, the first permanent federal regulatory agency, to require “reasonable and just” railroad rates and curb discriminatory practices like rebates and pooling – a genuine, though initially weakly enforced, break from the government’s dominant laissez-faire stance. (A) is far too extreme – the law regulated railroads without abolishing them; (C) overstates its immediate effectiveness, since enforcement remained weak in the ICC’s early years; (D) is incorrect, since it was a federal law with nationwide application. (B).

## 6.12 Growing Tensions: Labor and Capital

### 6.12.1 The Knights of Labor and early strikes

Industrial workers faced long hours, low wages, dangerous conditions, and no legal safety net, hardships worsened by periodic depressions (the Panic of 1873 and the Panic of 1893). The **Great Railroad Strike of 1877**, sparked by wage cuts on the Baltimore & Ohio Railroad, spread spontaneously across multiple states and became the first major nationwide labor uprising in American history; state militias and federal troops, deployed by President Hayes, suppressed the strike, and dozens of workers were killed nationwide. The **Knights of Labor**, founded in 1869 and led in its peak years by Terence Powderly, grew into the era’s largest labor organization (roughly 700,000 members by 1886) by welcoming both skilled and unskilled workers, including women and Black workers, and pursuing broad reforms (the eight-hour day, an end to child labor, cooperative worker ownership) alongside immediate wage and hour demands. The **Haymarket Affair (May 1886)** – in which a bomb thrown at police during a Chicago labor rally for the eight-hour day killed several officers, followed by the conviction (on thin evidence) and execution of several anarchist labor activists – linked organized labor with violent radicalism in much public opinion, and the Knights of Labor’s membership and influence collapsed rapidly afterward.

### 6.12.2 The AFL and the strikes of the 1890s

The **American Federation of Labor (AFL)**, organized in 1886 under **Samuel Gompers**, took a markedly different approach: a federation of craft unions representing skilled workers by trade, pursuing pragmatic “bread and butter” unionism – higher wages, shorter hours, safer conditions – through collective bargaining and strikes, while deliberately avoiding broader political or socialist goals and the inclusion of unskilled labor. Major strikes in the 1890s revealed the continued imbalance of power between labor and capital. In the **Homestead Strike (1892)**, Carnegie Steel plant manager Henry Clay Frick cut wages and locked out the Amalgamated Association of Iron and Steel Workers at the Homestead, Pennsylvania plant; a violent battle with armed Pinkerton detectives hired to protect strikebreakers left several dead on both sides, and Pennsylvania state militia ultimately reopened the plant with non-union labor, crushing unionism in the steel industry for decades. In the **Pullman Strike (1894)**, workers at the Pullman Palace Car Company’s company town near Chicago – many belonging to Eugene V. Debs’s American Railway Union – struck after wage cuts were not matched by reductions in company-town rents; a nationwide sympathy boycott of Pullman cars by ARU members paralyzed rail traffic, prompting President Cleveland to obtain a federal court injunction (citing interference with mail delivery and interstate commerce) and deploy federal troops to break the strike, over the strong objections of Illinois’s governor; Debs was imprisoned, and the case (*In re Debs*) affirmed the federal government’s power to use injunctions against labor actions – a tool employers and government would use repeatedly against unions in subsequent decades.

| Feature        | Knights of Labor                                                            | American Federation of Labor (AFL)                                            |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Founded / peak | 1869; peak membership ~1886 (~700,000)                                      | 1886, under Samuel Gompers                                                    |
| Membership     | Skilled and unskilled workers, including women and Black workers            | Skilled workers only, organized by individual craft/trade                     |
| Goals          | Broad social reform: eight-hour day, end child labor, cooperative ownership | Narrower “bread and butter” goals: wages, hours, working conditions           |
| Methods        | Strikes, cooperatives, political and educational reform                     | Collective bargaining and strikes, avoided broad political/-socialist agendas |
| Fate           | Collapsed rapidly after being blamed for the Haymarket Affair (1886)        | Survived and grew into the twentieth century as the dominant labor federation |

Two contrasting labor organizing strategies of the Gilded Age.

#### Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology

The shift from the Knights of Labor’s broad, inclusive reform vision to the AFL’s narrower craft-based pragmatism reflects organized labor’s adaptation to a hostile political and legal environment: after Haymarket discredited broad-based labor radicalism in public opinion, and after Homestead and Pullman demonstrated that state and federal power would side with employers in major confrontations, the AFL’s narrower, less confrontational strategy proved more durable, even though it left unskilled and immigrant workers largely unorganized.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Công nhân công nghiệp làm việc nhiều giờ, lương thấp, điều kiện nguy hiểm. Đình công đường sắt lớn năm 1877 là cuộc nổi dậy lao động toàn quốc đầu tiên. Knights of Labor (thành lập

1869) thu nhận cả lao động có tay nghề lẫn không tay nghề, phụ nữ và người da đen, nhưng suy sụp sau vụ Haymarket (1886) khi bị đổ lỗi oan cho bạo lực. American Federation of Labor (AFL, 1886, do Samuel Gompers lãnh đạo) chỉ tổ chức lao động có tay nghề theo từng ngành nghề, theo đuổi mục tiêu thực dụng hơn (lương, giờ làm). Đỉnh công Homestead (1892, ngành thép của Carnegie) và đỉnh công Pullman (1894, ngành đường sắt, do Eugene Debs lãnh đạo) đều bị đàn áp bằng lực lượng vũ trang/tòa án liên bang, cho thấy chính phủ thường đứng về phía giới chủ.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not confuse the **Homestead Strike (1892)** with the **Pullman Strike (1894)**. Homestead involved the *steel* industry, Carnegie Steel's plant manager Henry Clay Frick, and violence against private *Pinkerton* guards, broken by *state militia*. Pullman involved the *railroad* industry, Eugene V. Debs's American Railway Union, a nationwide boycott rather than a single-plant lockout, and was broken by a *federal court injunction* and *federal troops* sent by President Cleveland – a distinction (state militia vs. federal injunction/troops) that exam questions frequently test directly.

**Major Gilded Age labor conflicts:** Great Railroad Strike (1877, first nationwide strike, federal troops deployed) → Haymarket Affair (1886, discredits the Knights of Labor) → Homestead Strike (1892, steel, Pinkertons, state militia) → Pullman Strike (1894, railroads, federal injunction and troops, *In re Debs*). In nearly every major confrontation, state or federal government power ultimately sided with employers against striking workers.

### Bài tập luyện tập

The rapid decline of the Knights of Labor after 1886 is best explained by:

- |                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) The Knights of Labor voluntarily disbanding after achieving all of its stated goals                                                                                   | the eyes of much of the public                                                                         |
| (B) Public opinion linking the organization (unfairly, in the case of most members) to the violence of the Haymarket Affair, discrediting broad-based labor organizing in | (C) A federal law banning all labor unions outright                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | (D) The Knights of Labor's decision to admit only skilled workers, alienating its unskilled membership |

### Lời giải chi tiết

Although the Knights of Labor was not directly responsible for the Haymarket bombing, public opinion broadly associated organized labor – and the Knights of Labor specifically, since the rally was tied to the movement's eight-hour-day campaign – with the anarchist violence, causing membership and public support to collapse rapidly in the following years. (A) is false, since none of the Knights' major goals (the eight-hour day nationally, abolition of child labor) had been achieved by 1886; (C) is false, since no such outright federal ban on unions existed; (D) reverses the truth – the Knights' inclusive membership of skilled and unskilled workers was a distinguishing strength, not a cause of its decline (that description instead fits the more exclusive AFL). (B).

### Bài tập luyện tập

Which of the following accurately distinguishes the Pullman Strike (1894) from the Homestead Strike (1892)?

- (A) The Pullman Strike was broken primarily through a federal court injunction and the deployment of federal troops, while the Homestead Strike involved a violent clash with private Pinkerton guards and was broken by state militia
- (B) The Homestead Strike involved railroad workers, while the Pullman Strike involved steelworkers
- (C) The Pullman Strike ended in a decisive victory for the American Railway Union
- (D) Neither strike involved any government intervention

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The Pullman Strike's resolution turned on federal legal power – a court injunction obtained by the Cleveland administration (upheld in *In re Debs*) and the deployment of federal troops over the Illinois governor's objections – while the Homestead Strike centered on a violent confrontation between striking steelworkers and Pinkerton private security agents, ultimately broken by Pennsylvania state militia. (B) reverses the industries involved; (C) is false, since the ARU's boycott and the strike were decisively defeated, and Debs was imprisoned; (D) is false, since both strikes involved significant government or quasi-governmental intervention (state militia at Homestead, federal courts and troops at Pullman). (A).

**6.13 Continuity and Change: The Election of 1896**

By the mid-1890s, amid the severe economic depression following the **Panic of 1893**, the Populist Party sought to expand its influence through “fusion” with the Democratic Party around the shared issue of free silver. At the 1896 Democratic National Convention, **William Jennings Bryan** electrified delegates with his “**Cross of Gold**” speech, denouncing the gold standard and declaring that mankind should not be crucified “upon a cross of gold”; Democrats nominated Bryan for president, and the Populist Party, though wary of being absorbed, endorsed him as well rather than split the anti-gold-standard vote. Republicans nominated **William McKinley**, whose campaign, expertly managed and heavily financed by businessman Marcus (“Mark”) Hanna, defended the gold standard and protective tariffs as guarantors of stability and prosperity, and reached voters through a modern, well-funded “front porch” campaign contrasted with Bryan’s exhausting cross-country speaking tour. McKinley won decisively, running especially strong in the urban, industrial Northeast and Midwest, ushering in a period of Republican political dominance that lasted, with one interruption, until 1932. The election effectively marked the end of the Populist Party as an independent national political force – but not the end of its ideas: the graduated income tax, direct election of senators, and expanded railroad and business regulation would all become law within a generation, absorbed into the mainstream reform agenda of the Progressive Era. As the Gilded Age closed in 1898, the Spanish-American War would turn American attention toward a new role as an overseas power, even as the underlying tensions of industrial capitalism, labor conflict, urban inequality, and racial injustice that had defined Period 6 remained unresolved.

**Theme: WOR – America in the World**

McKinley’s 1896 victory did more than settle a domestic currency debate: it confirmed a Republican, pro-business, gold-standard political coalition that would also preside over the United States’ emergence as an overseas imperial power after the Spanish-American War of 1898, linking Gilded Age industrial capitalism directly to the nation’s expanding role in world affairs in the following period.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Trong bối cảnh Đại Suy thoái 1893, Đảng Populist tìm cách liên minh (“fusion”) với Đảng Dân chủ quanh vấn đề đúc bạc tự do. William Jennings Bryan, với bài diễn văn “Cross of Gold” nổi tiếng tại Đại hội Dân chủ 1896, được cả hai đảng đề cử. Đảng Cộng hòa đề cử William McKinley, được nhà tài phiệt Mark Hanna tài trợ và tổ chức chiến dịch tranh cử hiện đại, bảo vệ bản vị vàng và thuế quan bảo hộ. McKinley thắng cử áp đảo, mở ra thời kỳ Đảng Cộng hòa thống trị chính trường Mỹ kéo dài đến 1932, đồng thời đánh dấu sự suy tàn của Đảng Populist như một lực lượng chính trị độc lập – dù nhiều đòi hỏi cải cách của họ sau này được thực hiện trong Thời kỳ Tiến bộ (Progressive Era).

**Election of 1896:** William McKinley (Republican, gold standard, protective tariffs, backed by Mark Hanna) defeated William Jennings Bryan (Democrat/Populist fusion, free silver, “Cross of Gold” speech). Result: Republican political dominance for a generation; effective end of the Populist Party as an independent force; many Populist reforms later enacted during the Progressive Era.

## SAQ Model Outline: The Election of 1896 as Continuity and Change

**Prompt:** (a) Briefly explain ONE way the Election of 1896 represented continuity with earlier Gilded Age politics. (b) Briefly explain ONE way it represented a change from earlier Gilded Age politics. (c) Briefly explain ONE long-term consequence of McKinley’s victory.

**Model answer (a):** The election continued the Gilded Age pattern of major-party politics generally favoring business interests and the gold standard over structural economic reform, with McKinley’s campaign – like most Gilded Age Republican politics – closely aligned with industrial and financial elites such as Mark Hanna.

**Model answer (b):** Unlike earlier Gilded Age elections, which rarely turned on a single sharply defined economic issue, 1896 became a decisive referendum on the currency question (gold vs. free silver) and saw a major party (the Democrats) directly absorb a third-party insurgency (the Populists) rather than simply competing against it.

**Model answer (c):** McKinley’s victory secured Republican political dominance for a generation (interrupted only by Woodrow Wilson’s presidency, 1913–1921) and marked the effective end of the Populist Party as an independent political force, even as several of its specific proposals were later enacted during the Progressive Era.

## Bài tập luyện tập

William Jennings Bryan’s “Cross of Gold” speech at the 1896 Democratic National Convention primarily argued that:

- |                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) The gold standard should be strengthened and free silver abandoned entirely                                                                      | (C) The United States should abandon currency backed by precious metals altogether |
| (B) The gold standard placed an unjust burden on ordinary debtors, especially farmers, and should be replaced or supplemented by free silver coinage | (D) Labor unions, not currency policy, were the central issue of the 1896 campaign |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Bryan's speech argued passionately that the gold standard's deflationary effects crushed ordinary debtors – especially indebted farmers – and that mankind should not be “crucified upon a cross of gold,” making the case for free silver coinage as a way to expand the currency supply and ease debt burdens. (A) states the opposite of Bryan's actual position; (C) overstates his proposal, which called for bimetallism (gold and silver together), not abandoning metal-backed currency; (D) is incorrect, since the 1896 campaign centered specifically on the currency question, not labor organizing. **(B)**.

**Bài tập luyện tập****SAQ-style question.**

- (a) Briefly explain ONE reason the Populist Party chose to endorse Democrat William Jennings Bryan in 1896 rather than run its own separate candidate.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE reason William McKinley's campaign proved successful in 1896.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way the outcome of the 1896 election shaped American politics over the following generation.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Because the Populist Party's core demand for free silver overlapped closely with Bryan's Democratic platform, Populist leaders judged that endorsing Bryan (fusion) offered a better chance of enacting free silver than splitting the anti-gold-standard vote between two separate candidates.
- (b) McKinley's campaign, expertly organized and heavily funded by Mark Hanna, ran a modern, well-financed “front porch” campaign defending the gold standard and protective tariffs as sources of stability, appealing successfully to urban workers and business interests especially in the Northeast and Midwest.
- (c) McKinley's decisive victory secured Republican dominance of national politics for a generation (broken only by Wilson's presidency, 1913–1921) and marked the effective end of the Populist Party as an independent political force, even though several of its specific reforms were later enacted during the Progressive Era.

## Period 7 --- The Rise of Modern America (1890--1945)

**Mục tiêu Unit:** Trình bày đầy đủ các tranh luận về chủ nghĩa đế quốc Mỹ cuối thế kỷ XIX (Chiến tranh Mỹ–Tây Ban Nha 1898, Chiến tranh Philippines–Mỹ, Tu chính án Platt, chính sách Mở cửa ở Trung Quốc, Hệ quả Roosevelt); phân tích phong trào Cấp tiến (Progressive) – các nhà báo phanh phui (muckrakers), chống độc quyền, và bốn Tu chính án 16–19; giải thích nguyên nhân Mỹ tham chiến Thế chiến I, Mười bốn Điểm của Wilson, Hoà ước Versailles và việc Thượng viện bác bỏ Hội Quốc Liên; nắm vững đời sống hậu phương thời chiến (Đạo luật Nghĩa vụ Quân sự, tuyên truyền CPI, Đạo luật Gián điệp/Nổi loạn, Đại Di cư); trình bày đổi mới công nghệ và các tranh cãi văn hoá–chính trị thập niên 1920 (dây chuyền lắp ráp Ford, radio, Nỗi sợ Đỏ, hạn chế nhập cư, Cấm rượu, phiên toà Scopes, Phục hưng Harlem); phân tích nguyên nhân Đại Khủng hoảng, phản ứng hạn chế của Hoover, và đánh giá hiệu quả Chính sách Kinh tế Mới (New Deal) của Roosevelt qua ba trụ cột Cứu trợ–Phục hồi–Cải cách cùng các chỉ trích từ cánh tả lẫn cánh hữu; giải thích chính sách đối ngoại biệt lập thời hậu chiến (Đạo luật Trung lập, Chính sách Láng giềng Tốt) và quá trình huy động, chiến đấu của Mỹ trong Thế chiến II (Trận Châu Cảng, giam giữ người Mỹ gốc Nhật, D-Day, bom nguyên tử) cùng ngoại giao hậu chiến (Yalta, Potsdam, thành lập Liên Hợp Quốc) – cầu nối sang Period 8.

### 7.1 Contextualizing Period 7

Between 1890 and 1945 the United States transformed from an inward-looking, primarily agrarian republic into an industrial and military superpower with global reach. The 1890 census officially declared the continental frontier closed, and American industrial output, already the world's largest by 1900, pushed policymakers and businesses to look outward for new markets, raw materials, and coaling stations for a modernizing navy. At home, the same industrial consolidation that produced immense wealth also produced immense inequality, unsafe workplaces, corrupt urban political machines, and unregulated food and drug markets – grievances that fueled the Progressive movement. The shocks of the twentieth century's first half then arrived in rapid succession: a world war (1914–1918) that pulled the United States from neutrality into a decisive military and diplomatic role; a decade of consumer prosperity and cultural conflict (the 1920s); the most severe economic collapse in American history (the Great Depression, beginning 1929); an unprecedented peacetime expansion of federal power (the New Deal); and a second world war (1941–1945) that ended the Depression, mobilized the entire society and economy, and left the United States as one of two dominant global powers alongside the Soviet Union – the starting point for Period 8.

#### Theme: NAT – National Identity

Period 7 is defined by a recurring national argument over the proper scope of American power, both at home and abroad: should the federal government actively regulate the economy and provide social protections (the Progressive and New Deal answer), or should it defer to individual initiative and free markets (the answer of many in the 1920s and of Hoover)? Should the United States project military and economic power overseas (imperialism, WWI, WWII), or remain aloof from “foreign entanglements” (anti-imperialism, isolationism, the Neutrality Acts)? By 1945 the expansive answer had won on both fronts, permanently enlarging the

federal government's domestic role and the nation's international commitments.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Giai đoạn 1890–1945 chứng kiến nước Mỹ chuyển mình từ một quốc gia nông nghiệp hướng nội thành siêu cường công nghiệp và quân sự toàn cầu. Đóng cửa biên giới lục địa (theo điều tra dân số 1890) cùng sản lượng công nghiệp khổng lồ thúc đẩy Mỹ tìm kiếm thị trường và ảnh hưởng ở nước ngoài. Trong nước, bất bình đẳng và điều kiện lao động tồi tệ do công nghiệp hoá gây ra làm bùng nổ phong trào Cấp tiến. Period 7 xoay quanh câu hỏi lớn: chính phủ liên bang nên can thiệp kinh tế-xã hội đến mức nào, và Mỹ nên tham gia thế giới đến đâu? Đến năm 1945, sau Thế chiến I, Đại Khủng hoảng, New Deal và Thế chiến II, câu trả lời đã nghiêng hẳn về hướng can thiệp và tham gia toàn cầu tích cực – đặt nền cho Chiến tranh Lạnh ở Period 8.

## 7.2 Debates over American Imperialism

### 7.2.1 The Spanish-American War and the Philippine-American War

Yellow-press sensationalism over Spanish repression of a Cuban independence rebellion, combined with the mysterious explosion that sank the battleship **USS Maine** in Havana harbor (February 1898), pushed a reluctant President McKinley toward war. The **Spanish-American War** (April–August 1898) was brief and lopsided: American forces, including Theodore Roosevelt's volunteer "Rough Riders," defeated Spain in both Cuba and the Philippines within months. The **Treaty of Paris** (December 1898) ended formal Spanish colonial rule in the hemisphere, granting Cuba nominal independence while ceding **Puerto Rico**, **Guam**, and the **Philippines** to the United States in exchange for a \$20 million payment to Spain. Filipino revolutionaries under Emilio Aguinaldo, who had fought alongside the United States expecting independence, instead found themselves annexed; the resulting **Philippine-American War** (1899–1902) was longer, bloodier, and far more brutal than the war with Spain, involving guerrilla warfare, scorched-earth counterinsurgency tactics, and civilian concentration ("reconcentration") camps that killed several hundred thousand Filipinos before resistance was suppressed.

### 7.2.2 The anti-imperialist debate

Acquisition of an overseas empire provoked sharp domestic controversy. The **Anti-Imperialist League** (founded 1898), whose members included Mark Twain, Andrew Carnegie, and former president Grover Cleveland, argued that ruling foreign peoples without their consent contradicted the Declaration of Independence's principle of government by consent, risked entangling the United States in costly overseas wars, and – as some members argued on frankly racist grounds – threatened to absorb non-white populations into the American body politic. Imperialists, including McKinley, Roosevelt, and Senator Albert Beveridge, countered with arguments blending economic interest (new markets for American industry), strategic necessity (naval coaling stations, a stronger navy along the lines Alfred Thayer Mahan had urged), and a paternalistic, often racist sense of civilizing duty toward peoples imperialists considered incapable of self-government. Congress ultimately ratified the Treaty of Paris by a single vote in 1899.

### 7.2.3 The Platt Amendment and the Open Door in China

Even where the United States did not formally annex territory, it asserted broad control. The **Platt Amendment** (1901), imposed as a condition of American withdrawal from occupied Cuba and written into the Cuban constitution, limited Cuba's ability to make foreign treaties or contract debt, guaranteed the United States a permanent naval base at **Guantanamo Bay**, and reserved an American right to intervene militarily to preserve Cuban "independence" – making Cuba a protectorate in practice. In Asia, where European powers and Japan were carving China into exclusive spheres of

influence, Secretary of State **John Hay** issued the **Open Door notes** (1899–1900), asking other powers to preserve equal trading access to China for all nations (including the United States) and, after the anti-foreign **Boxer Rebellion** (1900) was suppressed by an international force including American troops, to respect China's territorial and administrative integrity. The Open Door was never a binding treaty, but it articulated an enduring principle of American Asia policy: access without direct colonization.

### 7.2.4 The Roosevelt Corollary, Big Stick diplomacy, and the Panama Canal

President Theodore Roosevelt summarized his approach to foreign affairs with the proverb “speak softly and carry a big stick,” favoring a strong, visible navy (the “Great White Fleet,” sent on a world tour 1907–1909) as the surest guarantee of American interests. In 1903, after Colombia's senate refused to ratify a canal treaty, Roosevelt supported a Panamanian secessionist revolt, quickly recognized the new nation of Panama, and secured rights to build the **Panama Canal**, completed in 1914 – a decade-long engineering achievement that cut sailing time between the Atlantic and Pacific dramatically and cemented American naval and commercial power in the hemisphere. In 1904, citing chronic financial instability and the risk of European intervention in the Dominican Republic, Roosevelt announced the **Roosevelt Corollary** to the Monroe Doctrine: rather than merely warning Europe away from the Western Hemisphere (the Monroe Doctrine's original 1823 purpose), the United States now claimed the right to act as an “international police power,” intervening directly in Latin American nations' finances and internal affairs to preempt European intervention. Roosevelt's successors, Taft (“dollar diplomacy,” substituting American investment for the “big stick”) and Wilson (who nonetheless intervened militarily in Mexico, Haiti, and the Dominican Republic), continued asserting extensive American influence throughout the Caribbean Basin.

#### Theme: WOR – America in the World

American expansion after 1898 combined formal colonialism (annexation of the Philippines, Puerto Rico, Guam), informal empire (protectorates like Cuba under the Platt Amendment, repeated interventions in the Caribbean and Central America under the Roosevelt Corollary), and open-access commercial diplomacy (the Open Door in China) – three distinct tools serving the same underlying goal of expanding American economic and strategic reach without necessarily annexing every territory outright.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Chiến tranh Mỹ–Tây Ban Nha (1898) giúp Mỹ giành Philippines, Puerto Rico, Guam qua Hoà ước Paris; Cuba được “độc lập” trên danh nghĩa. Chiến tranh Philippines–Mỹ (1899–1902) đổ máu hơn nhiều vì quân nổi dậy Philippines chiến đấu chống chính sự đô hộ của Mỹ. Liên đoàn Chống Đế quốc (Anti-Imperialist League) phản đối việc cai trị dân tộc khác mà không có sự đồng thuận của họ. Tu chính án Platt (1901) biến Cuba thành vùng bảo hộ với căn cứ hải quân Guantanamo. Chính sách Mở cửa (Open Door, 1899–1900) của Ngoại trưởng John Hay bảo vệ quyền tiếp cận thương mại bình đẳng ở Trung Quốc. Hệ quả Roosevelt (1904) mở rộng Học thuyết Monroe, cho phép Mỹ can thiệp tài chính–nội bộ các nước Mỹ Latinh; kênh đào Panama (hoàn thành 1914) củng cố sức mạnh hải quân Mỹ.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Students routinely blur together the **Monroe Doctrine** (1823), the **Roosevelt Corollary** (1904), and “**Big Stick**” diplomacy. The original Monroe Doctrine only warned European powers *not* to colonize or intervene further in the Western Hemisphere – it did not claim any American right to intervene in Latin American nations' internal affairs. The Roosevelt Corollary *added* exactly that claim: the United States could act as hemispheric “police power,” intervening in the internal finances and politics of Latin American states to preempt European intervention. “Big Stick” diplomacy is the broader Rooseveltian style (backing diplomacy with

visible naval force) that the Corollary exemplifies. Do not describe the 1823 Monroe Doctrine itself as authorizing U.S. intervention – that authorization only arrives with the 1904 Corollary.

## 7.3 The Progressive Movement

### 7.3.1 Muckrakers and the origins of reform

Progressive reform grew out of investigative journalism exposing the abuses of an unregulated industrial economy. **Upton Sinclair's** novel *The Jungle* (1906), intended to dramatize the exploitation of immigrant meatpacking workers, instead shocked readers – and President Roosevelt – with its descriptions of contaminated meat, prompting passage of the **Pure Food and Drug Act** and the **Meat Inspection Act** (both 1906). Other “muckrakers” (a label Roosevelt applied, half-critically) included Ida Tarbell, whose exposé of Standard Oil's ruthless business practices bolstered antitrust sentiment, Jacob Riis, whose photography documented tenement poverty in *How the Other Half Lives* (1890), and Lincoln Steffens, who chronicled municipal political corruption in *The Shame of the Cities* (1904).

### 7.3.2 Trust-busting and Progressive presidents

Theodore Roosevelt (1901–1909) styled himself a “trust-buster,” using the Sherman Antitrust Act to break up the Northern Securities Company (1904) and other combinations he judged harmful to the public interest, while distinguishing between “good” and “bad” trusts as part of his broader **Square Deal** program of consumer protection, railroad regulation (Hepburn Act, 1906), and conservation (expanding national forests and parks). William Howard Taft (1909–1913), though he initiated more antitrust suits than Roosevelt, alienated progressives by supporting a higher tariff and firing conservationist Gifford Pinchot, prompting Roosevelt to challenge him in 1912 as the candidate of a new Progressive (“Bull Moose”) Party – a split that handed the election to Democrat Woodrow Wilson. Wilson's **New Freedom** program pursued reform through renewed antitrust enforcement (the **Clayton Antitrust Act**, 1914, which exempted labor unions from antitrust prosecution), a new regulatory agency (the **Federal Trade Commission**, 1914), and a fundamental reform of the banking system (the **Federal Reserve Act**, 1913, creating a decentralized central banking system to stabilize currency and credit).

### 7.3.3 Amendments and democratic reform

Progressives pursued structural, constitutional change alongside regulatory reform. The **Sixteenth Amendment** (1913) authorized a federal income tax, giving Washington a stable, elastic revenue source independent of tariffs. The **Seventeenth Amendment** (1913) replaced state-legislature selection of U.S. senators with direct popular election, a response to widespread corruption in legislative selection. The **Eighteenth Amendment** (ratified 1919, effective January 1920) prohibited the manufacture, sale, and transportation of alcoholic beverages, the culmination of decades of temperance activism led by groups like the Woman's Christian Temperance Union and the Anti-Saloon League. The **Nineteenth Amendment** (1920) guaranteed women the right to vote nationwide, the capstone of a suffrage movement stretching back to Seneca Falls (1848) and led in its final decades by Carrie Chapman Catt's National American Woman Suffrage Association and Alice Paul's more confrontational National Woman's Party. At the state and local level, Progressives championed direct democracy (initiative, referendum, and recall), the direct primary, workplace safety and child-labor laws, and municipal reforms (commission and city-manager government) intended to weaken corrupt political machines.

**Chronology – the Progressive Amendments (1913–1920):**

- **16th Amendment (1913)** – authorizes a federal income tax.
- **17th Amendment (1913)** – direct popular election of U.S. senators.
- **18th Amendment (ratified 1919, effective Jan. 1920)** – national Prohibition of alcohol.
- **19th Amendment (1920)** – nationwide women's suffrage.

All four ratified within a single seven-year span – the fastest sustained burst of constitutional amendment since the Bill of Rights – reflecting the Progressive Era's twin faith in expert-driven federal power (16th) and expanded, purified democratic participation (17th, 19th), with the 18th standing as its most explicitly moralistic reform.

| Level           | Typical reforms                                                                                   | Examples                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Federal         | Antitrust enforcement, consumer/food safety, banking and tariff reform, constitutional amendments | Pure Food and Drug Act (1906), Federal Reserve Act (1913), Clayton Antitrust Act (1914), 16th/17th/18th/19th Amendments                       |
| State           | Labor and safety regulation, direct democracy, election reform                                    | Workplace safety and child-labor laws, initiative/referendum/recall, direct primary elections, women's suffrage in western states before 1920 |
| Local/municipal | Anti-corruption government restructuring, social welfare                                          | Commission and city-manager government, settlement houses (e.g., Jane Addams's Hull House), municipal utility regulation                      |

Progressive reforms operated simultaneously at the federal, state, and local level.

**HIPP document analysis – Upton Sinclair, *The Jungle* (1906)**

**Excerpt:** “There would be meat that had tumbled out on the floor, in the dirt and sawdust, where the workers had tramped and spit uncounted billions of consumption germs... and thousands of rats would race about on it... a man could run his hand over these piles of meat and sweep off handfuls of the dried dung of rats.”

**Historical situation:** Published in 1906 following Sinclair's undercover investigation of Chicago's meatpacking industry, during a period of rapid, largely unregulated industrial consolidation and heavy reliance on immigrant factory labor.

**Point of view:** Sinclair, a committed socialist, primarily intended the novel to expose the exploitation of immigrant workers; that its greatest public impact instead concerned consumer food safety reveals how audiences can seize on an unintended aspect of a source.

**Purpose:** To provoke public outrage and, ultimately, government regulation of an industry Sinclair believed placed profit above both worker welfare and public health.

**Significance:** Public revulsion, and President Roosevelt's own reaction, directly produced the Pure Food and Drug Act and Meat Inspection Act of 1906 – landmark federal consumer-protection legislation and an early, clear demonstration of muckraking journalism's power to drive Progressive Era reform.

**LEQ thesis model**

**Prompt:** “Evaluate the extent to which Progressive Era reforms (1900–1917) expanded democracy in the United States.”

**Model thesis:** Progressive Era reforms substantially expanded democratic participation and government accountability – through the Seventeenth Amendment’s direct election of senators, the Nineteenth Amendment’s extension of suffrage to women, and state-level tools like the initiative, referendum, and recall – because reformers directly targeted the corrupt intermediaries (state legislatures, political machines) that had long insulated officeholders from popular control; yet this expansion remained incomplete and uneven, since Progressive reform coexisted with, and in the South was often used to justify, the near-total disenfranchisement of Black voters through poll taxes, literacy tests, and grandfather clauses that Progressive-era “reform” rhetoric did little to challenge.

**Theme: PCE – Politics and Power**

Progressive reform pursued the same underlying goal through two complementary tracks: regulatory reform (antitrust enforcement, consumer-protection law, the Federal Reserve and Federal Trade Commission) constrained corporate power, while constitutional and procedural reform (the Sixteenth through Nineteenth Amendments, direct democracy tools) constrained corrupt or unaccountable political power – together marking the first sustained expansion of federal and popular authority over the modern industrial economy.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Các nhà báo phanh phui (muckrakers) như Upton Sinclair (*The Jungle*), Ida Tarbell, Jacob Riis phơi bày mặt trái công nghiệp hoá, thúc đẩy Đạo luật Thực phẩm và Dược phẩm Tinh khiết (1906). Theodore Roosevelt theo đuổi Square Deal và chống độc quyền; Taft tiếp tục chống độc quyền nhưng mất lòng phe Cấp tiến; Wilson thực hiện New Freedom (Đạo luật Dự trữ Liên bang 1913, Đạo luật Chống độc quyền Clayton 1914). Bốn Tu chính án 16 (thuế thu nhập), 17 (bầu trực tiếp Thượng nghị sĩ), 18 (Cấm rượu), 19 (quyền bầu cử phụ nữ) định hình lại thể chế Mỹ trong giai đoạn 1913–1920.

**SAQ model outline**

**Prompt:** Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE way muckraking journalism directly influenced federal legislation in the early twentieth century.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way in which Theodore Roosevelt’s and Woodrow Wilson’s approaches to trust regulation differed.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way the Seventeenth Amendment changed American political institutions.

**Model answers:**

- (a) Upton Sinclair’s *The Jungle* (1906) exposed unsanitary meatpacking conditions so vividly that public outrage pushed Congress to pass the Pure Food and Drug Act and Meat Inspection Act that same year, directly translating investigative journalism into federal consumer-protection law.
- (b) Roosevelt distinguished between “good” and “bad” trusts and selectively prosecuted only the latter (as with Northern Securities), while Wilson’s New Freedom sought to restore competitive markets more broadly through the Clayton Antitrust Act and a new Federal Trade Commission empowered to police unfair business practices on an ongoing basis.

(c) The Seventeenth Amendment (1913) replaced state-legislature selection of U.S. senators with direct popular election, removing a major source of legislative corruption and making senators directly accountable to voters rather than to state party bosses.

## 7.4 World War I: Military and Diplomacy

When war erupted in Europe in August 1914, President Wilson declared American neutrality, though extensive trade and loans to the Allied powers (especially Britain and France) left that neutrality increasingly one-sided in practice. Germany's use of **unrestricted submarine warfare** – attacking merchant and passenger vessels without warning – brought the war home directly: the German sinking of the British liner **Lusitania** (May 1915) killed nearly 1,200 people, including 128 Americans, provoking a diplomatic crisis that led Germany to temporarily suspend the practice. Facing stalemate, Germany resumed unrestricted submarine warfare in January 1917, gambling that it could starve Britain into surrender before American entry could matter. That same winter, British intelligence intercepted and revealed the **Zimmermann Telegram**, in which Germany's foreign secretary proposed a military alliance with Mexico – promising Mexico the return of Texas, New Mexico, and Arizona – should the United States enter the war; public outrage at this proposal, combined with the submarine campaign and the March 1917 overthrow of Russia's tsar (which let Wilson frame the war as a fight for democracy rather than an alliance with an autocracy), led Congress to declare war on Germany on **April 6, 1917**.

Wilson articulated American war aims in his **Fourteen Points** address to Congress (January 1918), calling for open diplomacy, freedom of the seas, free trade, self-determination for European nationalities, and, as a capstone, a **League of Nations** to prevent future wars through collective security. At the Paris Peace Conference, however, Wilson's idealism collided with the territorial and financial demands of Britain and France, producing a **Treaty of Versailles** (signed June 1919) that imposed harsh reparations and a "war guilt" clause on Germany while establishing the League largely on Wilson's terms. The treaty's fate in the United States turned on the Senate. Senator Henry Cabot Lodge led "reservationists" who would ratify only with amendments limiting the League's ability to draw the United States into future foreign wars without congressional consent, while a smaller group of "irreconcilables" opposed the League outright; Wilson, weakened by a debilitating stroke in October 1919, refused to compromise, and the Senate rejected the treaty in votes in November 1919 and March 1920. The United States never joined the League of Nations and made a separate peace with Germany in 1921 – a consequential retreat from Wilson's vision of permanent American leadership in a new collective-security order.

### Theme: WOR – America in the World

The Senate's rejection of the Treaty of Versailles and League membership illustrates a recurring constitutional tension in American foreign policy: the president negotiates treaties, but the Senate's two-thirds ratification requirement gives a determined legislative minority effective veto power over even a popular president's diplomatic achievements – a tension that resurfaces throughout the twentieth century whenever presidents seek binding international commitments.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Mỹ giữ trung lập khi Thế chiến I bùng nổ (1914) nhưng nghiêng về phe Hiệp ước qua thương mại. Vụ đắm tàu Lusitania (1915) và chiến tranh tàu ngầm không hạn chế của Đức, cùng Điện tín Zimmermann (đề nghị liên minh với Mexico) khiến Mỹ tuyên chiến tháng 4/1917. Mười bốn Điểm của Wilson (1918) đề xuất Hội Quốc Liên bảo đảm an ninh tập thể. Hoà ước Versailles (1919) áp đặt bồi thường nặng nề lên Đức nhưng Thượng viện Mỹ, do Henry Cabot Lodge dẫn

đầu, hai lần bác bỏ hoà ước (1919, 1920) – Mỹ không bao giờ gia nhập Hội Quốc Liên.

#### HIPP document analysis – Woodrow Wilson, “Fourteen Points” address (January 8, 1918)

**Excerpt:** “What we demand in this war... is that the world be made fit and safe to live in... An general association of nations must be formed under specific covenants for the purpose of affording mutual guarantees of political independence and territorial integrity to great and small states alike.”

**Historical situation:** Delivered to Congress in January 1918, while the war continued in Europe and shortly after Russia’s new Bolshevik government had published secret Allied treaties revealing territorial ambitions Wilson wished to distance the United States from.

**Point of view:** Wilson speaks as a wartime president seeking to define idealistic, principled American war aims distinct from what he portrayed as the cynical territorial bargains of the European Allied powers.

**Purpose:** To rally domestic and Allied support around a vision of a just postwar peace, and to offer Germany terms that might encourage an earlier negotiated end to the war.

**Significance:** The Fourteen Points, especially Point Fourteen’s call for a League of Nations, shaped the Paris Peace Conference’s agenda, but the final Treaty of Versailles diverged sharply from Wilson’s idealism, and the Senate’s subsequent rejection of League membership left the League’s most influential architect on the outside of his own creation.

## 7.5 World War I: The Home Front

Mobilizing for total war required unprecedented federal intervention in American economic and civic life. The **Selective Service Act** (May 1917) required men to register for a military draft, ultimately inducting roughly 2.8 million men into an army that reached nearly 4 million by the armistice. The government financed the war chiefly through the sale of **Liberty Bonds** and **war bonds**, backed by patriotic advertising campaigns, celebrity endorsements, and door-to-door canvassing that framed bond purchases as a civic duty. The **Committee on Public Information** (CPI), led by journalist George Creel, coordinated an enormous propaganda campaign – posters, films, and “Four-Minute Men” delivering short patriotic speeches in theaters – to build enthusiasm for the war and cast Germans as barbaric “Huns.” This campaign for conformity had a coercive edge: the **Espionage Act** (1917) and **Sedition Act** (1918) criminalized interference with the draft and, far more broadly, criticism of the government, the war effort, or the military; Socialist Party leader Eugene V. Debs was imprisoned under the Espionage Act for an antiwar speech, and the Supreme Court’s **Schenck v. United States** (1919) decision upheld such restrictions, with Justice Oliver Wendell Holmes articulating the “clear and present danger” test for when speech loses First Amendment protection.

Wartime labor demand, combined with the near-total halt of European immigration and a sharp reduction in the agricultural workforce, opened industrial jobs in Northern and Midwestern cities to Black Southerners for the first time at scale, launching the **Great Migration**: roughly half a million African Americans moved north and west between 1916 and the early 1920s (with a much larger second wave to follow during and after World War II), reshaping the demographics of cities like Chicago, Detroit, and New York even as newcomers still faced housing discrimination, job segregation, and, in some cities, violent white backlash. Women, too, took on new roles in war-related industries, and their visible wartime contributions strengthened the final push for the Nineteenth Amendment.

**Theme: MIG – Migration and Settlement**

The Great Migration, beginning during World War I and accelerating dramatically during World War II, represents one of the largest internal migrations in American history: wartime industrial labor shortages pulled African Americans out of the Jim Crow South toward Northern and Midwestern cities, permanently reshaping the nation's racial and political geography and laying groundwork for the twentieth-century civil rights struggle in cities far from the traditional South.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Đạo luật Nghĩa vụ Quân sự (1917) huy động khoảng 2,8 triệu lính. Chính phủ tài trợ chiến tranh qua trái phiếu chiến tranh (Liberty Bonds) và tuyên truyền của Ủy ban Thông tin Công cộng (CPI, George Creel). Đạo luật Gián điệp (1917) và Đạo luật Nổi loạn (1918) hình sự hoá chỉ trích chính phủ; vụ *Schenck v. United States* (1919) đưa ra tiêu chuẩn “nguy hiểm rõ ràng và hiện hữu.” Nhu cầu lao động công nghiệp thời chiến khởi động Đại Di cư (Great Migration): khoảng nửa triệu người Mỹ gốc Phi rời miền Nam lên các thành phố công nghiệp phía Bắc.

**SAQ model outline**

**Prompt:** Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE way the federal government mobilized public opinion in support of American participation in World War I.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way the Espionage and Sedition Acts limited civil liberties during World War I.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE long-term consequence of the Great Migration that began during World War I.

**Model answers:**

- (a) The Committee on Public Information, led by George Creel, produced posters, films, and “Four-Minute Men” speeches designed to generate voluntary enthusiasm for the war effort and encourage bond purchases and enlistment.
- (b) The Espionage Act (1917) and Sedition Act (1918) criminalized criticism of the government, the draft, or the war effort, leading to the imprisonment of dissenters such as Socialist leader Eugene Debs and the Supreme Court’s endorsement of such restrictions in *Schenck v. United States* (1919).
- (c) The wartime Great Migration permanently reshaped the demographics of Northern and Midwestern cities, creating large, politically significant Black urban communities whose descendants would become central to the twentieth-century Civil Rights Movement and to national electoral politics.

**7.6 1920s: Innovations in Communication and Technology**

The 1920s brought a genuine consumer revolution built on new industrial and communications technology. Henry Ford’s introduction of the moving **assembly line** at his Highland Park plant (1913) slashed the time needed to build a Model T and, combined with a relatively high \$5-per-day wage (1914) designed partly to reduce ruinous worker turnover, drove the car’s price down from roughly \$850 in 1908 to under \$300 by the mid-1920s, putting automobile ownership within reach of many working- and middle-class families for the first time. Mass automobile ownership reshaped the built environment – paved roads, gas stations, motels, suburbs – and related industries (steel, rubber, glass, oil) expanded alongside it. Commercial **radio** broadcasting began with Pittsburgh station KDKA in 1920 and spread rapidly, creating for the first time a genuinely national, simultaneous audience

for news, advertising, sports, and entertainment. **Installment buying** (“buy now, pay later”) let consumers purchase cars, radios, and household appliances on credit rather than saving in advance, fueling a decade of rising consumption – but also building fragile, debt-financed prosperity that would prove dangerously exposed when the economy turned in 1929.

**Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology**

Ford’s assembly line exemplifies how a single manufacturing innovation can ripple outward to reshape an entire economy and society: standardized mass production lowered the Model T’s price enough to create a genuine mass consumer market, which in turn financed suburban growth, an oil and highway economy, and a national advertising and credit industry – while installment buying extended consumer purchasing power beyond what wages alone could support, a structural vulnerability that contributed to the fragility of 1920s prosperity.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Dây chuyền lắp ráp của Henry Ford (từ 1913) giảm mạnh giá xe Model T, biến ô tô thành hàng tiêu dùng đại chúng. Radio thương mại (đài KDKA, 1920) tạo ra khán giả toàn quốc lần đầu tiên. Hình thức mua trả góp (installment buying) cho phép người dân mua xe, radio, đồ gia dụng bằng tín dụng – thúc đẩy tiêu dùng nhưng cũng tạo ra nền kinh tế dựa vào nợ dễ tổn thương, một yếu tố góp phần vào Đại Khủng hoảng sau này.

## 7.7 1920s: Cultural and Political Controversies

### 7.7.1 The Red Scare and immigration restriction

Fear of Bolshevism after Russia’s 1917 revolution, combined with a wave of postwar labor strikes and a series of 1919 anarchist bombings (including one at the home of Attorney General A. Mitchell Palmer), produced a first **Red Scare** (1919–1920). Palmer, aided by a young J. Edgar Hoover, launched the **Palmer Raids**, arresting thousands of suspected radicals, many of them immigrants, often without warrants, and deporting hundreds; the era’s anxieties culminated in the highly controversial 1920–1927 trial and 1927 execution of Italian immigrant anarchists **Sacco and Vanzetti** for robbery and murder, a case many historians believe reflected as much anti-immigrant and anti-radical prejudice as solid evidence. This same nativist anxiety drove sweeping immigration restriction: the **Emergency Quota Act** (1921) and especially the **National Origins Act** (1924, also called the Johnson-Reed Act) established strict numerical quotas based on national-origin populations recorded in the 1890 census – deliberately favoring Northern and Western Europe and sharply curtailing immigration from Southern and Eastern Europe – while excluding Asian immigration almost entirely.

### 7.7.2 Prohibition, the Scopes Trial, and religious-cultural conflict

The Eighteenth Amendment’s **Prohibition**, intended to eliminate the social ills associated with alcohol, instead created a vast black market: bootlegging, speakeasies, and organized crime (most famously Al Capone’s Chicago operation) flourished, enforcement proved chronically underfunded and inconsistent, and public respect for the law itself eroded; Prohibition was ultimately repealed by the **Twenty-First Amendment** in 1933. Cultural conflict between traditional religious values and modern science reached a symbolic climax in the **Scopes Trial** (1925), when Tennessee prosecuted public-school teacher John Scopes for violating a state law banning the teaching of evolution; the trial, pitting famed defense attorney Clarence Darrow against three-time presidential candidate and biblical literalist William Jennings Bryan for the prosecution, became a national media spectacle epitomizing the decade’s tension between rural, Protestant fundamentalism and urban, secular modernism. Scopes was convicted (on a technicality later overturned), but the trial did lasting damage to fundamentalism’s public image.

### 7.7.3 The Harlem Renaissance, nativism, and changing gender roles

The Great Migration's concentration of Black artistic and intellectual talent in New York's Harlem neighborhood produced the **Harlem Renaissance**, a flowering of African American literature, music, and visual art – writers like Langston Hughes and Zora Neale Hurston, musicians like Duke Ellington, and a self-consciously assertive “New Negro” cultural identity that celebrated Black heritage and challenged racist stereotypes even as jazz, born of Black musical traditions, became the decade's defining popular sound (giving the era its nickname, the “Jazz Age”). Nativism was not confined to immigration law: a dramatically revived **Ku Klux Klan**, reorganized in 1915 and at its peak in the mid-1920s claiming several million members concentrated as much in the Midwest as the South, targeted Catholics, Jews, and immigrants alongside Black Americans, wielding real electoral influence in some states before a series of scandals discredited its national leadership. Amid this conflict, many young urban women – **flappers** – adopted shorter skirts, bobbed hair, and more open public drinking and socializing, symbolizing (if not always substantively achieving) newly assertive social and sexual independence following suffrage, even as such changes provoked considerable backlash from social conservatives.

#### Theme: ARC – American and Regional Culture

The Harlem Renaissance and the Jazz Age reveal how African American cultural production, rooted directly in the demographic shift of the Great Migration, became central rather than peripheral to mainstream 1920s American culture – jazz's popularity across racial lines coexisted uneasily with the same decade's resurgent nativism and racial violence, illustrating that cultural influence and continued social/political exclusion could advance simultaneously.

#### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

The 1920s exhibit sharp social contradictions: expanding consumer freedoms and modestly loosening gender norms (flappers, greater public visibility for women) coexisted with organized backlash against immigrants, religious minorities, and Black Americans (the revived Klan, restrictive quotas) and with intensified enforcement of moral conformity (Prohibition) – a decade of genuine cultural modernization matched by an equally real, organized reaction against it.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Nỗi sợ Đỏ (Red Scare, 1919–20) dẫn đến các cuộc bố ráp Palmer, và Đạo luật Hạn ngạch Quốc gia (National Origins Act, 1924) áp đặt hạn ngạch nhập cư ưu tiên Bắc/Tây Âu, gần như loại trừ người châu Á. Cấm rượu (Prohibition) thất bại vì nạn buôn lậu và tội phạm có tổ chức (Al Capone), bị bãi bỏ năm 1933. Phiên tòa Scopes (1925) là biểu tượng xung đột giữa tôn giáo bảo thủ và khoa học hiện đại. Phục hưng Harlem tôn vinh văn hoá người Mỹ gốc Phi (Langston Hughes, nhạc jazz), trong khi đảng Ku Klux Klan hồi sinh mạnh mẽ nhắm vào người Công giáo, Do Thái, người nhập cư và người da đen. Phụ nữ trẻ thành thị (“flappers”) thể hiện lối sống độc lập hơn sau khi có quyền bầu cử.

#### LEQ thesis model

**Prompt:** “Evaluate the extent to which the 1920s represented a decade of cultural conflict rather than cultural consensus in the United States.”

**Model thesis:** The 1920s were defined far more by cultural conflict than consensus, as urban, secular, and increasingly diverse modernism (the Harlem Renaissance, jazz culture, flappers, immigrant urban communities) collided directly with a traditionalist backlash rooted in rural and small-town Protestant America (the Scopes Trial, Prohibition enforcement, the revived Ku Klux Klan, and the National Origins Act's restriction of “undesirable” immigrants); although

a shared consumer culture – automobiles, radio, national advertising – did unite Americans across these divides in patterns of everyday consumption, it did little to resolve their deeper disagreements over religion, race, immigration, and gender norms.



Timeline: imperialism, Progressivism, World War I, and the 1920s, 1898–1929.

## 7.8 The Great Depression

Several structural weaknesses converged to end 1920s prosperity. Speculative stock buying “on margin” (borrowing most of a stock’s purchase price) inflated share prices well beyond the real earning power of the underlying companies; when confidence broke, the market collapsed on “Black Thursday” (October 24, 1929) and especially “Black Tuesday” (October 29, 1929), wiping out enormous paper wealth almost overnight. The crash exposed deeper problems: chronic **overproduction** in both agriculture and industry had outpaced consumer demand for years, while deeply unequal income distribution and heavy reliance on installment credit left ordinary consumers unable to sustain spending once confidence collapsed. Thousands of undercapitalized banks, operating with no deposit insurance, failed as panicked depositors rushed to withdraw savings, wiping out both individual savings and the credit banks might otherwise have extended to businesses; over 9,000 banks failed between 1930 and 1933 alone. The **Smoot-Hawley Tariff** (1930), intended to protect American industry, instead provoked retaliatory tariffs abroad that further strangled international trade. By 1933, unemployment had reached roughly **25 percent** of the workforce, industrial production had fallen by nearly half, and “**Hoovervilles**” – shantytowns of the homeless and dispossessed, named derisively for the president – appeared in cities nationwide.

President Herbert Hoover, committed to a philosophy of “rugged individualism” and voluntary cooperation between business and government, resisted direct federal relief to individuals as a threat to self-reliance and the constitutional limits of federal power, though he did eventually support the **Reconstruction Finance Corporation** (1932), which extended loans to banks, railroads, and other large institutions in the hope that recovery would “trickle down” to ordinary Americans – a strategy widely judged too limited and too slow. Hoover’s presidency suffered a final, damaging blow in summer 1932, when roughly 15,000 unemployed World War I veterans and their families – the **Bonus Army** – marched on Washington to demand early payment of a bonus promised for 1945; Hoover ordered the army, under General Douglas MacArthur (with junior officers Dwight Eisenhower and George Patton participating), to forcibly clear their encampment with tanks, tear gas, and bayonets, producing images of the U.S. Army attacking its own veterans that devastated Hoover’s already-battered public standing heading into the 1932 election.

### Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology

The Great Depression’s causes were structural, not merely psychological: overproduction and underconsumption (workers and farmers lacked the purchasing power to buy what an increasingly efficient industrial and agricultural economy produced), an unregulated and highly leveraged financial system (margin buying, uninsured bank deposits), and contractionary policy responses (the Smoot-Hawley Tariff, a tight-money Federal Reserve) combined to turn a serious stock market correction into a decade-long global economic catastrophe.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Đại Khủng hoảng bắt nguồn từ đầu cơ chứng khoán bằng vay ký quỹ (buying on margin), sản xuất dư thừa trong khi thu nhập người lao động không tăng tương xứng, và hệ thống ngân hàng không có bảo hiểm tiền gửi. Thị trường sụp đổ vào tháng 10/1929 (“Ngày thứ Năm/Ba Đen tối”); hơn 9.000 ngân hàng phá sản 1930–33; thất nghiệp đạt khoảng 25% năm 1933. Tổng thống Hoover theo triết lý “tự lực cánh sinh,” chỉ hỗ trợ gián tiếp qua Reconstruction Finance Corporation (1932). Việc quân đội giải tán “Đạo quân Tiền thưởng” (Bonus Army, hè 1932) bằng vũ lực làm sụp đổ hoàn toàn uy tín Hoover.

(!) **Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not describe Hoover as having done *nothing* in response to the Depression, and do not describe FDR’s New Deal as the first federal economic intervention. Hoover *did* act – raising the Smoot-Hawley Tariff, creating the Reconstruction Finance Corporation to lend to banks and businesses – but he consistently rejected *direct* federal relief payments to unemployed individuals and resisted large-scale deficit spending, believing voluntary business cooperation and indirect, “trickle-down” lending would restore confidence. FDR’s New Deal differed not by inventing federal intervention outright, but by dramatically expanding its scale and reorienting it toward *direct* relief, federal jobs programs, and structural reform of the financial system – a difference of degree and philosophy, not the difference between action and total inaction.

## 7.9 The New Deal

### 7.9.1 FDR, the Hundred Days, and Relief–Recovery–Reform

Franklin D. Roosevelt’s landslide 1932 victory reflected a decisive national repudiation of Hoover’s approach. In his first inaugural address (March 1933), Roosevelt famously declared that “the only thing we have to fear is fear itself,” and he used radio “**fireside chats**” throughout his presidency to explain his programs directly to the public and rebuild confidence in government and the banking system. During the intense legislative burst known as the **Hundred Days** (March–June 1933), Congress enacted a wave of emergency legislation organized loosely around three goals: **Relief** (immediate aid to the suffering), **Recovery** (restarting economic activity), and **Reform** (structural changes to prevent future collapse).

### 7.9.2 The First New Deal (1933–1934)

Roosevelt’s first priority was stabilizing the banking system: an immediate **Emergency Banking Act** and a national “bank holiday” closed banks briefly for federal inspection, and the **Glass-Steagall Act** (1933) separated commercial from investment banking and created the **Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC)** to insure individual bank deposits, ending the bank-run panics that had destroyed public confidence. Relief programs put people directly to work: the **Civilian Conservation Corps (CCC)** employed young men on conservation projects (reforestation, trail-building, flood control), and the **Public Works Administration (PWA)** funded large-scale infrastructure construction. Recovery programs targeted core industries: the **Agricultural Adjustment Act (AAA)** paid farmers to reduce crop production and livestock herds, aiming to raise crippled agricultural prices (though it was later struck down as unconstitutional in *United States v. Butler*, 1936, and replaced by a revised second AAA in 1938); the **National Industrial Recovery Act** created the **National Recovery Administration (NRA)**, which set industry-wide codes for fair wages, prices, and competition and guaranteed workers’ right to organize under Section 7(a) (the NRA was struck down as an unconstitutional delegation of legislative power in *Schechter Poultry Corp. v. United States*, 1935). The **Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA)**, 1933) built dams and power plants to bring electricity, flood control, and economic development to one of the nation’s poorest regions.

### 7.9.3 The Second New Deal (1935–1938) and its critics

Continued mass unemployment, a 1934 midterm election that strengthened Democratic majorities, and mounting pressure from populist critics pushed Roosevelt toward a more labor- and security-focused “**Second New Deal**” beginning in 1935. The **Works Progress Administration (WPA)** employed millions in construction, arts, and clerical projects. The **National Labor Relations Act** (the **Wagner Act**, 1935) guaranteed workers’ right to organize unions and bargain collectively and created the National Labor Relations Board to enforce it, dramatically strengthening organized labor. The **Social Security Act** (1935) created old-age pensions funded by payroll taxes, unemployment insurance, and aid to dependent children and the disabled – establishing, for the first time, a permanent federal social-insurance safety net. Roosevelt faced criticism from both directions: from the left, Louisiana Senator **Huey Long’s** “**Share Our Wealth**” program demanded much more aggressive redistribution of income (a guaranteed minimum income funded by steep taxes on the wealthy) before his 1935 assassination, radio priest **Father Charles Coughlin** shifted from early support to bitter denunciation of the New Deal as insufficiently radical, and Dr. Francis Townsend promoted a generous old-age pension plan; from the right, business-oriented critics organized in the **American Liberty League** denounced New Deal programs as an unconstitutional, “socialistic” expansion of federal power that threatened free enterprise. When the conservative Supreme Court struck down the NRA and AAA, Roosevelt responded in 1937 with a controversial “**court-packing**” plan (the Judicial Procedures Reform Bill), proposing to add up to six additional justices to a Court he considered obstructionist; the plan failed badly in Congress, seen even by many allies as a dangerous overreach against judicial independence, though the Court soon began upholding subsequent New Deal legislation regardless (the so-called “switch in time that saved nine”).

| Aspect               | First New Deal (1933–1934)                                      | Second New Deal (1935–1938)                                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary focus        | Immediate relief and industrial/agricultural recovery           | Longer-term structural reform and economic security               |
| Key programs         | FERA, CCC, PWA (relief); NRA, AAA (recovery)                    | WPA (relief); Wagner Act, Social Security Act (reform)            |
| Approach to business | Sought cooperative industry codes with business (NRA)           | More adversarial toward business; stronger pro-labor stance       |
| Constitutional fate  | NRA and original AAA struck down by the Supreme Court (1935–36) | Wagner Act and Social Security Act upheld by the Court after 1937 |

Comparing the First and Second New Deal, 1933–1938.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** The **NRA**, **AAA**, and **WPA** are among the most commonly confused New Deal acronyms. The **National Recovery Administration (NRA)** set industry-wide codes of fair competition, wages, and prices for *manufacturing and business* – it was struck down in *Schechter Poultry v. United States* (1935). The **Agricultural Adjustment Administration (AAA)** paid *farmers* to reduce production and raise crop and livestock prices – its funding mechanism was struck down in *United States v. Butler* (1936). The **Works Progress Administration (WPA)**, a Second New Deal program, directly *employed* millions of unemployed Americans on public construction and arts projects – it was never struck down and remained a Second New Deal relief cornerstone through the late 1930s. If a prompt or document concerns industrial codes, think **NRA**; if it concerns farm prices or crop reduction, think **AAA**; if it concerns direct government employment on public projects, think **WPA**.

**HIPP document analysis – FDR, Fireside Chat on the Banking Crisis (March 12, 1933)**

**Excerpt:** “I can assure you that it is safer to keep your money in a reopened bank than under the mattress... After all, there is an element in the readjustment of our financial system more important than currency, more important than gold, and that is the confidence of the people... Together we cannot fail.”

**Historical situation:** Delivered by radio just days after Roosevelt’s inauguration and the declaration of a national “bank holiday,” amid a collapse in public confidence that had produced runs on banks nationwide.

**Point of view:** Roosevelt speaks directly and informally to ordinary Americans in their homes, deliberately adopting a reassuring, conversational tone distinct from more formal presidential rhetoric.

**Purpose:** To restore public trust in the banking system ahead of banks’ reopening, persuading depositors to keep their savings in banks rather than withdrawing them, which would have deepened the crisis.

**Significance:** The fireside chat succeeded immediately – deposits reportedly exceeded withdrawals when banks reopened – and established both a durable model of direct presidential communication with the public and the psychological foundation on which the rest of the New Deal’s rapid legislative program was built.

**DBQ/LEQ thesis and outline model**

**Prompt:** “Evaluate the extent to which the New Deal fundamentally transformed the role of the federal government in American economic life.”

**Model thesis:** The New Deal fundamentally and permanently transformed the federal government’s role in the American economy, establishing durable institutions – federal deposit insurance, Social Security, protected collective bargaining, and securities regulation – that no subsequent administration has fully dismantled, even though the New Deal did not end the Depression outright (unemployment remained above 14 percent as late as 1937) and its most aggressive recovery mechanisms, the NRA and original AAA, were struck down by the Supreme Court.

**Supporting outline:**

*Paragraph 1 (Reform – lasting structural change):* Glass-Steagall/FDIC, the Wagner Act, and the Social Security Act created permanent federal roles in banking regulation, labor relations, and social insurance that persisted for the rest of the century.

*Paragraph 2 (Relief – expanded direct federal employment):* The CCC and WPA normalized direct federal employment of citizens on a mass scale, a role the federal government had never before played in peacetime.

*Paragraph 3 (Complicating/limits):* Recovery proper remained incomplete until wartime spending after 1941, and the Supreme Court’s invalidation of the NRA and AAA, plus the failure of court-packing, show real constitutional limits on New Deal ambitions.

**Theme: PCE – Politics and Power**

The New Deal permanently redefined the relationship between federal political power and the economy: before 1933, the federal government played essentially no role in banking insurance, labor organizing rights, or old-age and unemployment security; by 1938, Washington had claimed a durable, ongoing regulatory and social-welfare role that neither Hoover’s limited interventionism nor pre-Depression constitutional understandings had previously accepted as legitimate federal authority.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

FDR triển khai New Deal theo ba trụ cột: Cứu trợ (Relief) – CCC, WPA tạo việc làm trực tiếp; Phục hồi (Recovery) – NRA (quy tắc công nghiệp, bị Tòa án Tối cao bác năm 1935), AAA (giảm sản lượng nông nghiệp, bị bác năm 1936); Cải cách (Reform) – Đạo luật Glass-Steagall/FDIC (bảo hiểm tiền gửi), Đạo luật Wagner (quyền công đoàn, 1935), Đạo luật An sinh Xã hội (1935, hưu trí và bảo hiểm thất nghiệp). New Deal thứ hai (1935 trở đi) tập trung vào lao động và an sinh nhiều hơn. Chỉ trích đến từ cánh tả (Huey Long, Cha Coughlin) đòi cải cách mạnh hơn, và cánh hữu (American Liberty League) coi đó là chủ nghĩa xã hội. Kế hoạch “court-packing” (1937) của FDR nhằm bổ sung thẩm phán Tòa án Tối cao thất bại tại Quốc hội.

**7.10 Interwar Foreign Policy**

The Senate’s rejection of the League of Nations set the tone for two decades of American reluctance to accept binding overseas military commitments. As fascist and militarist regimes in Germany, Italy, and Japan grew more aggressive during the 1930s, Congress – reflecting widespread public conviction that financiers and arms manufacturers had dragged the country into World War I for profit (a view popularized by the 1934–36 Senate “Nye Committee” hearings) – passed a series of **Neutrality Acts** (1935, 1936, 1937) banning the sale of arms and the extension of loans to belligerent nations, regardless of which side had been attacked, in a deliberate effort to avoid the entanglements that had preceded 1917. Toward Latin America, by contrast, Franklin Roosevelt pursued a more cooperative course: his **Good Neighbor Policy** (announced 1933) formally renounced the U.S. right to unilateral military intervention that the Roosevelt Corollary had claimed, withdrew Marines from occupied Haiti and Nicaragua, and emphasized reciprocal trade and non-intervention – improving, at least temporarily, hemispheric relations even as the United States retained substantial economic influence throughout the region.

**Theme: WOR – America in the World**

Interwar foreign policy reveals a United States torn between hard-won isolationist caution (the Neutrality Acts, reflecting disillusionment with WWI’s outcome) and a more selective, cooperative internationalism closer to home (the Good Neighbor Policy) – a combination that left the country underprepared, diplomatically and militarily, for the aggression of Germany and Japan later in the decade.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Sau khi Thượng viện bác bỏ Hội Quốc Liên, Mỹ theo đuổi chủ nghĩa biệt lập (isolationism) suốt thập niên 1930. Các Đạo luật Trung lập (1935–37) cấm bán vũ khí và cho vay các bên tham chiến, phản ánh niềm tin rằng giới tài phiệt đã kéo Mỹ vào Thế chiến I vì lợi nhuận. Ngược lại, Chính sách Láng giềng Tốt (Good Neighbor Policy, 1933) của FDR từ bỏ quyền can thiệp quân sự đơn phương ở Mỹ Latinh, rút quân khỏi Haiti và Nicaragua, cải thiện quan hệ khu vực.

**7.11 World War II: Mobilization****7.11.1 The arsenal of democracy**

Even before formal entry into the war, Roosevelt moved to support Britain and, after June 1941, the Soviet Union against Germany. The **Lend-Lease Act** (March 1941) authorized the president to lend or lease war materiel to any nation whose defense he deemed vital to American security, allowing the United States to supply the Allies with weapons, food, and equipment without directly entering combat – what Roosevelt called serving as the “**arsenal of democracy**.” Pearl Harbor (December 1941) then triggered total economic mobilization: the **War Production Board** coordinated the conversion of civilian industry (automobile factories retooled to build tanks and aircraft) to mil-

itary production, rationing controlled consumption of scarce goods (rubber, gasoline, meat, sugar), and massive government spending combined with full wartime employment to finally end the Great Depression, which a decade of New Deal programs alone had not fully accomplished.

### 7.11.2 Women, migration, and civil liberties

Wartime labor shortages, as roughly 16 million American men entered military service, drew women into industrial jobs on a scale and in occupations previously closed to them, symbolized by the propaganda figure “**Rosie the Riveter**”; roughly six million women entered the paid workforce during the war, many in unionized, well-paid manufacturing jobs, though most faced pressure to leave those positions once the war ended. The wartime demand for industrial labor also dramatically accelerated the **Great Migration**, as several million African Americans moved to war-production cities in the North, Midwest, and West Coast, even as many faced continued discrimination in housing and employment; civil rights leaders pursued a “**Double V**” campaign, demanding victory over fascism abroad and over racism at home simultaneously. Wartime civil liberties, however, were severely and unevenly restricted. Citing military necessity after Pearl Harbor, Roosevelt signed **Executive Order 9066** (February 19, 1942), authorizing the forced removal and confinement of roughly **120,000 Japanese Americans** – nearly two-thirds of them native-born U.S. citizens – from West Coast military zones into remote internment camps, based solely on ancestry and without individualized evidence of disloyalty; German Americans and Italian Americans faced far more limited, individualized restrictions by comparison. In **Korematsu v. United States** (1944), the Supreme Court upheld the internment program as a legitimate wartime military necessity, a decision widely condemned by later generations of legal scholars and formally repudiated in spirit by the federal government’s 1988 Civil Liberties Act, which issued an official apology and reparations payments to surviving internees.

| Aspect                      | WWI home front (1917–1918)                                            | WWII home front (1941–1945)                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Financing the war           | Liberty Bonds; modest new income taxation                             | War bonds on a far larger scale; broadly expanded income taxation and withholding                                 |
| Propaganda/opinion          | Committee on Public Information (Creel); Four-Minute Men              | Office of War Information; posters (“Rosie the Riveter”); Hollywood war films                                     |
| Civil-liberties restriction | Espionage/Sedition Acts targeted antiwar <i>speech and dissent</i>    | Executive Order 9066 targeted an entire <i>ethnic group</i> (Japanese Americans) without individualized suspicion |
| Effect on migration/labor   | Great Migration begins (roughly 500,000 African Americans move North) | Great Migration accelerates sharply; roughly 6 million women enter the paid workforce                             |

Comparing home-front mobilization in the two world wars.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Do not treat WWI-era and WWII-era civil-liberties restrictions as interchangeable, even though both involved serious violations. The **Espionage Act (1917)** and **Sedition Act (1918)** targeted *speech and political dissent* – criticizing the government or the war effort – regardless of a speaker’s ethnicity, and were upheld in *Schenck v. United States* (1919) under a “clear and present danger” standard. **Executive Order 9066 (1942)** targeted an entire *ethnic and ancestry group* – Japanese Americans, most of them citizens – with no individualized evidence or charge of wrongdoing at all, and was upheld in *Korematsu v. United States* (1944). On the exam, if a prompt concerns punishment for antiwar *statements*, think Espionage/Sedition Acts; if it concerns mass confinement based on *ancestry alone*, think Executive Order 9066 and *Korematsu*.

**HIPP document analysis – Executive Order 9066 (February 19, 1942)**

**Excerpt:** “Whereas the successful prosecution of the war requires every possible protection against espionage and against sabotage... I hereby authorize and direct the Secretary of War... to prescribe military areas... from which any or all persons may be excluded...”

**Historical situation:** Signed just over two months after the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbor, amid intense public fear of a follow-up attack or sabotage on the West Coast and longstanding anti-Japanese prejudice in California and the Pacific states.

**Point of view:** Roosevelt issues the order as commander in chief citing military necessity, though no West Coast Japanese American was ever convicted of espionage or sabotage before or during the war.

**Purpose:** To authorize the military to remove and confine persons of Japanese ancestry from designated West Coast zones, ostensibly to prevent espionage and sabotage.

**Significance:** The order led to the forced removal and internment of roughly 120,000 Japanese Americans, upheld by the Supreme Court in *Korematsu v. United States* (1944); it stands as one of the starkest twentieth-century examples of wartime civil-liberties violations based purely on ancestry, later condemned by Congress in the 1988 Civil Liberties Act.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Đạo luật Lend-Lease (3/1941) cho phép Mỹ viện trợ vũ khí cho Đồng minh trước khi chính thức tham chiến – “kho vũ khí của nền dân chủ.” Sau Trân Châu Cảng, kinh tế Mỹ chuyển hoàn toàn sang sản xuất chiến tranh, chấm dứt Đại Khủng hoảng. Phụ nữ gia nhập lực lượng lao động công nghiệp (biểu tượng “Rosie the Riveter”), khoảng 6 triệu người. Đại Di cư tăng tốc mạnh khi người Mỹ gốc Phi chuyển đến các thành phố công nghiệp. Sắc lệnh 9066 (2/1942) buộc khoảng 120.000 người Mỹ gốc Nhật (2/3 là công dân Mỹ) vào trại giam giữ chỉ vì nguồn gốc sắc tộc; vụ *Korematsu v. United States* (1944) của Tòa án Tối cao xác nhận tính hợp hiến của chính sách này – một quyết định bị lên án rộng rãi sau này.

**SAQ model outline**

**Prompt:** Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

(a) Briefly explain ONE way World War II mobilization changed the role of women in the American workforce.

(b) Briefly explain ONE way World War II mobilization affected the Great Migration.

(c) Briefly explain ONE way the internment of Japanese Americans reflected wartime civil-liberties restriction distinct from World War I-era restrictions.

**Model answers:**

(a) Wartime labor shortages, as millions of men entered the armed forces, opened well-paid industrial and manufacturing jobs to roughly six million women for the first time at scale, symbolized by the “Rosie the Riveter” propaganda campaign, though most women faced pressure to leave these jobs once the war ended.

(b) Wartime demand for industrial labor in Northern, Midwestern, and West Coast war-production centers sharply accelerated the Great Migration begun during World War I, drawing several million African Americans out of the South despite continued housing and employment discrimination in their new cities.

(c) Unlike the Espionage and Sedition Acts, which targeted individuals for antiwar *speech*, Executive Order 9066 authorized the mass confinement of an entire *ethnic group* – Japanese Americans, most of them U.S. citizens – without any individualized evidence of disloyalty, a restriction the Supreme Court upheld in *Korematsu v. United States* (1944).

**Theme: SOC – Social Structures**

World War II mobilization temporarily but significantly disrupted prewar social structures on the home front: women took on industrial roles previously reserved for men, and African Americans gained new (if still contested and unequal) economic footholds in Northern and Western war-production cities – disruptions that did not fully reverse after 1945 and that fed directly into the postwar Civil Rights Movement and later feminist movements covered in Period 8.

**7.12 World War II: Fighting the War**

Japan's surprise attack on the U.S. Pacific Fleet at **Pearl Harbor, Hawaii (December 7, 1941)** killed roughly 2,400 Americans and destroyed or damaged much of the battleship fleet; Congress declared war on Japan the next day, and Germany and Italy, honoring their alliance with Japan, declared war on the United States on December 11, bringing the United States fully into a two-theater global war. In the **Pacific theater**, the U.S. Navy's decisive victory at the **Battle of Midway (June 1942)** destroyed four Japanese aircraft carriers and reversed Japan's naval initiative, after which American forces pursued a costly "island-hopping" strategy toward Japan, including the ferociously contested battles of Iwo Jima and Okinawa in early 1945. In the **European theater**, Allied forces cleared North Africa (1942–1943) and invaded Italy (1943) before launching the war's largest amphibious assault, the Normandy landings of **D-Day (June 6, 1944)**, opening a decisive Western front against Germany; after repelling a final major German counteroffensive (the Battle of the Bulge, December 1944), Allied and Soviet forces converged on Germany, which surrendered in May 1945 (V-E Day). Japan fought on until the United States dropped atomic bombs on **Hiroshima (August 6, 1945)** and **Nagasaki (August 9, 1945)**, the only use of nuclear weapons in warfare, killing well over 100,000 people immediately and tens of thousands more from radiation and injury in subsequent months; Japan announced its surrender on August 15, 1945 (V-J Day), formally signed September 2, 1945, ending the deadliest conflict in human history.

**Theme: GEO – Geography and the Environment**

World War II's two simultaneous theaters – the vast Pacific Ocean, where "island-hopping" had to overcome enormous distances between strategically vital but geographically tiny islands, and continental Europe, where D-Day required a massive cross-Channel amphibious assault before any land campaign could proceed – demanded fundamentally different logistical and strategic solutions, illustrating how geography itself shaped American military strategy at the highest level.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Nhật Bản tấn công bất ngờ Trân Châu Cảng (7/12/1941) kéo Mỹ vào Thế chiến II toàn diện. Ở Thái Bình Dương, chiến thắng tại Midway (6/1942) là bước ngoặt, dẫn đến chiến thuật "nhảy đảo." Ở châu Âu, cuộc đổ bộ D-Day (6/6/1944) tại Normandy mở mặt trận phía Tây quyết định; Đức đầu hàng 5/1945. Mỹ thả bom nguyên tử xuống Hiroshima (6/8/1945) và Nagasaki (9/8/1945); Nhật đầu hàng ngày 15/8/1945, chính thức ký ngày 2/9/1945, kết thúc Thế chiến II.

**SAQ model outline**

**Prompt:** Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

(a) Briefly explain ONE reason the Battle of Midway (June 1942) is considered a turning point in the Pacific theater.

(b) Briefly explain ONE reason D-Day (June 1944) was strategically significant to the outcome of the war in Europe.

(c) Briefly explain ONE argument historians have made for or against the decision to use atomic bombs against Japan in August 1945.

**Model answers:**

(a) The U.S. Navy's victory at Midway destroyed four Japanese aircraft carriers and much of Japan's most experienced naval air power, permanently shifting naval initiative in the Pacific to the United States and enabling the subsequent island-hopping offensive.

(b) D-Day opened a major Western front in continental Europe for the first time since 1940, forcing Germany to fight simultaneously against Soviet forces advancing from the east and Allied forces advancing from the west, fatally dividing German military resources.

(c) Supporters argue the bombings ended the war quickly and avoided the enormous American and Japanese casualties a full invasion of Japan would likely have caused; critics argue Japan was already near surrender, that the bombings mainly targeted civilians, and that alternative approaches (a demonstration bombing, or awaiting Soviet entry into the Pacific war) might have ended the war without those specific human costs.



Timeline: Depression, New Deal, and World War II, 1929–1945.

### 7.13 Postwar Diplomacy

As victory in Europe approached, the “Big Three” Allied leaders met to plan the postwar order. At the **Yalta Conference** (February 1945), an ailing Roosevelt, Winston Churchill, and Joseph Stalin agreed on the division of Germany (and Berlin) into occupation zones, secured a Soviet commitment to enter the war against Japan within three months of Germany's defeat, and issued a Declaration on Liberated Europe promising free elections in Soviet-occupied Eastern European nations – a promise Stalin would not honor, planting the seeds of postwar Soviet-American distrust. Roosevelt died on April 12, 1945, and Vice President **Harry Truman** succeeded him just weeks before Germany's surrender. At the **Potsdam Conference** (July–August 1945), Truman, a considerably more suspicious negotiator than Roosevelt, met Stalin and (after Britain's wartime coalition government lost a general election mid-conference) new British Prime Minister Clement Attlee to finalize German occupation and demilitarization arrangements and to issue an ultimatum demanding Japan's unconditional surrender, which Japan initially rejected – a rejection that preceded the atomic bombings of Hiroshima and Nagasaki weeks later. Even as wartime cooperation frayed, the Allied powers followed through on their shared commitment to build a stronger successor to the failed League of Nations: delegates from fifty nations meeting in San Francisco (April–June 1945) drafted and signed the **United Nations Charter** (June 26, 1945), creating a General Assembly for broad international deliberation and a Security Council, with five permanent veto-holding members (the United States, the Soviet Union, Britain, France, and China), empowered to authorize collective action against threats to peace. The United States, unlike after World War I, joined the United Nations without serious domestic opposition – a decisive break from interwar isolationism that set the stage for the Cold War rivalry and global leadership role explored in Period 8.

#### Theme: WOR – America in the World

The contrast between the Senate's 1919–1920 rejection of the League of Nations and the United States' enthusiastic, near-unanimous embrace of United Nations membership in 1945

marks one of the clearest turning points in twentieth-century American foreign policy: World War II convinced a decisive American political consensus that permanent international leadership and institutional commitment, not renewed isolation, best protected national security – a consensus that would define American Cold War strategy for the following half-century.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Hội nghị Yalta (2/1945) giữa Roosevelt, Churchill, Stalin thống nhất chia vùng chiếm đóng Đức và cam kết Liên Xô tham chiến chống Nhật, cùng lời hứa bầu cử tự do ở Đông Âu – lời hứa Stalin không thực hiện. Roosevelt qua đời 12/4/1945, Truman kế nhiệm. Hội nghị Potsdam (7–8/1945) hoàn tất kế hoạch chiếm đóng Đức và ra tối hậu thư buộc Nhật đầu hàng vô điều kiện. Hiến chương Liên Hợp Quốc được ký tại San Francisco (26/6/1945), thành lập Đại hội đồng và Hội đồng Bảo an với 5 thành viên thường trực có quyền phủ quyết. Khác với sau Thế chiến I, lần này Mỹ gia nhập tổ chức quốc tế mới mà không gặp phản đối lớn trong nước – mở đường cho vai trò lãnh đạo toàn cầu của Mỹ trong Chiến tranh Lạnh (Period 8).

**7.14 Practice: Period 7 review****Câu 1 (7.1)**

“By 1945, the debates that had once separated Progressive reformers from their critics – over the proper scope of federal power at home and America’s role abroad – had been resolved decisively in favor of an expansive answer on both fronts.” This statement is best supported by which of the following developments between 1890 and 1945?

- |                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) The rejection of the Treaty of Versailles and continued strict isolationism through 1945                                                                 | War II and the founding of the United Nations                                        |
| (B) The dramatic growth of federal regulatory and social-welfare programs (the New Deal) combined with full U.S. military and diplomatic engagement in World | (C) A steady decline in federal government spending and authority after 1900         |
|                                                                                                                                                              | (D) The permanent abandonment of any U.S. involvement in international organizations |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Between 1890 and 1945, the federal government’s domestic role expanded dramatically (Progressive regulation, the New Deal’s relief, recovery, and reform programs) while its international engagement grew from cautious expansion (1898) through world war leadership and UN founding (1945) – the opposite of continued isolationism (A) or a decline in federal authority (C), and the U.S. in fact joined the UN enthusiastically in 1945 (ruling out D). **(B)**.

**Câu 2 (7.2)**

“We hold that the government... of the Philippine Islands... is a plain violation of the rights of the people... We deplore the sacrifice of our soldiers and sailors, whose bravery deserves admiration even in an unjust war.” (Anti-Imperialist League platform, 1899) This excerpt most directly reflects opposition to which U.S. policy?

- (A) The Monroe Doctrine of 1823                      Spanish-American War  
(B) The annexation and colonial administration of the Philippines following the                      (C) The Good Neighbor Policy  
(D) The Marshall Plan

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The Anti-Imperialist League specifically condemned the annexation and governance of the Philippines without the consent of the Filipino people following the 1898 Treaty of Paris, arguing this contradicted American democratic principles – the 1823 Monroe Doctrine (A) predates this controversy by decades, the Good Neighbor Policy (C) explicitly renounced intervention, and the Marshall Plan (D) is a mid-twentieth-century European aid program unrelated to 1899 debates over the Philippines. **(B)**.

**Câu 3 (7.2)**

The Roosevelt Corollary to the Monroe Doctrine (1904) most directly asserted that the United States had the right to:

- (A) Colonize any nation in the Western Hemisphere outright                      preempt European intervention  
(B) Act as an “international police power,” intervening in the internal financial and political affairs of Latin American nations to                      (C) Withdraw entirely from Western Hemisphere affairs  
(D) Grant full independence to the Philippines immediately

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The Roosevelt Corollary went beyond the original 1823 Monroe Doctrine’s warning to European powers by asserting an affirmative U.S. right to intervene directly in Latin American nations’ internal finances and politics as an “international police power” – it did not propose outright colonization (A) or complete withdrawal (C), and it is unrelated to Philippine independence (D, which did not occur until 1946). **(B)**.

**Câu 4 (7.2) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE way the Spanish-American War (1898) changed the international territorial position of the United States.  
(b) Briefly explain ONE reason the Philippine-American War (1899–1902) differed in character from the Spanish-American War.  
(c) Briefly explain ONE way the Open Door Policy reflected a different approach to expanding American influence in Asia than outright colonization.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Victory over Spain brought the United States its first substantial overseas colonial possessions – the Philippines, Puerto Rico, and Guam – transforming it from a continental power into one with formal Pacific and Caribbean territorial holdings.  
(b) Unlike the brief conventional war against Spain, the Philippine-American War was a prolonged, brutal guerrilla insurgency fought against Filipino revolutionaries who had expected

independence rather than annexation, involving tactics including reconcentration camps and killing far more people than the war with Spain.

(c) Rather than seeking territorial annexation in China, the Open Door notes asked other imperial powers to preserve equal commercial access for all nations and to respect China's territorial integrity, pursuing American economic influence through negotiated access rather than colonization.

**Câu 5 (7.3)**

"There would be meat that had tumbled out on the floor, in the dirt and sawdust... and thousands of rats would race about on it." (Upton Sinclair, *The Jungle*, 1906) This passage most directly contributed to which of the following?

- |                                                                |                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (A) The Sixteenth Amendment                                    | (C) The National Origins Act of 1924 |
| (B) The Pure Food and Drug Act and Meat Inspection Act of 1906 | (D) The Espionage Act of 1917        |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Public outrage over Sinclair's description of unsanitary meatpacking conditions directly prompted Congress to pass federal food-safety legislation that same year, not an unrelated tax amendment (A, 1913), immigration law (C, 1924), or wartime speech restriction (D, 1917). (B).

**Câu 6 (7.3)**

The Seventeenth Amendment (1913) most directly reformed which aspect of American government?

- |                                                                                           |                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) It replaced state-legislature selection of U.S. senators with direct popular election | (C) It prohibited the manufacture and sale of alcohol |
| (B) It authorized a federal income tax                                                    | (D) It extended the vote to women                     |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The Seventeenth Amendment specifically addressed how senators were chosen, replacing selection by often-corrupt state legislatures with direct popular election – the income tax (B) was the Sixteenth Amendment, Prohibition (C) the Eighteenth, and women's suffrage (D) the Nineteenth, each a separate 1913–1920 Progressive Era amendment. (A).

**Câu 7 (7.3) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE way Theodore Roosevelt's approach to business regulation reflected Progressive Era goals.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way Woodrow Wilson's New Freedom program addressed the problem of monopoly power differently than Roosevelt's approach.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way state and local Progressive reforms complemented federal-level reform during this period.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Roosevelt used the Sherman Antitrust Act to pursue what he considered harmful “bad” trusts (such as Northern Securities) while permitting “good” trusts to continue, reflecting the Progressive goal of regulating rather than eliminating big business.
- (b) Wilson’s New Freedom sought to restore competitive markets more comprehensively through the Clayton Antitrust Act (which specified prohibited practices) and a permanent Federal Trade Commission empowered to police unfair competition on an ongoing basis, rather than relying on Roosevelt’s selective, case-by-case prosecutions.
- (c) State-level reforms such as the initiative, referendum, recall, and direct primary, and local reforms such as commission government, targeted the same underlying goals as federal antitrust and consumer-protection law – reducing corruption and increasing government accountability – at the levels of government closest to ordinary citizens.

**Câu 8 (7.4)**

“An general association of nations must be formed under specific covenants for the purpose of affording mutual guarantees of political independence and territorial integrity...” (Woodrow Wilson, Fourteen Points, 1918) The proposal described in this excerpt ultimately:

- (A) Was ratified enthusiastically by the U.S. Senate      (C) Led immediately to American entry into World War II
- (B) Was rejected by the U.S. Senate, which refused to approve American membership in the League of Nations      (D) Was implemented without any opposition in Europe

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Despite Wilson’s advocacy, the Senate – divided between Lodge’s “reservationists” and the “irreconcilables” – twice rejected the Treaty of Versailles and refused to approve League of Nations membership (1919–1920), the opposite of enthusiastic ratification (A); the League has no direct connection to the much later outbreak of WWII (C), and European powers themselves debated the League’s terms extensively at Paris (ruling out D). (B).

**Câu 9 (7.4) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE reason the United States abandoned neutrality and entered World War I in 1917.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way the Treaty of Versailles diverged from Wilson’s original Fourteen Points.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE reason the U.S. Senate rejected American membership in the League of Nations.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Germany’s resumption of unrestricted submarine warfare in January 1917, combined with the revelation of the Zimmermann Telegram proposing a German-Mexican alliance against the United States, convinced Congress to declare war in April 1917.
- (b) While Wilson’s Fourteen Points called for a lenient, principled peace emphasizing self-determination and reconciliation, the final Treaty of Versailles imposed harsh reparations and a war-guilt clause on Germany at the insistence of Britain and France, prioritizing punishment

over Wilson's more conciliatory vision.

(c) Senator Henry Cabot Lodge and other "reservationists" feared League membership would automatically obligate the United States to enter future foreign wars without full congressional consent, and Wilson's refusal to compromise on reservations, worsened by his 1919 stroke, left the treaty without enough Senate support for ratification.

#### Câu 10 (7.5)

The Committee on Public Information, led by George Creel during World War I, was primarily responsible for:

- |                                                                                                                |                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Drafting soldiers for military service                                                                     | (C) Prosecuting individuals under the Espionage Act |
| (B) Producing propaganda – posters, films, and public speeches – to build public enthusiasm for the war effort | (D) Negotiating the Treaty of Versailles            |

#### Lời giải chi tiết

The CPI's core mission was shaping public opinion through propaganda, not conducting the draft (A, the Selective Service System's role), prosecuting dissenters (C, a Justice Department function under the Espionage/Sedition Acts), or treaty negotiation (D, conducted by Wilson and Allied leaders at Paris). (B).

#### Câu 11 (7.5) – SAQ

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE way the Espionage and Sedition Acts restricted civil liberties during World War I.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE reason wartime industrial labor demand encouraged the Great Migration beginning around 1916.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE lasting effect of the Great Migration on American cities.

#### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) The Espionage Act (1917) and Sedition Act (1918) criminalized criticism of the government, the draft, and the war effort, leading to prosecutions such as that of Socialist leader Eugene Debs, later upheld under the "clear and present danger" standard in *Schenck v. United States* (1919).
- (b) The near-total halt of European immigration during the war, combined with millions of men entering military service, created severe industrial labor shortages in Northern factories that employers filled by recruiting African American workers from the South.
- (c) The Great Migration permanently and substantially increased the Black population of Northern and Midwestern cities, laying the demographic and political foundation for twentieth-century urban Black political power and civil rights organizing.

#### Câu 12 (7.6)

The introduction of the moving assembly line at Ford's Highland Park plant most directly contributed to which development of the 1920s?

- (A) A sharp increase in the price of automobiles, restricting ownership to the wealthy
- (B) A dramatic decline in the price of the Model T, making automobile ownership accessible to many working- and middle-class Americans
- (C) The end of the American automobile industry
- (D) Immediate nationwide adoption of Prohibition

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Standardized, assembly-line mass production sharply lowered the Model T's manufacturing cost and price (from roughly \$850 in 1908 to under \$300 by the mid-1920s), the opposite of restricting ownership to the wealthy (A); it strengthened, not ended, the American auto industry (C), and has no direct connection to Prohibition (D, a constitutional matter unrelated to manufacturing technique). **(B)**.

**Câu 13 (7.7)**

"We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all Nordic-descended Americans are entitled to preserve their nation from foreign contamination." (paraphrased nativist rhetoric, early 1920s) This sentiment most directly helps explain the passage of which piece of legislation?

- (A) The Social Security Act of 1935
- (B) The National Origins Act of 1924
- (C) The Wagner Act of 1935
- (D) The Nineteenth Amendment

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Nativist and racialized anxieties about immigration from Southern and Eastern Europe and Asia directly motivated the National Origins Act (1924), which imposed quotas favoring Northern and Western Europe and nearly excluded Asian immigration entirely – unrelated to Social Security (A) or the Wagner Act (C), both 1935 labor/welfare measures, or the 1920 women's suffrage amendment (D). **(B)**.

**Câu 14 (7.7)**

The Scopes Trial (1925) is most significant to historians as an illustration of:

- (A) A legal challenge to Prohibition
- (B) A national symbolic conflict between religious fundamentalism and modern scientific thought in 1920s American culture
- (C) The outcome of the Red Scare
- (D) The origins of the Harlem Renaissance

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The trial over Tennessee's ban on teaching evolution, pitting Clarence Darrow against William Jennings Bryan, became a widely covered national spectacle symbolizing the clash between traditionalist religious values and secular modernism – it did not concern Prohibition (A), the 1919–20 Red Scare (C), or the Harlem Renaissance (D), each a distinct 1920s development. **(B)**.

**Câu 15 (7.7) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

(a) Briefly explain ONE way the Harlem Renaissance reflected the demographic effects of the Great Migration.

(b) Briefly explain ONE reason the Ku Klux Klan experienced a significant resurgence in the 1920s.

(c) Briefly explain ONE way the changing behavior of “flappers” reflected broader social change following the Nineteenth Amendment.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

(a) The concentration of Black writers, musicians, and artists in New York’s Harlem neighborhood – itself a product of the Great Migration’s relocation of African Americans to Northern cities – produced a flowering of literature (Langston Hughes), music (jazz), and a self-consciously assertive “New Negro” cultural identity.

(b) The revived Klan of the 1920s exploited widespread anxieties about immigration, religious diversity (targeting Catholics and Jews), and racial change, expanding its membership well beyond the South into the Midwest before internal scandals discredited its national leadership.

(c) Flappers’ shorter skirts, bobbed hair, and more public social and drinking behavior symbolized a newly assertive, if still limited and contested, sense of women’s social independence in the years immediately following the achievement of national suffrage in 1920.

**Câu 16 (7.8)**

By 1933, the unemployment rate in the United States had reached approximately:

(A) 5 percent

(C) 25 percent

(B) 10 percent

(D) 50 percent

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Unemployment climbed from roughly 3 percent before the 1929 crash to approximately 25 percent by 1933, the depth of the Great Depression – far higher than 5 or 10 percent (A, B), though not as extreme as 50 percent (D), which no reliable estimate reaches even at the Depression’s worst. (C).

**Câu 17 (7.8)**

President Hoover’s response to the Great Depression is best characterized as:

(A) Complete inaction and refusal to use any federal authority

direct relief to individuals

(B) Limited federal intervention – such as the Reconstruction Finance Corporation – rooted in a philosophy of voluntary cooperation and reluctance to provide di-

(C) An immediate and full embrace of large-scale deficit-financed direct relief programs

(D) Nationalization of the banking and railroad industries

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Hoover was not entirely passive (ruling out A) – he supported measures like the RFC – but he consistently rejected direct federal relief to individuals and large-scale deficit spending in favor of voluntary business cooperation, a far more limited approach than FDR’s subsequent direct relief programs (ruling out C), and he never nationalized banks or railroads (D). **(B)**.

**Câu 18 (7.8) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE structural economic cause of the Great Depression beyond the October 1929 stock market crash itself.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way the Smoot-Hawley Tariff (1930) worsened the Depression.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way the Bonus Army episode (1932) damaged Hoover’s public standing.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Chronic overproduction in agriculture and industry, combined with unequal income distribution that left many consumers unable to sustain spending, created underlying economic fragility well before the 1929 crash exposed it.
- (b) By raising tariffs to protect American industry, Smoot-Hawley provoked retaliatory tariffs from other nations, sharply reducing international trade at a moment when expanded trade might have helped stimulate recovery.
- (c) When Hoover ordered the U.S. Army to forcibly disperse unemployed veterans camped in Washington demanding early payment of a promised bonus, images of soldiers using tanks and tear gas against fellow veterans severely damaged Hoover’s public image just months before the 1932 election.

**Câu 19 (7.9)**

“Together we cannot fail... it is safer to keep your money in a reopened bank than under the mattress.” (FDR, Fireside Chat, March 1933) This radio address was most directly intended to:

- |                                                                                   |                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Announce American entry into World War II                                     | holiday                                          |
| (B) Restore public confidence in the banking system following the March 1933 bank | (C) Explain the Fourteen Points                  |
|                                                                                   | (D) Justify the internment of Japanese Americans |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Delivered just after Roosevelt’s inauguration and the national bank holiday, this fireside chat aimed to reassure depositors and prevent further bank runs – unrelated to WWII entry (A, 1941), Wilson’s WWI-era Fourteen Points (C), or the WWII-era internment policy (D, 1942). **(B)**.

**Câu 20 (7.9)**

The Wagner Act (National Labor Relations Act, 1935) most directly:

- (A) Guaranteed workers the right to organize unions and bargain collectively, and created the National Labor Relations Board to enforce this right
- (B) Established old-age pensions and unemployment insurance
- (C) Set industry-wide codes for wages and prices
- (D) Paid farmers to reduce agricultural production

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The Wagner Act specifically protected the right to unionize and bargain collectively, distinct from Social Security's old-age and unemployment insurance (B), the NRA's industry codes (C), or the AAA's agricultural production controls (D) – each a separate New Deal program addressing a different problem. (A).

**Câu 21 (7.9) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE way the First New Deal (1933–1934) differed in approach from the Second New Deal (1935–1938).
- (b) Briefly explain ONE reason the Supreme Court struck down the National Industrial Recovery Act in 1935.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE reason FDR's 1937 “court-packing” plan failed politically despite his recent landslide reelection.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The First New Deal (NRA, AAA, CCC) focused on immediate relief and cooperative industry/agricultural recovery, while the Second New Deal (WPA, Wagner Act, Social Security Act) emphasized longer-term structural reform and permanent labor and social-insurance protections, often taking a more adversarial stance toward business.
- (b) In *Schechter Poultry Corp. v. United States* (1935), the Supreme Court ruled that the NRA's industry codes represented an unconstitutional delegation of legislative authority to the executive branch and exceeded Congress's power to regulate interstate commerce.
- (c) Many in Congress, including Roosevelt's own allies, viewed the plan to add up to six additional Supreme Court justices as a dangerous threat to judicial independence and the separation of powers, regardless of party loyalty or recent electoral success, leading to its defeat in Congress.

**Câu 22 (7.10)**

The Neutrality Acts of 1935–1937 were most directly motivated by:

- (A) A desire to prevent the kind of financial and diplomatic entanglements many believed had drawn the United States into World War I
- (B) A desire to increase American military involvement in Europe
- (C) The outbreak of the Korean War
- (D) The Good Neighbor Policy toward Latin America

### Lời giải chi tiết

Reflecting the Nye Committee's conclusion that arms manufacturers and financiers had helped drag the U.S. into WWI, Congress passed the Neutrality Acts to ban arms sales and loans to belligerents regardless of circumstance – the opposite of seeking greater involvement (B), unrelated to the much later Korean War (C, 1950s), and distinct from (though contemporaneous with) the separate Good Neighbor Policy toward Latin America (D). **(A)**.

**Câu 23 (7.11)**

"I hereby authorize and direct the Secretary of War... to prescribe military areas... from which any or all persons may be excluded..." (Executive Order 9066, February 1942) This order most directly led to which of the following?

- (A) The drafting of American men into military service
- (B) The forced removal and internment of roughly 120,000 Japanese Americans.
- (C) The passage of the Espionage Act
- (D) The end of the Great Migration
- upheld by the Supreme Court in *Korematsu v. United States* (1944)

### Lời giải chi tiết

Executive Order 9066 specifically authorized the forced removal and confinement of Japanese Americans from West Coast military zones based on ancestry, later upheld in *Korematsu* – unrelated to the WWI-era draft (A) or Espionage Act (C, 1917), and it did not end but rather coincided with an accelerating Great Migration (D). **(B)**.

**Câu 24 (7.11)**

The wartime propaganda figure “Rosie the Riveter” most directly symbolized:

- (A) The internment of Japanese Americans      (C) The Bonus Army march of 1932
- (B) Women's large-scale entry into industrial and manufacturing jobs during World War II      (D) The Committee on Public Information's World War I propaganda

### Lời giải chi tiết

“Rosie the Riveter” represented the roughly six million American women who entered industrial and manufacturing jobs during World War II mobilization – unrelated to Japanese internment (A), the 1932 Bonus Army (C), or WWI-era CPI propaganda (D, a distinct earlier campaign). **(B)**.

**Câu 25 (7.11) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- Briefly explain ONE way the Lend-Lease Act (1941) supported the Allied war effort before formal U.S. entry into World War II.
- Briefly explain ONE way World War II mobilization finally ended the economic conditions of the Great Depression.
- Briefly explain ONE way the internment of Japanese Americans differed from restrictions imposed on German Americans or Italian Americans during the same war.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Lend-Lease allowed the United States to supply Britain and, later, the Soviet Union with weapons, food, and equipment on credit or loan terms without formally entering combat, sustaining Allied resistance to Germany before Pearl Harbor.
- (b) Massive wartime government spending on military production created full employment and absorbed the entire idle industrial capacity that a decade of New Deal relief and recovery programs had not fully eliminated, finally ending mass unemployment.
- (c) While German Americans and Italian Americans faced only limited, individualized restrictions (such as targeted investigations of specific suspected sympathizers), Japanese Americans faced mass, group-based removal and confinement based solely on ancestry, regardless of citizenship or individual loyalty.

**Câu 26 (7.12)**

The atomic bombings of Hiroshima (August 6, 1945) and Nagasaki (August 9, 1945) most directly led to:

- (A) Germany's surrender in Europe ending World War II
- (B) Japan's surrender, announced August 15 and formally signed September 2, 1945, (C) The start of the Korean War
- (D) The founding of the United Nations

### Lời giải chi tiết

The atomic bombings directly preceded Japan's surrender announcement (August 15, 1945) and formal surrender ceremony (September 2, 1945), ending the war – Germany had already surrendered in May 1945 (A, unrelated), the Korean War began years later in 1950 (C), and the UN Charter had already been signed in June 1945, before the bombings (D). **(B)**.

**Câu 27 (7.12) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE reason Pearl Harbor (December 7, 1941) brought the United States fully into World War II on two fronts simultaneously.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE strategic significance of the Battle of Midway (June 1942) for the subsequent Pacific campaign.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE reason D-Day (June 6, 1944) is considered a turning point in the European theater.

### Lời giải chi tiết

- (a) Congress declared war on Japan the day after Pearl Harbor, and Germany and Italy, honoring their Tripartite Pact alliance with Japan, then declared war on the United States days later, immediately drawing the U.S. into both the Pacific and European theaters at once.
- (b) The decisive American naval victory at Midway destroyed much of Japan's carrier fleet and experienced naval aviators, shifting naval initiative to the United States and enabling the subsequent "island-hopping" offensive across the Pacific.
- (c) D-Day established a major Allied foothold in Western Europe for the first time since 1940, forcing Germany to fight a two-front war against Soviet forces in the east and Allied forces advancing from the west, a strategic pressure it could not ultimately sustain.

**Câu 28 (7.13) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

(a) Briefly explain ONE agreement reached at the Yalta Conference (February 1945) regarding the postwar order.

(b) Briefly explain ONE way the Potsdam Conference (July–August 1945) reflected growing distrust between the United States and the Soviet Union compared to Yalta.

(c) Briefly explain ONE way American participation in the United Nations (1945) marked a break from U.S. foreign policy after World War I.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

(a) At Yalta, Roosevelt, Churchill, and Stalin agreed to divide Germany into postwar occupation zones, secured a Soviet pledge to enter the war against Japan within three months of Germany's defeat, and issued a Declaration on Liberated Europe promising free elections in Soviet-occupied Eastern Europe.

(b) By Potsdam, Truman – more suspicious of Soviet intentions than Roosevelt had been – confronted a Soviet Union already consolidating control over Eastern Europe in violation of the Yalta declaration's promises, foreshadowing the Cold War rivalry that would soon follow.

(c) Unlike the Senate's 1919–1920 rejection of League of Nations membership, the United States joined the United Nations in 1945 with broad, near-unanimous domestic political support, reflecting a decisive shift from interwar isolationism toward permanent international leadership.

## Period 8 --- The Cold War Era (1945--1980)

**Mục tiêu Unit:** Nắm vững nguồn gốc và diễn biến Chiến tranh Lạnh (containment, Truman Doctrine, Marshall Plan, NATO, Chiến tranh Triều Tiên, Khủng hoảng Tên lửa Cuba); phân tích Nỗi sợ Đỏ (Red Scare) và McCarthyism; giải thích biến đổi kinh tế – văn hoá thời hậu chiến (GI Bill, ngoại ô hoá, Baby Boom, văn hoá tiêu dùng, Beat Generation); trình bày đầy đủ diễn biến và chiến lược của Phong trào Dân quyền (Brown v. Board, Montgomery, Birmingham, March on Washington, Civil Rights Act 1964, Voting Rights Act 1965, Malcolm X, Black Power); đánh giá Xã hội Vĩ đại và Chiến tranh Việt Nam; phân tích các phong trào xã hội thập niên 1970 (môi trường, nữ quyền, Chicano, người bản địa, quyền LGBT) và di sản đối ngoại/Watergate của Nixon.

### 8.1 Contextualizing Period 8

World War II left the United States and the Soviet Union as the world's two dominant military and economic powers, their wartime alliance of convenience giving way almost immediately to deep ideological rivalry: American capitalist democracy against Soviet-led international communism. At home, the postwar United States combined unprecedented prosperity – fueled by pent-up wartime savings, the GI Bill, and global economic dominance – with persistent anxieties: fear of nuclear annihilation, fear of internal communist subversion, and the widening gap between the nation's professed democratic ideals and the reality of legal racial segregation. These tensions – material abundance alongside political and racial conflict, international leadership alongside domestic dissent – define nearly every development covered in this Unit, from containment abroad to the Civil Rights Movement, the Great Society, Vietnam, and the political disillusionment of the Watergate era at home.

#### Theme: NAT – National Identity

Period 8 is organized around a central paradox: the United States presented itself internationally as the leader of the “free world,” defending democracy against Soviet totalitarianism, even as it denied full civil and political rights to millions of its own Black citizens at home. Civil rights leaders and international critics alike exploited this contradiction – Cold War competition for the allegiance of newly independent, non-white nations in Africa and Asia gave the federal government an added strategic incentive to support civil rights reform, since Soviet propaganda highlighted American racism.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Sau Thế chiến II, Mỹ và Liên Xô trở thành hai siêu cường đối đầu về ý thức hệ. Nước Mỹ vừa thịnh vượng kinh tế chưa từng có, vừa lo sợ chiến tranh hạt nhân và “kẻ thù nội gián” cộng sản. Nghịch lý cốt lõi của Period 8: Mỹ tự nhận là lãnh đạo “thế giới tự do” bảo vệ dân chủ, nhưng trong nước vẫn tồn tại phân biệt chủng tộc hợp pháp – điều này thúc đẩy chính quyền liên bang ủng hộ cải cách dân quyền vì lý do đối ngoại lẫn đạo đức.

## 8.2 Origins of the Cold War, 1945--1949

Wartime cooperation frayed even before Germany's surrender. At the **Yalta Conference** (February 1945), Roosevelt, Churchill, and Stalin agreed on the postwar occupation of Germany, Soviet entry into the Pacific war, and (vaguely) free elections in Soviet-liberated Eastern Europe – a promise Stalin did not keep. At **Potsdam** (July–August 1945), a more suspicious Truman confronted a Soviet Union already consolidating puppet communist governments across Eastern Europe. In a March 1946 speech, Winston Churchill warned that an “**iron curtain**” had descended across the continent, dividing a communist East from a democratic West. American diplomat George Kennan's 1946 “**Long Telegram**” (elaborated publicly in his 1947 “X article”) argued that Soviet expansionism stemmed from internal ideological and security imperatives that only firm, patient, long-term **containment** could check – without provoking direct war. This diagnosis became the bipartisan foundation of American Cold War strategy for the next four decades.

Containment quickly acquired institutional form. The **Truman Doctrine** (March 1947) pledged American economic and military aid to “free peoples” resisting armed minorities or outside pressure, beginning with Greece and Turkey. The **Marshall Plan** (1948, formally the European Recovery Program) channeled roughly thirteen billion dollars into rebuilding Western European economies, on the theory that economic desperation – not just military threat – bred communist sympathy. When the Western powers merged their German occupation zones and introduced a new currency, the Soviet Union responded by blockading all land access to West Berlin; the United States and Britain answered with the **Berlin Airlift** (June 1948–May 1949), flying in food and fuel for nearly eleven months until Stalin lifted the blockade. In April 1949, the United States, Canada, and ten Western European nations formed the **North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO)**, a mutual-defense alliance in which an attack on one member would be treated as an attack on all – the first peacetime military alliance in American history. The Soviet bloc answered in 1955, after West Germany joined NATO, with its own collective-defense alliance, the **Warsaw Pact**.

### Theme: WOR – America in the World

Containment was a remarkably durable, bipartisan strategic consensus that shaped nearly every major U.S. foreign policy decision from 1947 through the Cold War's end in 1991. Economic aid (the Marshall Plan), military alliances (NATO), and armed intervention (Korea, Vietnam) were all justified as necessary to stop the *further* spread of communism – not to roll back existing communist states – even when, as in Vietnam, the strategic logic proved deeply costly and contested at home.

### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Hội nghị Yalta (2/1945) và Potsdam (7–8/1945) bộc lộ bất đồng Mỹ–Liên Xô hậu chiến. Bài diễn văn “bức màn sắt” của Churchill (1946) và Điện tín Dài của Kennan đặt nền móng cho chính sách ngăn chặn (containment). Học thuyết Truman (1947) viện trợ các nước chống cộng sản; Kế hoạch Marshall (1948) tái thiết kinh tế Tây Âu; Cầu hàng không Berlin (1948–49) phá vỡ phong tỏa của Liên Xô; NATO (1949) là liên minh quân sự thời bình đầu tiên của Mỹ; Khối Warsaw (1955) là phản ứng của Liên Xô.

### HIPP document analysis – Kennan's “Long Telegram” (1946)

**Excerpt:** “[The Soviet Union] is highly sensitive to [the] logic of force... In the long run there can be no permanent peaceful coexistence... World communism is like [a] malignant parasite which feeds only on diseased tissue... gradual and patient, but firm and vigilant containment of Russian expansive tendencies... will promote tendencies which must eventually find their outlet in either the break-up or the gradual mellowing of Soviet power.”

**Historical situation:** Written by U.S. diplomat George Kennan from Moscow in February 1946,

at a moment when American officials were still debating whether the wartime Soviet alliance could continue.

**Point of view:** Kennan writes as a professional diplomat with direct on-the-ground experience of Stalinist governance, giving his analysis particular authority in shaping how Washington policymakers came to view Soviet intentions.

**Purpose:** To persuade the State Department that Soviet hostility was rooted in internal ideological and security needs, not any specific American action, and therefore required a sustained strategic response rather than either appeasement or preventive war.

**Significance:** The telegram, and Kennan's 1947 public elaboration of it, supplied the intellectual framework for containment – the strategic doctrine underlying the Truman Doctrine, Marshall Plan, NATO, and, later, Korea and Vietnam.

(!) **Lỗi thường gặp:** Students routinely conflate the Truman Doctrine and the Marshall Plan, or treat them as interchangeable. The **Truman Doctrine** (1947) was a general political and military commitment – aid to *any* government resisting communist takeover, beginning narrowly with Greece and Turkey. The **Marshall Plan** (1948) was a specific, much larger *economic* recovery program aimed broadly at rebuilding Western Europe's economies (including former enemy West Germany) to remove the poverty and instability in which communism might otherwise take root. On the exam, if a prompt or document emphasizes military/political aid to a specific threatened country, think Truman Doctrine; if it emphasizes broad economic reconstruction aid across a whole region, think Marshall Plan.



Timeline: origins and early tests of Cold War containment, 1945–1962.

### LEQ thesis model

**Prompt:** “Evaluate the extent to which the policy of containment shaped United States foreign policy in the decade after 1945.”

**Model thesis:** Containment, first articulated by George Kennan in 1946, decisively shaped nearly every major U.S. foreign policy initiative of the following decade – economic aid through the Marshall Plan, military alliance through NATO, and armed intervention in Korea – because policymakers across both parties accepted Kennan's premise that unchecked Soviet expansion had to be resisted at every point of contact; yet containment's application was never uniform, since economic and diplomatic tools dominated in Europe while direct military force was reserved for cases, like Korea, where containment's credibility itself seemed at stake.

## 8.3 The Red Scare at Home

Fear of Soviet espionage and internal communist subversion produced a second “**Red Scare**” (the first having followed World War I). The **House Un-American Activities Committee (HUAC)** investigated alleged communist influence in government, labor unions, and especially the entertainment industry; in 1947, ten Hollywood screenwriters and directors – the **Hollywood Ten** – refused on First Amendment grounds to testify about their political associations, were cited for contempt of Congress, and were subsequently **blacklisted**, unable to find industry work for years. The 1948–1950 case of **Alger Hiss**, a former State Department official accused by ex-communist Whittaker

Chambers of having passed secrets to the Soviets, riveted the country; Hiss was convicted only of perjury (the statute of limitations barred an espionage charge), but the case made the young congressman leading the investigation, Richard Nixon, a national figure and convinced many Americans that communist infiltration reached the highest levels of government.

Wisconsin senator **Joseph McCarthy** escalated these fears into a broader political phenomenon now called **McCarthyism**: beginning with a February 1950 speech claiming to hold a list of known communists inside the State Department, McCarthy spent four years making sweeping, often unsubstantiated accusations that ruined careers and reputations, exploiting genuine public anxiety after the Soviet Union tested an atomic bomb (1949) and communists took power in China (1949). His influence collapsed only after the televised 1954 Army-McCarthy hearings exposed his bullying tactics to a national audience; the Senate formally censured him later that year. Espionage fears were not entirely baseless: **Julius and Ethel Rosenberg** were convicted in 1951 of conspiracy to pass atomic-bomb secrets to the Soviet Union and executed in 1953, a case that remains debated but whose core allegations against Julius Rosenberg were later corroborated by declassified Soviet intelligence records.

#### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

McCarthyism illustrates how genuine national-security anxiety (Soviet espionage, the “loss” of China to communism, the Soviet atomic bomb) can be exploited for domestic political advantage, producing due-process abuses – guilt by association, blacklisting without trial, unsubstantiated public accusations – that later generations widely condemned even as the underlying Cold War threat of espionage was real.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Nỗi sợ Đỏ (Red Scare) lần hai xuất phát từ lo ngại gián điệp Liên Xô. Ủy ban HUAC điều tra ảnh hưởng cộng sản, dẫn đến việc “Mười người Hollywood” bị đưa vào danh sách đen. Vụ Alger Hiss (1948–50) và Thượng nghị sĩ Joseph McCarthy (McCarthyism, 1950–54) khiến nhiều người bị buộc tội oan; McCarthy bị Thượng viện khiển trách năm 1954. Vợ chồng Rosenberg bị xử tử năm 1953 vì tội làm gián điệp hạt nhân cho Liên Xô.

## 8.4 The Postwar Economy

Wartime savings, pent-up consumer demand, and the absence of war damage on American soil (unlike Europe and Asia) launched the United States into a quarter-century of extraordinary prosperity. The **GI Bill** (Servicemen’s Readjustment Act, 1944) financed college tuition and low-interest home mortgages for millions of returning veterans, fueling both a dramatic expansion of the American middle class and a wave of **suburbanization**: mass-produced, affordable suburban developments like **Levittown**, New York (1947), used assembly-line construction techniques to build tens of thousands of nearly identical single-family homes. Because federal mortgage programs and private lenders routinely engaged in **redlining** – denying loans in and around Black neighborhoods – the GI Bill’s benefits reached white veterans far more fully than Black veterans, reinforcing residential segregation even as it built white suburban wealth. Rising incomes and confidence about the future produced a **Baby Boom** (roughly 1946–1964), and a new **consumer culture** took hold: television ownership became nearly universal, credit and installment buying expanded access to cars and appliances, and the Interstate Highway System (authorized 1956) accelerated both suburban growth and the decline of central cities.

#### Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology

Federal policy – not simply market forces – actively engineered postwar suburbanization and middle-class wealth-building: GI Bill mortgages, federal highway spending, and mortgage-

interest tax deductions subsidized single-family suburban homeownership, while discriminatory lending practices (redlining) systematically excluded Black families from the same wealth-building opportunities, a major and lasting source of the postwar racial wealth gap.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Đạo luật GI Bill (1944) tài trợ học phí đại học và vay mua nhà lãi suất thấp cho cựu binh, thúc đẩy làn sóng ngoại ô hoá (Levittown) và mở rộng tầng lớp trung lưu. Tuy nhiên, chính sách “redlining” loại trừ người da đen khỏi các khoản vay này, làm sâu sắc thêm bất bình đẳng chủng tộc về tài sản. Baby Boom (1946–64) và văn hoá tiêu dùng (TV, mua trả góp, hệ thống xa lộ liên bang) định hình đời sống Mỹ thời hậu chiến.

### 8.5 Postwar Culture: Conformity and Critique

Postwar affluence bred both celebration and criticism of American conformity. Sociologist William H. Whyte's 1956 book *The Organization Man* described a new corporate and suburban culture in which individuals subordinated personal ambition to the demands of large bureaucratic institutions, prizing loyalty, teamwork, and fitting in over individualism – a critique echoed by David Riesman's *The Lonely Crowd* (1950). Critics of this conformist ideal emerged from several directions. **Rock and roll**, blending Black rhythm-and-blues traditions with country music (Elvis Presley, Chuck Berry, and others), became the soundtrack of a newly identifiable, increasingly rebellious teenage youth culture with its own spending power and tastes distinct from its parents. The **Beat Generation** of writers – Jack Kerouac's *On the Road* (1957) and Allen Ginsberg's poem *Howl* (1956) – explicitly rejected suburban conformity, materialism, and conventional social norms in favor of spontaneity, spiritual searching, and nonconformity, anticipating the broader 1960s counterculture.

#### Theme: ARC – American and Regional Culture

Postwar culture reveals a persistent tension between conformity and critique that recurs throughout Period 8: the buttoned-down corporate/suburban culture of the 1950s (the “organization man”) provoked the Beat Generation's rejection of convention, which in turn foreshadowed the far larger 1960s counterculture and antiwar youth movements – a direct cultural throughline from the Beats to the hippies of the following decade.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Văn hoá thập niên 1950 vừa đề cao sự tuân thủ tập thể (“organization man” – con người tổ chức, ưu tiên hoà nhập tập thể hơn cá tính), vừa xuất hiện phản kháng: nhạc rock and roll (Elvis Presley) tạo bản sắc riêng cho giới trẻ; thế hệ Beat (Kerouac, Ginsberg) khước từ chủ nghĩa vật chất và khuôn mẫu xã hội, mở đường cho phong trào phản văn hoá (counterculture) thập niên 1960.

### 8.6 Containment Tested: NSC-68 and the Korean War

In April 1950, a National Security Council policy paper known as **NSC-68**, drafted under Paul Nitze, recast containment in starkly militarized and ideological terms, recommending a massive, sustained peacetime buildup of American conventional and nuclear forces to resist communism “wherever” it threatened to expand. Two months later, communist North Korea invaded South Korea across the **38th parallel** (June 1950), and Truman – without asking Congress for a formal declaration of war – committed American forces under a United Nations mandate, treating Korea as the first major test of NSC-68's logic. General Douglas MacArthur's daring amphibious landing at Inchon (September 1950) reversed North Korea's initial advance, but when UN forces pushed toward the

Yalu River near the Chinese border, several hundred thousand Chinese troops intervened (October–November 1950), driving UN forces back and turning the conflict into a grinding stalemate. Truman fired MacArthur in April 1951 after the general publicly pressed to expand the war into China, re-asserting the constitutional principle of civilian control over the military. Fighting stabilized near the original dividing line, and an **armistice** signed in July 1953 established a demilitarized zone near the **38th parallel** – but no formal peace treaty was ever signed, leaving Korea technically still at war.

**NSC-68 (1950)** marked a turning point: it transformed containment from a policy relying primarily on economic aid and diplomacy (Marshall Plan, NATO) into one committed to a permanent, large-scale military buildup and the willingness to fight limited “hot” wars anywhere communism threatened to expand – the strategic logic that underlay both the Korean War and, later, Vietnam.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

NSC-68 (1950) chuyển chính sách ngăn chặn từ công cụ kinh tế/ngoại giao sang cam kết quân sự thường trực quy mô lớn. Chiến tranh Triều Tiên (1950–53) là phép thử đầu tiên: Bắc Triều Tiên vượt vĩ tuyến 38 xâm lược, Mỹ can thiệp dưới danh nghĩa Liên Hợp Quốc, Trung Quốc tham chiến khi quân Liên Hợp Quốc tiến gần biên giới. Chiến tranh kết thúc bằng hiệp định đình chiến 1953 gần vĩ tuyến 38, không có hiệp ước hoà bình chính thức.

#### SAQ model outline

**Prompt:** Using the stimulus below, answer (a), (b), and (c).

*Stimulus (paraphrased from NSC-68, April 1950):* “The assault on free institutions is world-wide now... a defeat of free institutions anywhere is a defeat everywhere... the United States must, by means of a rapid and sustained build-up of the political, economic, and military strength of the free world, frustrate the Kremlin’s design for world domination.”

- (a) Briefly explain the historical situation that prompted the argument in the excerpt.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE specific U.S. policy or event of the 1950s that reflects the perspective expressed in the excerpt.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way this perspective differed from the primarily economic and diplomatic containment tools used in Europe in the late 1940s.

**Model answers:**

- (a) NSC-68 was written in the context of the 1949 Soviet atomic bomb test and the 1949 communist victory in the Chinese Civil War, both of which convinced U.S. policymakers that containment needed a far larger military dimension than previously assumed.
- (b) The Korean War (1950–1953) directly reflects NSC-68’s logic: Truman committed U.S. troops to a limited war on the Asian mainland specifically because he believed any communist territorial gain, anywhere, had to be resisted to preserve American credibility.
- (c) Late-1940s European containment (the Marshall Plan, NATO) relied primarily on economic reconstruction aid and a defensive alliance rather than direct combat; NSC-68 and Korea marked a shift toward accepting large-scale conventional military engagement as a routine containment tool.

## 8.7 America as a World Power, 1953--1962

President Eisenhower’s “New Look” defense strategy, shaped by Secretary of State John Foster Dulles, relied on the doctrine of **massive retaliation**: rather than match Soviet or Chinese conventional forces point for point (an approach Eisenhower considered fiscally ruinous), the United States would threaten overwhelming nuclear retaliation against any major communist aggression, seeking “more bang for the buck.” Eisenhower articulated the **domino theory** in 1954 to justify American

concern about Southeast Asia: if one nation fell to communism, he warned, neighboring states would topple in succession like a row of dominoes. This logic, first applied to French Indochina after France's defeat at Dien Bien Phu and the 1954 Geneva Accords (which temporarily divided Vietnam at the 17th parallel), would later underpin much deeper American involvement in Vietnam.

The Cold War also became a technological and symbolic contest. The Soviet Union's October 1957 launch of **Sputnik**, the first artificial satellite, stunned Americans, who had assumed unquestioned technological superiority; the shock spurred the National Defense Education Act (1958, funding science and math education) and the creation of the **National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA, 1958)**, launching a **space race** that would culminate in the 1969 Apollo 11 Moon landing. Cold War competition also played out directly in the Western Hemisphere. In April 1961, a CIA-organized force of Cuban exiles launched the **Bay of Pigs** invasion, attempting to overthrow Fidel Castro's communist government; the operation collapsed within days, embarrassing the new Kennedy administration and pushing Castro toward closer military alignment with the Soviet Union. In October 1962, American reconnaissance discovered Soviet nuclear missile installations under construction in Cuba, capable of striking most of the continental United States within minutes; the resulting **Cuban Missile Crisis** brought the world closer to nuclear war than at any other Cold War moment. Kennedy rejected an air strike in favor of a naval "quarantine" of Cuba and tense back-channel negotiations; the crisis ended after thirteen days when the Soviet Union agreed to remove the missiles in exchange for a secret American pledge to remove obsolete missiles from Turkey and a public assurance not to invade Cuba.

#### Theme: GEO – Geography and the Environment

The domino theory reasoned in explicitly geographic terms: it treated the spread of communism as a matter of physical, contiguous territorial proximity, in which one nation's fall would mechanically destabilize its neighbors – a spatial logic that shaped American strategic thinking about Southeast Asia for the next two decades and helped justify escalating U.S. involvement in Vietnam even as its underlying assumption remained contested by critics at the time and by many historians since.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Chiến lược "New Look" của Eisenhower dựa vào "trả đũa ồ ạt" (massive retaliation) bằng vũ khí hạt nhân thay vì quân đội thông thường tốn kém. "Thuyết domino" (1954) cho rằng nếu một nước rơi vào tay cộng sản, các nước láng giềng sẽ lần lượt sụp đổ – biện minh cho can thiệp vào Đông Nam Á. Vệ tinh Sputnik (1957) của Liên Xô gây chấn động, dẫn đến thành lập NASA (1958). Cuộc đổ bộ Vịnh Con Lợn (1961) thất bại; Khủng hoảng Tên lửa Cuba (10/1962) là thời điểm căng thẳng hạt nhân cao nhất Chiến tranh Lạnh, giải quyết bằng đàm phán bí mật.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** The **Bay of Pigs** invasion (April 1961) and the **Cuban Missile Crisis** (October 1962) are often confused because both involve Kennedy, Cuba, and Castro. The Bay of Pigs was a failed *American-organized invasion attempt* using Cuban exiles, with no Soviet missiles involved; it was a foreign-policy embarrassment that arguably *caused* the later crisis by pushing Castro to request Soviet military protection. The Cuban Missile Crisis, eighteen months later, was a direct U.S.–Soviet nuclear standoff over missile installations already in Cuba, resolved through negotiation rather than invasion. On the exam, remember: Bay of Pigs = failed invasion attempt; Missile Crisis = nuclear standoff over Soviet missiles.

## 8.8 The Civil Rights Movement

### 8.8.1 Nonviolent direct action, 1954–1963

The postwar Civil Rights Movement dismantled legal segregation through a combination of litigation, direct action, and legislation. In **Brown v. Board of Education** (1954), a unanimous Supreme Court overturned *Plessy v. Ferguson*'s (1896) "separate but equal" doctrine, ruling that racially segregated public schools were inherently unequal and violated the Fourteenth Amendment's equal protection clause. Rosa Parks's arrest for refusing to give up her bus seat sparked the year-long **Montgomery Bus Boycott** (1955–1956), which launched Dr. Martin Luther King Jr. as the movement's leading voice of nonviolent civil disobedience and ended when a federal court declared Montgomery's bus segregation unconstitutional. In 1957, Arkansas Governor Orval Faubus tried to block court-ordered integration of Little Rock's Central High School; President Eisenhower, asserting federal authority over defiant state governments, sent federal troops to escort the **Little Rock Nine** into the school. A new wave of student activism began in February 1960, when four Black college students staged a **sit-in** at a whites-only Woolworth's lunch counter in Greensboro, North Carolina, sparking similar protests across the South and the founding of the Student Nonviolent Coordinating Committee (SNCC). In 1961, interracial groups of **Freedom Riders** tested a Supreme Court ruling desegregating interstate bus terminals, facing mob violence in Alabama that forced federal intervention.

The movement's national breakthrough came in 1963. The **Birmingham campaign**, led by King's Southern Christian Leadership Conference, deliberately provoked a violent response from Police Commissioner "Bull" Connor, whose officers turned fire hoses and police dogs on peaceful demonstrators, including schoolchildren; televised images of the brutality shocked the nation and pushed President Kennedy to propose sweeping civil rights legislation. Jailed during the campaign, King wrote his "**Letter from Birmingham Jail**," defending nonviolent direct action against criticism that it was too confrontational. That August, the **March on Washington for Jobs and Freedom** drew roughly 250,000 people to the National Mall, where King delivered his "I Have a Dream" speech. This sustained pressure culminated in the **Civil Rights Act of 1964** (banning discrimination in employment and public accommodations on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin, and creating the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission) and, after the violent 1965 "Bloody Sunday" attack on marchers in Selma, the **Voting Rights Act of 1965** (banning literacy tests and authorizing direct federal oversight of voter registration in jurisdictions with histories of discrimination).

#### HIPP document analysis – MLK, "Letter from Birmingham Jail" (1963)

**Excerpt:** "We know through painful experience that freedom is never voluntarily given by the oppressor; it must be demanded by the oppressed... For years now I have heard the word 'Wait!' ... this 'Wait' has almost always meant 'Never.' ... I am in Birmingham because injustice is here... Injustice anywhere is a threat to justice everywhere."

**Historical situation:** Written in April 1963 while King was jailed for demonstrating without a permit during the Birmingham campaign, in direct response to local white clergymen who had publicly criticized the protests as "unwise and untimely."

**Point of view:** King writes as the movement's most prominent nonviolent leader, directly countering white moderates who urged patience and gradual, court-based change.

**Purpose:** To justify nonviolent direct action and civil disobedience against unjust laws, arguing that waiting for gradual change had proven ineffective and that direct confrontation was both morally necessary and strategically essential.

**Significance:** The letter became one of the movement's foundational texts, articulating the philosophical case for nonviolent direct action that the Birmingham campaign and March on Washington then made visible on a national stage, directly shaping the political momentum behind the Civil Rights Act of 1964.

**LEQ thesis model**

**Prompt:** “Evaluate the extent to which nonviolent direct action was responsible for the legislative successes of the Civil Rights Movement between 1954 and 1965.”

**Model thesis:** Nonviolent direct action – exemplified by the Montgomery Bus Boycott, the Birmingham campaign, and the March on Washington – was the single most important force behind the Civil Rights Act of 1964 and Voting Rights Act of 1965, because televised images of peaceful protesters facing police and mob violence generated the national moral outrage and political pressure needed to move a reluctant Congress, even though sustained NAACP litigation (culminating in *Brown v. Board*) and the pressure of more confrontational Black Power activism also contributed meaningfully to the era’s legislative gains.

**DBQ thesis and outline model**

**Prompt:** “Using the King document above and your knowledge of United States history, evaluate the extent to which nonviolent direct action succeeded in overcoming the specific obstacle King identifies – gradualist calls to ‘Wait!’ – between 1954 and 1965.”

**Model thesis:** King’s “Letter from Birmingham Jail” directly rejects gradualism as a disguised form of permanent denial, and the movement’s subsequent trajectory largely vindicates his argument: sustained, deliberately confrontational nonviolent direct action – not patient waiting – produced the concrete legislative breakthroughs of 1964 and 1965, though the persistence of a rival Black Power critique after 1965 suggests many activists concluded that even King’s confrontational nonviolence had not moved fast enough.

**Supporting outline:**

*Paragraph 1 (Document evidence):* King’s letter directly indicts “Wait,” arguing from painful experience that oppressors never voluntarily grant freedom – a rationale for accelerating, not moderating, direct action.

*Paragraph 2 (Outside evidence – legislative results):* The Birmingham campaign’s televised confrontations with Bull Connor’s police, following directly from the letter, are widely credited with pushing Kennedy to propose the legislation that became the Civil Rights Act of 1964, supporting King’s argument that direct pressure, not patience, produced results.

*Paragraph 3 (Complicating evidence):* The rise of Black Power and Malcolm X’s competing critique after 1965 shows that even King’s confrontational nonviolence struck many activists as still too gradual, complicating any simple narrative that nonviolent direct action alone fully resolved the tension King identified in his letter.

**8.8.2 Malcolm X and Black Power**

Not all activists embraced King’s strategy of nonviolent integration. **Malcolm X**, a minister of the Nation of Islam, argued in the early 1960s that Black Americans should pursue self-determination, racial pride, and, if necessary, armed self-defense rather than wait for white America to grant integration; after breaking with the Nation of Islam and moderating some of his views following a 1964 pilgrimage to Mecca, he was assassinated in February 1965. His ideas influenced the **Black Power** movement, a term popularized by SNCC leader Stokely Carmichael in 1966, which emphasized Black cultural pride, community control of political and economic institutions, and skepticism toward integration as the movement’s only goal. The **Black Panther Party**, founded in Oakland, California, in 1966 by Huey Newton and Bobby Seale, combined a Ten-Point Program demanding Black political and economic self-determination with armed community patrols monitoring police conduct and popular community-service programs, including free breakfast programs for children.

**Theme: SOC – Social Structures**

The Civil Rights Movement was never a single, unified strategy: mainstream nonviolent integrationism (King, the NAACP, SNCC before 1966) and Black nationalist/Black Power activism (Malcolm X, later SNCC, the Black Panthers) reflected genuine strategic and philosophical disagreement over goals (integration versus self-determination) and methods (nonviolence versus armed self-defense) – both, however, responded to the same underlying reality of persistent racial inequality after formal Reconstruction-era rights had gone unenforced for nearly a century.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

*Brown v. Board* (1954) xoá bỏ “tách biệt nhưng bình đẳng.” Tẩy chay xe buýt Montgomery (1955–56) đưa MLK lên vị trí lãnh đạo. Sự kiện Little Rock (1957), sit-in, Freedom Rides, chiến dịch Birmingham (1963) và March on Washington (1963, bài diễn văn “I Have a Dream”) dẫn đến Civil Rights Act 1964 và Voting Rights Act 1965. Song song đó, Malcolm X và phong trào Black Power (Stokely Carmichael, đảng Black Panther) nhấn mạnh quyền tự quyết và đôi khi chấp nhận đối đầu, khác biệt chiến lược với đường lối bất bạo động của MLK.

| Aspect                   | MLK / nonviolent direct action                                        | Malcolm X / Black Power                                          |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Core philosophy          | Integration into mainstream American society through moral persuasion | Black self-determination, pride, and, initially, separatism      |
| Relationship to violence | Strict nonviolent civil disobedience, even under attack               | Openness to armed self-defense; some acceptance of confrontation |
| Key organizations        | SCLC, NAACP, early SNCC                                               | Nation of Islam, Black Power activists, Black Panther Party      |
| Signature tactics        | Boycotts, sit-ins, marches, legal challenges                          | Community organizing, armed patrols, community-service programs  |

Comparing strategic and philosophical approaches within the Civil Rights Movement.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** The **Civil Rights Act of 1964** and the **Voting Rights Act of 1965** are frequently mixed up on the exam. The **Civil Rights Act (1964)** banned discrimination in *employment* and *public accommodations* (restaurants, hotels, theaters) on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin, and created the EEOC. The **Voting Rights Act (1965)** focused specifically on *voting*: it banned literacy tests and other discriminatory voting requirements and authorized direct federal oversight (preclearance) of voter registration in Southern jurisdictions with histories of discrimination. If a question references restaurants, hotels, or workplace discrimination, the answer is the 1964 Act; if it references literacy tests, poll-watchers, or voter registration, the answer is the 1965 Act.

**8.9 Youth Culture and the Antiwar Movement**

Building on the Beat Generation’s earlier critique of conformity, a much larger **counterculture** emerged among college-age youth in the 1960s, rejecting mainstream materialism and authority in favor of communal living, drug experimentation, and a distinctive rock-music culture that peaked symbolically at the 1969 Woodstock festival. **Students for a Democratic Society (SDS)**, founded in 1960,

articulated the movement's political vision in its 1962 **Port Huron Statement**, calling for “participatory democracy” and criticizing both Cold War militarism and complacent liberal politics. As American involvement in Vietnam escalated after 1965, the **antiwar movement** grew rapidly on college campuses and beyond, combining moral objections to the war, opposition to the military draft, and a broader critique of American Cold War foreign policy; the movement reached a tragic peak when Ohio National Guardsmen killed four student protesters at Kent State University in May 1970 during demonstrations against the U.S. invasion of Cambodia.

**Theme: ARC – American and Regional Culture**

The 1960s counterculture and antiwar movement drew directly on the Beat Generation's earlier rejection of 1950s conformity, but scaled it into a mass youth movement with genuine political consequences: campus antiwar activism helped drive Lyndon Johnson's 1968 decision not to seek reelection and pressured Nixon toward Vietnamization and, ultimately, withdrawal.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Phong trào phản văn hoá (counterculture) thập niên 1960 kế thừa tinh thần phản kháng của thế hệ Beat, mở rộng thành phong trào thanh niên quy mô lớn. Tổ chức SDS (thành lập 1960) và Tuyên ngôn Port Huron (1962) kêu gọi “dân chủ tham dự.” Khi chiến tranh Việt Nam leo thang, phong trào phản chiến bùng nổ trong các trường đại học, đỉnh điểm là vụ thảm sát Kent State (5/1970) khi Vệ binh Quốc gia bắn chết 4 sinh viên biểu tình.

## 8.10 The Great Society

President Lyndon Johnson used his landslide 1964 election victory and overwhelming congressional majorities to pursue the **Great Society**, an ambitious expansion of the New Deal's legacy aimed at eliminating poverty and racial injustice. The **Economic Opportunity Act** (1964) launched a “**War on Poverty**” through programs like Head Start (early childhood education), Job Corps (job training for disadvantaged youth), and VISTA (a domestic version of the Peace Corps). In 1965, Congress created **Medicare** (federal health insurance for Americans over 65) and **Medicaid** (health insurance for low-income Americans) as amendments to the Social Security Act, alongside major federal investment in elementary, secondary, and higher education. The **Immigration and Nationality Act of 1965** (the Hart-Celler Act) abolished the restrictive national-origins quota system that had governed immigration since 1924 (which had heavily favored immigrants from Northern and Western Europe), opening the door to substantially increased immigration from Asia, Latin America, and Africa and reshaping American demographics for decades afterward.

**Theme: PCE – Politics and Power**

The Great Society represented the high-water mark of New Deal-style federal government activism, permanently embedding the principle that the federal government bears responsibility for guaranteeing a baseline of economic security and access to health care – yet its ambitions were constrained almost immediately by the escalating financial and political costs of the Vietnam War, which diverted federal resources and public attention Johnson had hoped to devote to domestic reform.

**GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT**

VN

Chương trình Xã hội Vĩ đại (Great Society) của Tổng thống Johnson mở rộng di sản New Deal: Đạo luật Cơ hội Kinh tế 1964 phát động “Cuộc chiến chống Đói nghèo” (Head Start, Job Corps, VISTA); Medicare (bảo hiểm y tế cho người trên 65 tuổi) và Medicaid (bảo hiểm y tế cho người thu nhập thấp) ra đời năm 1965; Đạo luật Di trú và Quốc tịch 1965 xoá bỏ hạn ngạch theo nguồn gốc quốc gia, mở đường cho làn sóng nhập cư mới từ châu Á, Mỹ Latinh, châu Phi.

## 8.11 The Vietnam War

American involvement in Vietnam, rooted in Cold War containment logic and the domino theory, escalated dramatically under Johnson. After reported (and later disputed) attacks on American destroyers in August 1964, Congress passed the **Gulf of Tonkin Resolution**, granting the president sweeping authority to escalate military action in Southeast Asia without a formal declaration of war. Johnson used this authority to begin sustained bombing of North Vietnam (Operation Rolling Thunder, 1965) and to deploy American ground combat troops, whose numbers eventually peaked at roughly 543,000 by 1969. The January 1968 **Tet Offensive** – coordinated Viet Cong and North Vietnamese attacks on cities throughout South Vietnam, including a direct assault on the U.S. embassy compound in Saigon – was repelled militarily but proved a decisive psychological turning point: it directly contradicted official American assurances that victory was near, badly damaging public trust and accelerating antiwar sentiment, and contributed to Johnson's stunning announcement that he would not seek reelection.

President Nixon pursued **Vietnamization**: gradually withdrawing American troops while transferring combat responsibility to South Vietnamese forces, even as he secretly and then openly expanded the war into Cambodia (1970) and Laos to disrupt North Vietnamese supply lines, triggering renewed campus protest (including the Kent State shootings). The **Paris Peace Accords** (January 1973) ended direct American combat involvement and secured the release of American prisoners of war, but fighting between North and South Vietnam continued; **Saigon fell** to North Vietnamese forces in April 1975, reunifying Vietnam under communist rule and ending, in defeat for the American-backed government, a conflict that had lasted, in various forms, for two decades. Reacting to what many in Congress saw as decades of unchecked executive war-making power (Korea and Vietnam alike), Congress passed the **War Powers Act** (1973) over Nixon's veto, requiring the president to notify Congress within 48 hours of committing troops abroad and limiting deployments to 60 days without explicit congressional authorization.

### HIPP document analysis – Gulf of Tonkin Resolution (1964)

**Excerpt:** “Congress approves and supports the determination of the President, as Commander in Chief, to take all necessary measures to repel any armed attack against the forces of the United States and to prevent further aggression... the United States is... prepared, as the President determines, to take all necessary steps, including the use of armed force...”

**Historical situation:** Passed by Congress in August 1964 after the Johnson administration reported that North Vietnamese torpedo boats had attacked U.S. destroyers in the Gulf of Tonkin – an account later shown to be at least partly exaggerated or mistaken.

**Point of view:** A near-unanimous Congress, eager to display resolve against communist aggression and reluctant to appear to undercut the commander in chief during an apparent crisis.

**Purpose:** To grant the president broad, open-ended authority to escalate American military action in Vietnam without the political and constitutional friction of a formal declaration of war.

**Significance:** The resolution became the primary legal basis for the massive escalation of American involvement in Vietnam over the following decade, and the controversy over how it was obtained later fueled passage of the War Powers Act (1973), which sought to prevent future presidents from committing troops on such an open-ended basis.

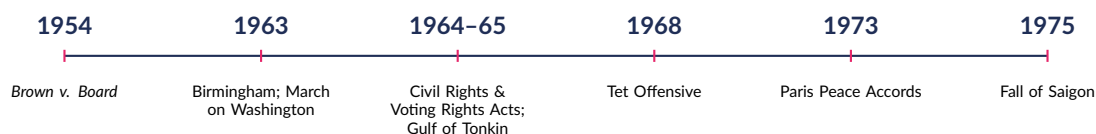
### LEQ thesis model

**Prompt:** “Evaluate the extent to which the Vietnam War represented a continuation of the containment strategy the United States had applied in Korea.”

**Model thesis:** American intervention in Vietnam represented a direct extension of the con-

tainment logic and domino-theory reasoning first applied in Korea – both conflicts saw the United States commit ground troops without a formal declaration of war to prevent a communist takeover of a divided nation – yet Vietnam diverged sharply from Korea in outcome and domestic consequence, since the absence of a stabilizing outside power like China's limited 1950 intervention, combined with Viet Cong guerrilla tactics and the corrosive effect of years of visible battlefield stalemate (crystallized by the 1968 Tet Offensive), produced a communist military victory and a lasting domestic political backlash that Korea, ending in an uneasy but stable armistice, never generated.

(!) **Lỗi thường gặp:** Students frequently assume Korea and Vietnam ended the same way. The **Korean War** (1950–1953) ended in a military **stalemate**: an armistice restored a boundary near the original 38th parallel, and South Korea survived as a separate, non-communist state (which by the late twentieth century became a prosperous democracy) – a result many Americans came to view, in retrospect, as an acceptable if unsatisfying success for containment. The **Vietnam War** ended very differently: the 1973 Paris Peace Accords only removed American combat troops, and fighting continued until North Vietnamese forces **captured Saigon in 1975**, reunifying the entire country under communist rule – a clear defeat for the containment strategy the United States had pursued there. Do not describe Vietnam as ending in a “stalemate” the way Korea did; the American-backed government in South Vietnam collapsed entirely.



Timeline: Civil Rights Movement and the Vietnam War, 1954–1975.

| Aspect                    | Korea (1950–1953)                                                      | Vietnam (1954–1975)                                                               | Cuba (1961–1962)                                                                      |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Form of U.S. involvement  | Large-scale ground troops under UN mandate                             | Escalating ground troops, bombing, no declared war (Gulf of Tonkin)               | Covert invasion (Bay of Pigs); naval blockade, no invasion (Missile Crisis)           |
| Outcome                   | Armistice; stalemate near 38th parallel; South Korea survives          | Paris Peace Accords (1973); Saigon falls (1975); communist reunification          | Bay of Pigs fails; Missile Crisis resolved by negotiated missile withdrawal           |
| Domestic political effect | Contributed to Truman's unpopularity; limited lasting protest movement | Fueled mass antiwar movement; War Powers Act (1973) curbed presidential authority | Bay of Pigs embarrassed Kennedy; Missile Crisis boosted his standing after resolution |

Containment applied: comparing Korea, Vietnam, and Cuba as Cold War flashpoints.

## 8.12 The Environment and Natural Resources in the 1970s

Rachel Carson's 1962 book *Silent Spring* documented the ecological and human-health dangers of synthetic pesticides, especially DDT, and is widely credited with launching the modern American **environmental movement** by connecting industrial and agricultural practices directly to public health. Growing public concern about air and water pollution culminated in the first **Earth Day** (April 22, 1970), which mobilized roughly twenty million Americans in coordinated demonstrations and teach-ins, and in the creation later that year of the **Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)** under President Nixon, consolidating federal pollution-control authority. Environmental concern intersected

with economic anxiety in 1973, when Arab members of the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) imposed an **oil embargo** against the United States in retaliation for American support of Israel during the Yom Kippur War, quadrupling oil prices, producing long lines at gas stations, and exposing the United States' deep dependence on foreign energy – a vulnerability that spurred conservation measures (a national 55-mph speed limit) and, eventually, the creation of a cabinet-level Department of Energy in 1977.

#### Theme: GEO – Geography and the Environment

The 1970s energy crisis linked American foreign policy (support for Israel), global geography (Middle Eastern oil reserves), and domestic environmental politics in a single interconnected chain: OPEC's 1973 embargo demonstrated that environmental and resource questions were not separate from Cold War-era geopolitics, since American dependence on foreign oil constrained its diplomatic flexibility even as growing environmental awareness (Silent Spring, Earth Day, the EPA) pushed policymakers toward conservation and cleaner alternatives.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Cuốn sách *Silent Spring* (1962) của Rachel Carson phơi bày tác hại của thuốc trừ sâu DDT, khơi mào phong trào môi trường hiện đại. Ngày Trái Đất đầu tiên (Earth Day, 22/4/1970) huy động khoảng 20 triệu người Mỹ; Cơ quan Bảo vệ Môi trường (EPA) thành lập cùng năm dưới thời Nixon. Lệnh cấm vận dầu mỏ của OPEC (1973), trả đũa việc Mỹ ủng hộ Israel, gây khủng hoảng năng lượng, giá xăng dầu tăng vọt, bộc lộ sự phụ thuộc của Mỹ vào dầu mỏ nước ngoài.

#### HIPP document analysis – Rachel Carson, *Silent Spring* (1962)

**Excerpt:** “For the first time in the history of the world, every human being is now subjected to contact with dangerous chemicals, from the moment of conception until death... These chemicals are now stored in the bodies of the vast majority of human beings, regardless of age... Can anyone believe it is possible to lay down such a barrage of poisons on the surface of the earth without making it unfit for all life?”

**Historical situation:** Published in 1962 at the height of postwar confidence in chemical technology (including widespread agricultural and household use of DDT), during a decade when industrial and scientific progress were broadly celebrated.

**Point of view:** Carson writes as a trained marine biologist and science writer, addressing a general public largely unaware of pesticides' long-term ecological and health effects.

**Purpose:** To warn the public and policymakers that unregulated pesticide use posed serious, cumulative risks to human health and ecosystems, challenging the chemical industry's assurances of safety.

**Significance:** The book is widely credited with launching the modern environmental movement, directly influencing the eventual U.S. ban on DDT (1972) and contributing to the political climate that produced the first Earth Day (1970) and the creation of the EPA (1970).

### 8.13 Society in Transition

The 1960s and 1970s saw a wave of new social movements build on the Civil Rights Movement's organizing tactics and moral vocabulary to demand equality for other groups. Betty Friedan's 1963 book *The Feminine Mystique*, which challenged the assumption that domestic homemaking alone could fulfill women's aspirations, helped catalyze **second-wave feminism**; Friedan and other activists founded the **National Organization for Women (NOW)** in 1966 to press for workplace equality, reproductive rights, and an Equal Rights Amendment (passed by Congress in 1972 but never ratified by enough states). In *Roe v. Wade* (1973), the Supreme Court ruled that a constitutional right to

privacy protected a woman's decision to have an abortion, at least in the earlier stages of pregnancy – one of the era's most consequential and enduringly contested rulings. **Cesar Chavez** and Dolores Huerta organized Mexican American and Filipino American farmworkers into the **United Farm Workers**, using boycotts (most famously the Delano grape boycott, 1965–1970) and nonviolent tactics borrowed directly from the Civil Rights Movement to win improved wages and working conditions, a central strand of the broader **Chicano movement** for Mexican American civil rights and cultural pride. The **American Indian Movement (AIM)**, founded in 1968, organized direct actions – including the prolonged occupation of Alcatraz Island (1969–1971) and the 1973 occupation of Wounded Knee, South Dakota – to protest the federal government's historical treaty violations and demand greater tribal sovereignty. In June 1969, a police raid on the Stonewall Inn, a gay bar in New York City, provoked several nights of spontaneous resistance – the **Stonewall riots** – widely regarded as the catalyzing moment of the modern **gay rights movement**.

#### Theme: MIG – Migration and Settlement

The Chicano movement and the American Indian Movement both connected contemporary activism to longer histories of conquest, land loss, and unequal incorporation into the United States – Mexican Americans in the Southwest tracing grievances back to the Mexican-American War (1846–1848) and unequal treatment of migrant agricultural labor, and Native American activists tracing grievances back to nineteenth-century treaty violations and forced removal – demonstrating that 1960s–70s identity-based activism drew on distinct, group-specific histories even as all borrowed tactics from the Civil Rights Movement.

#### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

Second-wave feminism and the gay rights movement both challenged social structures that Civil Rights-era activism had left largely unaddressed: legally and culturally enforced gender roles within the family and workplace (feminism), and the criminalization and social stigmatization of homosexuality (gay rights) – both movements adapted the Civil Rights Movement's organizing playbook (grassroots mobilization, direct action, litigation) to categories of inequality beyond race.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Phong trào nữ quyền làn sóng thứ hai (Betty Friedan, tổ chức NOW thành lập 1966) đấu tranh cho bình đẳng nơi làm việc và quyền sinh sản; vụ *Roe v. Wade* (1973) công nhận quyền phá thai dựa trên quyền riêng tư. Cesar Chavez và Dolores Huerta tổ chức Liên đoàn Công nhân Nông trại (United Farm Workers), dùng biện pháp bất bạo động kiểu phong trào Dân quyền. Phong trào Người Mỹ Bản địa (AIM, 1968) chiếm đóng Alcatraz và Wounded Knee đòi quyền tự quyết. Cuộc nổi dậy Stonewall (6/1969) tại New York khởi đầu phong trào quyền LGBT hiện đại.

### 8.14 Continuity and Change: Nixon, Détente, and Watergate

President Richard Nixon combined genuine foreign-policy innovation with the era's most damaging domestic political scandal. Exploiting the growing rift between the Soviet Union and communist China, Nixon made a historic visit to China in February 1972, opening formal diplomatic contact with the People's Republic for the first time since the 1949 communist revolution – a striking reversal for a politician who had built his early career on hardline anti-communism. Nixon simultaneously pursued **détente** (a deliberate relaxation of tensions) with the Soviet Union, culminating in the 1972 **SALT I** agreement (Strategic Arms Limitation Talks), which capped each superpower's number of intercontinental ballistic missiles and limited anti-ballistic missile defenses.

These achievements were overshadowed by **Watergate**. In June 1972, operatives connected to

Nixon's reelection campaign broke into the Democratic National Committee's headquarters at Washington's Watergate office complex; investigative journalism (notably by *Washington Post* reporters Bob Woodward and Carl Bernstein) and a Senate investigating committee gradually exposed not the break-in itself but Nixon's own extensive efforts to cover it up, including the existence of a secret White House taping system that captured incriminating conversations. Facing near-certain impeachment and removal from office, Nixon resigned the presidency in August 1974 – the only resignation of a sitting president in American history – and was succeeded by Vice President Gerald Ford, who controversially pardoned him a month later.

#### HIPP document analysis – Nixon's resignation address (August 8, 1974)

**Excerpt:** "I have never been a quitter. To leave office before my term is completed is abhorrent to every instinct in my body. But... I have concluded that I no longer have a strong enough political base in the Congress... Therefore, I shall resign the Presidency effective at noon tomorrow."

**Historical situation:** Delivered on national television in August 1974, after the Supreme Court ordered Nixon to release White House tape recordings and the House Judiciary Committee approved articles of impeachment, making conviction by the Senate all but certain.

**Point of view:** Nixon addresses the speech to the American public directly, framing his departure in terms of political practicality (loss of congressional support) rather than explicit personal wrongdoing.

**Purpose:** To resign the presidency on his own terms, avoiding the formal spectacle of impeachment and Senate trial while preserving as much personal and political dignity as the circumstances allowed.

**Significance:** The resignation confirmed that constitutional checks – an independent press, an independent judiciary, and congressional oversight – could hold even the presidency accountable, but it also deepened public distrust of government that lingered through the rest of the 1970s.

#### LEQ thesis model

**Prompt:** "Evaluate the extent to which the Watergate scandal changed the relationship between the American public and the federal government."

**Model thesis:** The Watergate scandal produced a lasting transformation in the American public's relationship with the federal government, converting what had been broad, if imperfect, postwar trust in presidential authority into durable institutional skepticism, evident in post-Watergate reforms (stricter campaign-finance laws, the War Powers Act, and a more adversarial investigative press); yet this shift built on – rather than originated from – eroding public confidence already produced by the Vietnam War's "credibility gap," so Watergate is best understood as an intensifying rather than sole cause of 1970s political disillusionment.

**Watergate (1972–1974)** deeply damaged public trust in government and the presidency, contributing to a broader climate of institutional skepticism in the 1970s – alongside the loss in Vietnam and the 1970s energy crisis – that later politicians, including Ronald Reagan in Period 9, would explicitly invoke as a call for renewed American confidence.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Nixon mở quan hệ ngoại giao với Trung Quốc (1972) và theo đuổi chính sách hoà hoãn (détente) với Liên Xô, đỉnh điểm là hiệp ước SALT I (1972) hạn chế vũ khí hạt nhân chiến lược. Tuy nhiên, vụ bê bối Watergate (đột nhập trụ sở đảng Dân chủ năm 1972, sau đó là hành vi che giấu của

Nixon) bị phanh phui, buộc Nixon từ chức vào tháng 8/1974 – lần từ chức duy nhất của một tổng thống đương nhiệm Hoa Kỳ. Watergate làm suy giảm nghiêm trọng niềm tin của công chúng vào chính phủ.

## 8.15 Practice: Period 8 review

### Câu 1 (8.1)

The postwar international position of the United States after 1945 is best described as:

- |                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) A return to strict prewar isolationism                                                                                                         | sponsibilities abroad                                                  |
| (B) Emergence as one of two dominant global superpowers, combining unprecedented economic prosperity at home with new international leadership re- | (C) Complete military and economic decline relative to European powers |
|                                                                                                                                                    | (D) Formal political union with the British Empire                     |

### Lời giải chi tiết

World War II left the United States, alongside the Soviet Union, as one of two dominant global powers, with an intact industrial base, growing prosperity, and new global military and diplomatic commitments (the Marshall Plan, NATO) that represented a permanent break from prewar isolationism (A is wrong). Its economy and military strength dramatically outpaced war-devastated Europe (C is wrong), and no such formal political union with Britain (D) existed. (B).

### Câu 2 (8.2)

George Kennan's "Long Telegram" (1946) most directly provided the intellectual foundation for which U.S. Cold War policy?

- |                  |                                                                   |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Isolationism | (C) Détente                                                       |
| (B) Containment  | (D) Immediate military rollback of existing communist governments |

### Lời giải chi tiết

Kennan argued that Soviet expansionism was rooted in internal ideological and security pressures that could be checked through patient, firm resistance short of direct war – the foundational logic of containment, not isolationism (A, the opposite approach) or détente (C, a later 1970s relaxation of tensions). Containment explicitly rejected rolling back existing communist states by force (D). (B).

### Câu 3 (8.2)

The Marshall Plan (1948) is best understood as an attempt to contain communism primarily by:

- (A) Providing large-scale economic aid to rebuild Western European economies, reducing the poverty and instability in which communist movements might otherwise gain support
- (B) Sending American combat troops to occupy all of Western Europe
- (C) Establishing a permanent military alliance with the Soviet Union
- (D) Building the first American nuclear weapons

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The Marshall Plan's roughly thirteen billion dollars in reconstruction aid targeted the economic desperation across postwar Western Europe that American officials feared could fuel communist political movements – an economic, not primarily military, containment tool (ruling out B). It created no alliance with the USSR (C, the opposite of Cold War alignment) and was unrelated to nuclear weapons development (D). (A).

**Câu 4 (8.2) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE reason the Truman Doctrine (1947) marked a significant change in traditional American foreign policy.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way the Berlin Airlift (1948–1949) demonstrated the practical application of containment.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE reason the Soviet Union created the Warsaw Pact (1955).

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The Truman Doctrine committed the United States to providing aid to any nation resisting communist subversion anywhere in the world, breaking decisively with the country's traditional reluctance to make open-ended peacetime commitments to foreign conflicts outside the Western Hemisphere.
- (b) Rather than risk direct armed conflict by forcing open a land corridor into blockaded West Berlin, the United States and Britain resupplied the city entirely by air for nearly eleven months, demonstrating that containment could resist Soviet pressure firmly without provoking a shooting war.
- (c) The Soviet Union organized the Warsaw Pact in 1955, uniting its Eastern European satellite states in a formal military alliance, directly in response to West Germany's admission into NATO that same year, which the USSR viewed as a direct security threat.

**Câu 5 (8.3)**

The House Un-American Activities Committee's investigation of the "Hollywood Ten" in 1947 most directly resulted in:

- (A) The immediate conviction of all ten individuals for espionage
- (B) Their citation for contempt of Congress and subsequent industry blacklisting after they refused to testify about their political associations
- (C) The abolition of HUAC
- (D) The passage of the Voting Rights Act

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The ten screenwriters and directors refused, on First Amendment grounds, to answer HUAC's questions about their political affiliations; Congress cited them for contempt, and the film industry subsequently blacklisted them, denying them work for years, even though they were not convicted of espionage (A is wrong). HUAC continued operating for decades afterward (C is wrong), and the Voting Rights Act (D, 1965) is unrelated to this domestic anti-communist investigation. **(B)**.

**Câu 6 (8.3)**

Senator Joseph McCarthy's political influence collapsed most directly because of:

- |                                                                                                                         |                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) His own request to retire from the Senate                                                                           | censure by the Senate                                               |
| (B) The televised 1954 Army-McCarthy hearings, which exposed his bullying tactics to a national audience and led to his | (C) His conviction for espionage                                    |
|                                                                                                                         | (D) President Eisenhower's public endorsement of his investigations |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The nationally televised Army-McCarthy hearings let the public see McCarthy's aggressive, often baseless accusatory tactics directly, discrediting him and leading the Senate to formally censure him later in 1954 – he did not retire voluntarily (A), was never convicted of any crime himself (C), and Eisenhower privately distrusted McCarthy rather than endorsing him (D). **(B)**.

**Câu 7 (8.3) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE reason the Alger Hiss case (1948–1950) intensified American fears of communist subversion.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way McCarthyism affected due process or civil liberties in the United States.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE piece of historical context (beyond McCarthy himself) that helps explain why these fears felt credible to many Americans in the early 1950s.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Because Hiss had held a senior State Department position, his conviction for perjury (after being accused of passing secrets to the Soviets) convinced many Americans that communist infiltration reached the highest levels of the federal government, not merely marginal political circles.
- (b) McCarthy's unsubstantiated public accusations led to guilt by association, blacklisting without formal trial or evidence, and ruined careers and reputations based on rumor rather than proven wrongdoing, representing a significant erosion of due-process norms.
- (c) The Soviet Union's successful 1949 atomic bomb test and the 1949 communist victory in the Chinese Civil War both suggested that communism was expanding rapidly and unexpectedly, making claims of internal subversion seem more plausible to an anxious public.

## Câu 8 (8.4)

The GI Bill (1944) and postwar suburbanization (e.g., Levittown) together most directly illustrate:

- (A) Federal policy actively subsidizing the growth of a white suburban middle class, while discriminatory lending practices like redlining largely excluded Black veterans from the same benefits
- (B) Total absence of any federal role in the postwar economy
- (C) Equal access to mortgage benefits regardless of race
- (D) A decline in American homeownership rates after 1945

## Lời giải chi tiết

Federal mortgage guarantees and GI Bill benefits fueled a historic expansion of suburban, largely white homeownership, but discriminatory practices like redlining routinely denied equivalent mortgage access to Black veterans and families (contradicting C), showing active, unequal federal involvement rather than the absence of one (B is wrong) – and homeownership rates rose sharply, not declined, after 1945 (D is wrong). (A).

## Câu 9 (8.4)

Which of the following best explains the origins of the postwar “Baby Boom” (roughly 1946–1964)?

- (A) Rising immigration from Europe
- (B) Postwar economic prosperity, optimism about the future, and the return of millions of veterans starting families
- (C) Government mandates requiring larger families
- (D) A sharp decline in the American standard of living

## Lời giải chi tiết

Rising incomes, suburban home construction, and general postwar optimism, combined with millions of returning veterans starting families, together produced a sustained surge in birth rates – not government mandates (C, which did not exist) or immigration (A, a separate demographic factor) or declining living standards (D, the opposite of the era’s actual prosperity). (B).

## Câu 10 (8.5)

The Beat Generation writers (Jack Kerouac, Allen Ginsberg) of the 1950s are most notable for:

- (A) Celebrating suburban conformity and corporate loyalty
- (B) Rejecting mainstream materialism and social convention in favor of spontaneity and nonconformity, anticipating the 1960s counterculture
- (C) Supporting Senator McCarthy’s anti-communist investigations
- (D) Advocating a return to strict prewar isolationism

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Kerouac's *On the Road* and Ginsberg's *Howl* explicitly challenged 1950s conformity and materialism (the opposite of A), had no relationship to McCarthy's anti-communist crusade (C), and addressed cultural rather than foreign-policy questions (ruling out D) – their critique of convention directly foreshadowed the much larger 1960s counterculture. **(B)**.

**Câu 11 (8.6)**

NSC-68 (1950) marked a significant shift in Cold War strategy because it:

- |                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Recommended abandoning containment entirely                                                                                                                      | and diplomacy                                             |
| (B) Called for a massive, sustained military buildup and a willingness to resist communist expansion with force anywhere in the world, not just through economic aid | (C) Focused exclusively on economic aid to Western Europe |
|                                                                                                                                                                      | (D) Ended American involvement in the Korean War          |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

NSC-68 recast containment in explicitly militarized terms, arguing for a large permanent peacetime military buildup and readiness to use force globally – a clear departure from earlier reliance mainly on economic tools (ruling out C) – while still operating fully within, not abandoning, containment's basic logic (A is wrong). The Korean War began, rather than ended, shortly after NSC-68 was written (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Câu 12 (8.6) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE reason President Truman committed U.S. forces to the Korean War without a formal congressional declaration of war.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE reason China intervened militarily in the Korean War in late 1950.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way the Korean War's outcome (1953) reflected the broader logic of containment rather than an attempt to fully defeat communism in Korea.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Truman acted under the authority of a United Nations Security Council resolution (possible because the Soviet Union was boycotting the Council at the time) and under the broader logic of NSC-68, which held that resisting communist aggression anywhere required rapid, decisive action rather than a lengthy congressional debate.
- (b) China intervened after UN forces, following the Inchon landing, pushed north toward the Yalu River near the Chinese border, and Chinese leaders feared a hostile, U.S.-aligned government directly on their border as a serious national security threat.
- (c) The 1953 armistice restored a boundary near the original 38th parallel rather than pursuing total victory over North Korea, consistent with containment's goal of stopping communism's *further* spread rather than rolling back existing communist territory by force.

**Câu 13 (8.7)**

Eisenhower's doctrine of "massive retaliation" relied primarily on:

- (A) Matching Soviet and Chinese conventional forces soldier for soldier
- (B) The threat of overwhelming nuclear retaliation against major communist aggression, allowing reduced spending on conventional forces
- (C) Complete nuclear disarmament
- (D) A permanent, formal alliance with the Soviet Union

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Eisenhower and Secretary of State Dulles favored relying on the threat of overwhelming nuclear response rather than costly conventional force parity (ruling out A), seeking "more bang for the buck" – the opposite of disarmament (C) – and this had nothing to do with an alliance with the USSR (D). **(B)**.

**Câu 14 (8.7)**

The Soviet launch of Sputnik (1957) most directly led to which U.S. government response?

- (A) Immediate American withdrawal from the Cold War
- (B) The creation of NASA and increased federal funding for science and math education
- (C) The end of the space race
- (D) The signing of the Paris Peace Accords

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Sputnik's launch shocked Americans into believing they had fallen behind in science and technology, prompting the National Defense Education Act and the creation of NASA (1958) to compete in a new space race – not ending it (C) – and had no connection to the Paris Peace Accords (D, a 1973 Vietnam War agreement) or full Cold War withdrawal (A). **(B)**.

**Câu 15 (8.7)**

Which of the following best distinguishes the Cuban Missile Crisis (October 1962) from the Bay of Pigs invasion (April 1961)?

- (A) The Missile Crisis involved a direct U.S.–Soviet nuclear standoff over missiles already installed in Cuba, resolved through negotiation, while the Bay of Pigs was a failed American-organized invasion attempt using Cuban exiles
- (B) The Bay of Pigs occurred after the Missile Crisis
- (C) Both events involved identical American military strategies
- (D) Neither event involved Fidel Castro's government

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The Bay of Pigs (April 1961) was a failed CIA-organized invasion by Cuban exiles that pushed Castro toward closer Soviet ties, while the Cuban Missile Crisis (October 1962) was a direct nuclear standoff over Soviet missiles already in Cuba, resolved by negotiated withdrawal rather than invasion – the Bay of Pigs came first, not after (B is wrong), the strategies were entirely

different (C is wrong), and both events centrally involved Castro's Cuba (D is wrong). **(A)**.

**Câu 16 (8.8)**

*Brown v. Board of Education* (1954) is most significant because it:

- |                                                                                                                                          |                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Declared racially segregated public schools unconstitutional, overturning <i>Plessy v. Ferguson</i> 's "separate but equal" doctrine | (B) Ended all forms of racial segregation immediately nationwide |
| (C) Established the Voting Rights Act                                                                                                    | (D) Was rejected by the Supreme Court                            |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The unanimous 1954 ruling held that segregated public schools were inherently unequal, directly overturning the 1896 *Plessy* precedent – though implementation was slow and uneven, meaning it did not end all segregation immediately (B is wrong); it is unrelated to the later Voting Rights Act (C, 1965) and was, of course, decided by the Court, not rejected by it (D is wrong). **(A)**.

**Câu 17 (8.8)**

President Eisenhower's decision to send federal troops to Little Rock, Arkansas, in 1957 most directly demonstrated:

- |                                                                                                          |                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| (A) Federal willingness to enforce court-ordered school desegregation against a defiant state government | (C) The start of the Freedom Rides       |
| (B) Opposition to the <i>Brown v. Board</i> decision                                                     | (D) Support for the Black Power movement |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

When Governor Faubus used the state National Guard to block integration of Central High School, Eisenhower asserted federal supremacy by sending U.S. troops to enforce the court order and protect the Little Rock Nine – an act *upholding*, not opposing, *Brown* (B is wrong). This is unrelated to the 1961 Freedom Rides (C) or the later, more confrontational Black Power movement (D). **(A)**.

**Câu 18 (8.8)**

The 1963 March on Washington for Jobs and Freedom most directly contributed to the passage of:

- |                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (A) The Civil Rights Act of 1964 | (C) The Emancipation Proclamation |
| (B) The Nineteenth Amendment     | (D) The Compromise of 1877        |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The march's scale (roughly 250,000 participants) and King's "I Have a Dream" speech built crucial national momentum and moral pressure that helped secure passage of the Civil Rights Act the following year; the other options are from entirely different eras (the Nineteenth Amend-

ment, 1920; the Emancipation Proclamation, 1863; the Compromise of 1877). **(A)**.

### Câu 19 (8.8) – SAQ

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

(a) Briefly explain ONE difference between the strategic philosophy of Martin Luther King Jr. and that of Malcolm X or the later Black Power movement.

(b) Briefly explain ONE specific provision of the Civil Rights Act of 1964.

(c) Briefly explain ONE specific provision of the Voting Rights Act of 1965 that differs from the Civil Rights Act of 1964.

### Lời giải chi tiết

(a) King's mainstream movement pursued integration through strict nonviolent civil disobedience and moral persuasion, while Malcolm X and the later Black Power movement emphasized Black self-determination, cultural pride, and, at times, openness to armed self-defense rather than exclusive reliance on nonviolence.

(b) The Civil Rights Act of 1964 banned discrimination in employment and in public accommodations such as restaurants, hotels, and theaters on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin.

(c) The Voting Rights Act of 1965, unlike the 1964 Act's focus on employment and accommodations, specifically banned literacy tests and authorized direct federal oversight (preclearance) of voter registration procedures in jurisdictions with histories of racial discrimination in voting.

### Câu 20 (8.9)

Students for a Democratic Society (SDS) and its 1962 Port Huron Statement most directly called for:

- |                                                                                                                            |                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>(A)</b> Continued strict Cold War military buildup                                                                      | <b>(C)</b> A return to 1950s conformist corporate culture               |
| <b>(B)</b> "Participatory democracy" and a critique of both Cold War militarism and complacent mainstream liberal politics | <b>(D)</b> Support for Senator McCarthy's anti-communist investigations |

### Lời giải chi tiết

The Port Huron Statement articulated the New Left's vision of "participatory democracy," criticizing both Cold War militarism and what its authors saw as an overly cautious liberal establishment – the opposite of embracing conformist corporate culture (C) or McCarthyist anti-communism (D), and it did not call for expanded military buildup (A). **(B)**.

### Câu 21 (8.10)

Which of the following best distinguishes Medicare from Medicaid, both created in 1965 under the Great Society?

- (A) Medicare provided health insurance for Americans over 65; Medicaid provided health insurance for low-income Americans
- (B) Medicare and Medicaid are simply two names for the same identical program
- (C) Medicaid was created decades before Medicare
- (D) Medicare applied only to veterans

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Medicare provided federal health insurance specifically for Americans aged 65 and older, while Medicaid provided health insurance for low-income Americans regardless of age – two distinct programs (ruling out B) created simultaneously in 1965 (ruling out C), with Medicare's eligibility based on age rather than veteran status (ruling out D). **(A)**.

**Câu 22 (8.10) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE goal of Lyndon Johnson's "War on Poverty."
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way the Immigration and Nationality Act of 1965 changed U.S. immigration policy.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE reason the Vietnam War complicated Johnson's ability to fully fund Great Society programs.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The War on Poverty, launched through the Economic Opportunity Act of 1964, aimed to reduce poverty through programs like Head Start (early childhood education), Job Corps (job training), and VISTA (domestic community service), addressing poverty's causes rather than only its symptoms.
- (b) The 1965 Immigration and Nationality Act abolished the restrictive national-origins quota system in place since 1924 (which had favored Northern and Western European immigrants), opening the door to substantially increased immigration from Asia, Latin America, and Africa.
- (c) The escalating financial cost of fighting the Vietnam War diverted federal budget resources and Johnson's own political attention away from Great Society programs, forcing trade-offs between "guns and butter" that ultimately limited the scope of domestic reform.

**Câu 23 (8.11)**

The Gulf of Tonkin Resolution (1964) is most significant because it:

- (A) Formally declared war on North Vietnam
- (B) Granted the president broad authority to escalate military action in Vietnam without a formal declaration of war
- (C) Ended American combat involvement in Vietnam
- (D) Established the Paris Peace Accords

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Congress's near-unanimous resolution, passed after reported attacks on U.S. destroyers, gave Johnson sweeping authority to escalate the war without the constitutional step of a formal declaration of war (ruling out A) – it began, rather than ended, major American combat involvement (C is wrong) and long preceded the 1973 Paris Peace Accords (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Câu 24 (8.11)**

The 1968 Tet Offensive damaged American public support for the Vietnam War primarily because:

- (A) It resulted in a decisive North Vietnamese military victory that ended the war  
(B) Although repelled militarily, its scale and reach directly contradicted official U.S. assurances that victory was near, shattering public trust  
(C) It led directly to the Gulf of Tonkin Resolution  
(D) It marked the first American combat deaths of the war

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Despite being a military defeat for the Viet Cong and North Vietnam (ruling out A, since the war continued for years afterward), the offensive's unexpected scale – including an attack on the U.S. embassy in Saigon – exposed the gap between official optimism and battlefield reality, badly damaging public trust; it followed, rather than caused, the 1964 Gulf of Tonkin Resolution (C is wrong) and came years after the first American combat deaths (D is wrong). (B).

**Câu 25 (8.11) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE goal of President Nixon's policy of "Vietnamization."  
(b) Briefly explain ONE reason Congress passed the War Powers Act (1973) over Nixon's veto.  
(c) Briefly explain ONE way the outcome of the Vietnam War (1975) differed from the outcome of the Korean War (1953).

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Vietnamization aimed to gradually withdraw American ground troops from Vietnam while building up South Vietnamese forces to assume primary combat responsibility, reducing American casualties and domestic antiwar pressure without immediately abandoning the South Vietnamese government.  
(b) Congress passed the War Powers Act after concluding that the Gulf of Tonkin Resolution and decades of expanding presidential war-making authority (culminating in Nixon's undisclosed bombing of Cambodia) had dangerously concentrated war powers in the executive branch without adequate congressional check.  
(c) The Korean War ended in a stalemate that preserved South Korea as a separate non-communist state, while the Vietnam War ended with North Vietnamese forces capturing Saigon in 1975 and reunifying the entire country under communist rule – a clear defeat for containment in Vietnam that Korea's inconclusive but stable outcome had avoided.

**Câu 26 (8.11)**

Which of the following most accurately describes the outcome of the Vietnam War for the United States?

- (A) A decisive American military and political victory
- (B) The Paris Peace Accords (1973) ended direct U.S. combat involvement, but fighting continued until North Vietnamese forces captured Saigon in 1975, reunifying Vietnam under communist rule
- (C) Vietnam was partitioned permanently along the 17th parallel, similar to Korea
- (D) The United States annexed South Vietnam as a territory

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The 1973 accords removed American combat troops and secured POW releases but did not end the underlying conflict between North and South Vietnam, which North Vietnam ultimately won by capturing Saigon in April 1975 – the opposite of a decisive American victory (A is wrong), and unlike Korea, Vietnam was not left permanently divided (C is wrong); the U.S. never annexed South Vietnam as territory (D is wrong). (B).

**Câu 27 (8.12)**

Rachel Carson's *Silent Spring* (1962) most directly contributed to:

- (A) The launch of the modern American environmental movement by exposing the ecological and health dangers of pesticides like DDT
- (B) The creation of NASA
- (C) The passage of the Voting Rights Act
- (D) The start of the Cuban Missile Crisis

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Carson's book documented pesticides' cumulative dangers to ecosystems and human health, directly inspiring the environmental activism that produced the first Earth Day (1970) and the EPA (1970) and eventually the 1972 ban on DDT – it had no connection to NASA's creation (B, a response to Sputnik), the Voting Rights Act (C, a civil rights measure), or the Cuban Missile Crisis (D, a nuclear standoff). (A).

**Câu 28 (8.12) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE reason the first Earth Day (1970) reflected growing environmental awareness in the United States.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way the creation of the EPA (1970) changed the federal government's role in environmental policy.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way the 1973 OPEC oil embargo affected American domestic and foreign policy.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The first Earth Day mobilized an estimated twenty million Americans in coordinated demonstrations and teach-ins, showing that concern about pollution and environmental degradation (fueled in part by works like Carson's *Silent Spring*) had become a genuinely mass, bipartisan public movement rather than a niche scientific concern.
- (b) The EPA consolidated federal authority over air and water pollution regulation and enforcement, which had previously been fragmented across multiple agencies, giving the federal government a single, dedicated body responsible for environmental protection.

(c) The embargo, imposed in retaliation for U.S. support of Israel, caused gas shortages and sharply higher prices, exposing American dependence on foreign oil and prompting conservation measures at home (a national speed limit) while also complicating U.S. diplomatic flexibility in the Middle East.

**Câu 29 (8.13)**

The founding of the National Organization for Women (NOW) in 1966 most directly reflected:

- |                                                                                                                                             |      |                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------------------------------------|
| (A) Second-wave feminism's push for workplace equality, reproductive rights, and an end to legal and cultural restrictions on women's roles | 1964 | (C) Support for the Vietnam War               |
| (B) Opposition to the Civil Rights Act of 1964                                                                                              |      | (D) The goals of the American Indian Movement |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

NOW, founded by Betty Friedan and other activists, pursued workplace equality and reproductive rights as part of second-wave feminism, building on rather than opposing the Civil Rights Act's antidiscrimination framework (B is wrong); it was unrelated to support for the Vietnam War (C) and distinct from, though contemporaneous with, the American Indian Movement's separate goals (D). **(A)**.

**Câu 30 (8.13) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE goal of Cesar Chavez and the United Farm Workers within the broader Chicano movement.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE tactic used by the American Indian Movement (AIM) to protest federal Indian policy.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way the 1969 Stonewall riots affected the modern gay rights movement.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Chavez and Dolores Huerta organized migrant farmworkers into the United Farm Workers union, using boycotts (notably the Delano grape boycott, 1965–1970) and nonviolent tactics to demand higher wages, safer working conditions, and union recognition for Mexican American and Filipino American laborers.
- (b) AIM organized direct-action occupations of sites with symbolic and legal significance to Native American history, including Alcatraz Island (1969–1971) and Wounded Knee, South Dakota (1973), to draw national attention to treaty violations and demand greater tribal sovereignty.
- (c) The spontaneous, multi-night resistance to a police raid at the Stonewall Inn is widely credited with catalyzing the modern gay rights movement, inspiring the founding of new gay rights organizations and annual pride marches commemorating the event.

**Câu 31 (8.14)**

President Nixon's 1972 visit to China is most significant because it:

- (A) Formally ended the Cold War  
(B) Opened formal diplomatic contact with communist China for the first time since 1949, exploiting the Sino-Soviet split  
(C) Led directly to the Vietnam War's escalation  
(D) Was universally condemned by the American public

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Nixon's visit opened the first formal U.S. diplomatic contact with the People's Republic of China since the 1949 communist revolution, strategically exploiting tensions between China and the Soviet Union – it did not end the broader Cold War, which continued for nearly two more decades (A is wrong), was unrelated to Vietnam's military escalation (C is wrong), and was in fact widely praised as a diplomatic achievement (D is wrong). **(B)**.

**Câu 32 (8.14) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE way the Watergate break-in (1972) differed from Nixon's subsequent cover-up in terms of its political consequences.  
(b) Briefly explain ONE reform enacted in response to Watergate.  
(c) Briefly explain ONE way Watergate reflected a broader pattern of declining public trust in government during the 1970s.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The break-in itself was a relatively minor, if illegal, campaign operation; it was Nixon's subsequent effort to obstruct the investigation and conceal his own knowledge of the cover-up – revealed through the secret White House tapes – that ultimately destroyed his presidency and forced his resignation.  
(b) In Watergate's aftermath, Congress strengthened campaign-finance disclosure and contribution limits and passed the War Powers Act (1973), aiming to prevent future abuses of executive power in both domestic political operations and unchecked war-making.  
(c) Watergate compounded the "credibility gap" already opened by the Vietnam War's Tet Offensive and the broader sense that government officials had misled the public, contributing to a durable decline in Americans' trust in the presidency and federal institutions that persisted through the rest of the 1970s.

## Period 9 --- The Contemporary Era (1980--Present)

**Mục tiêu Unit:** Phân tích cuộc bầu cử Reagan 1980 và sự trỗi dậy của phong trào bảo thủ (Reaganomics, phi điều tiết, Tân Hữu Tôn giáo, tăng chi quốc phòng, vụ Iran-Contra); trình bày diễn biến kết thúc Chiến tranh Lạnh (glasnost/perestroika của Gorbachev, sụp đổ Bức tường Berlin 1989, Liên Xô tan rã 1991, Chiến tranh Vùng Vịnh 1991); giải thích toàn cầu hoá kinh tế (NAFTA 1994, cách mạng công nghệ/Internet, suy giảm công nghiệp chế tạo, bất bình đẳng thu nhập); mô tả biến đổi di trú và nhân khẩu học từ 1980 (IRCA 1986); phân tích các cuộc chiến văn hoá (phá thai, hành động khẳng định, hôn nhân đồng giới, kiểm soát súng, tôn giáo, phân cực chính trị); và đánh giá tính liên tục/thay đổi trong chính sách đối nội, đối ngoại từ 1990 đến nay (Clinton và cải cách phúc lợi, sự kiện 11/9, Đạo luật PATRIOT, chiến tranh Afghanistan/Iraq, khủng hoảng tài chính 2008, Obama và Đạo luật Chăm sóc Sức khoẻ Hợp túi tiền).

### 9.1 Contextualizing Period 9

By 1980, a decade of accumulated disillusionment – the Vietnam War’s defeat, the Watergate scandal, the 1973 and 1979 oil shocks, and “stagflation” (simultaneous high inflation and high unemployment, a combination Keynesian economics had not predicted) – had eroded public confidence in the federal government’s competence and honesty. The 1979–1981 Iran hostage crisis, in which Iranian revolutionaries held 52 American diplomats for 444 days, compounded a sense of national weakness. Ronald Reagan’s 1980 landslide election channeled this mood into a durable conservative political realignment that reshaped American politics for the following four decades. Period 9 is best understood as an ongoing argument over the proper size and role of the federal government – an argument renewed, in different form, by the 2008 financial crisis and the debates surrounding the Affordable Care Act. Internationally, the period opens with a renewed Cold War confrontation that ends, unexpectedly and largely peacefully, within a single decade, only to be replaced after 2001 by a less-defined, open-ended “War on Terror.” Domestically, accelerating globalization, a technological revolution centered on computing and the internet, changing immigration patterns, and sharpening cultural and partisan divisions define the era’s social landscape.

#### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

No single theme organizes Period 9 more consistently than a renewed national argument over the size and reach of the federal government. Reagan’s 1980s tax cuts and deregulation, Clinton’s 1996 declaration that “the era of big government is over,” the 2008–2010 debate over TARP and the Affordable Care Act, and the Tea Party movement’s protest against federal spending all represent the same underlying, recurring debate – one with roots stretching back to the New Deal (Period 7) and Great Society (Period 8) expansions of federal authority that conservatives after 1980 explicitly sought to roll back.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Đến năm 1980, một loạt thất bại và khủng hoảng liên tiếp (Việt Nam, Watergate, khủng hoảng dầu mỏ, “stagflation” – lạm phát và thất nghiệp cùng tăng, khủng hoảng con tin Iran 1979–81) làm suy giảm niềm tin vào chính phủ liên bang. Chiến thắng long trời của Reagan năm 1980 khởi động một cuộc tái sắp xếp chính trị bảo thủ kéo dài suốt bốn thập niên sau đó. Period 9 xoay quanh câu hỏi cốt lõi: vai trò và quy mô của chính phủ liên bang nên lớn hay nhỏ – câu hỏi này tái xuất hiện qua khủng hoảng tài chính 2008 và tranh luận về Obamacare.

| Decade        | Key domestic developments                                                                                                                                   | Key foreign-policy developments                                                                                         |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1980s         | Reagan election (1980); Reaganomics, tax cuts, deregulation; Religious Right's rise; Iran-Contra affair (1985–87)                                           | Renewed Cold War rhetoric and defense buildup; Reagan-Gorbachev summits; INF Treaty (1987)                              |
| 1990s         | NAFTA (1994); dot-com/internet boom; welfare reform (1996); IRCA's effects continue to reshape demographics                                                 | Fall of Berlin Wall (1989); Soviet dissolution (1991); Gulf War (1991); post-Cold War “new world order”                 |
| 2000s         | Contested 2000 election; USA PATRIOT Act; culture-war court cases (Lawrence v. Texas, 2003); housing bubble                                                 | September 11 attacks (2001); wars in Afghanistan (2001) and Iraq (2003)                                                 |
| 2010s–present | 2008 financial crisis's aftermath; Obama's election (2008) and Affordable Care Act (2010); rising partisan polarization; social media's political influence | Bin Laden killed (2011); withdrawal from Iraq (2011) and Afghanistan (2021); ongoing debates over America's global role |

Period 9 at a glance: domestic and foreign-policy developments organized by decade.

## 9.2 Reagan and the Conservative Ascendancy

### 9.2.1 The 1980 election and conservative realignment

Ronald Reagan, a former California governor and Hollywood actor, defeated incumbent Jimmy Carter in a 1980 landslide (489 to 49 electoral votes), assembling a broad new conservative coalition: economic conservatives favoring lower taxes and deregulation, social and religious conservatives mobilized around opposition to abortion and support for “traditional values,” and foreign-policy hawks who believed Carter-era détente had left the United States dangerously weak relative to the Soviet Union. Reagan also won over many traditionally Democratic, working-class white voters – so-called “Reagan Democrats” – who were drawn to his anti-tax, anti-government, and culturally conservative message. This coalition built on an earlier tax revolt exemplified by California's Proposition 13 (1978), which had capped property taxes and signaled grassroots hostility to rising government spending. Reagan's optimistic rhetoric – promising to restore national confidence after a decade of perceived decline – proved durable enough to win a second landslide reelection in 1984.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Reagan đánh bại Carter năm 1980 với chiến thắng áp đảo, tập hợp một liên minh bảo thủ mới: người bảo thủ kinh tế (giảm thuế, phi điều tiết), người bảo thủ tôn giáo – xã hội (chống phá thai, đề cao “giá trị truyền thống”), và phe điều hòa đối ngoại. Nhiều cử tri lao động da trắng truyền thống theo đảng Dân chủ (“Reagan Democrats”) cũng chuyển sang ủng hộ ông. Phong trào chống thuế (như Proposition 13 ở California, 1978) là nền tảng cho làn sóng bảo thủ này.

### 9.2.2 Reaganomics: supply-side theory in practice

Reagan's economic program, popularly called "**Reaganomics**," rested on **supply-side theory**: the claim, associated with economist Arthur Laffer, that sharply cutting marginal tax rates would spur enough new investment, work effort, and economic growth to offset – and eventually exceed – the resulting loss in government revenue. The **Economic Recovery Tax Act** (1981) cut the top marginal income tax rate from 70 percent to 50 percent, and the **Tax Reform Act** (1986) cut it further to 28 percent. Reagan also pursued **deregulation**, loosening federal oversight of industries including savings and loan banking, air travel, and the environment, on the theory that market competition served consumers better than government rules. Domestic discretionary spending was cut, but defense spending rose sharply as part of the administration's Cold War buildup, and Social Security and Medicare – politically untouchable "entitlement" programs – were left largely intact. The combined effect of tax cuts and rising defense spending, without matching cuts elsewhere, nearly tripled the federal debt during Reagan's presidency, from roughly \$900 billion to almost \$2.9 trillion – an outcome critics considered a direct contradiction of the administration's small-government rhetoric.

#### Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology

Reaganomics illustrates a genuine tension within 1980s conservatism: the same administration that rhetorically championed smaller government simultaneously presided over the largest peacetime defense buildup in American history and a near-tripling of the national debt, since tax cuts were not matched by proportional spending cuts – a pattern of rhetorical small-government conservatism alongside large fiscal deficits that recurred in later Republican administrations as well.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

"Reaganomics" dựa trên lý thuyết trọng cung (supply-side): giảm mạnh thuế suất biên sẽ kích thích đầu tư và tăng trưởng đủ để bù đắp phần thu ngân sách bị mất. Đạo luật Phục hồi Kinh tế 1981 giảm thuế suất cao nhất từ 70% xuống 50%; Đạo luật Cải cách Thuế 1986 giảm tiếp xuống 28%. Reagan cũng thúc đẩy phi điều tiết (deregulation) và cắt giảm chi tiêu trong nước, nhưng chi tiêu quốc phòng lại tăng mạnh – khiến nợ công liên bang gần như tăng gấp ba trong nhiệm kỳ của ông.

#### HIPP document analysis – Reagan's First Inaugural Address (1981)

**Excerpt:** "In this present crisis, government is not the solution to our problem; government is the problem... It is my intention to curb the size and influence of the federal establishment... All of us together, in and out of government, must bear the burden. The solutions we seek must be equitable, with no one group singled out to pay a higher price."

**Historical situation:** Delivered in January 1981, amid double-digit inflation, high unemployment, and a national mood of pessimism following the Iran hostage crisis and a decade of economic stagnation.

**Point of view:** Reagan speaks as a newly elected president explicitly rejecting the New Deal/-Great Society premise, dominant since the 1930s, that an active federal government was the primary tool for solving economic problems.

**Purpose:** To justify, at the outset of his presidency, a sweeping program of tax cuts, deregulation, and reduced domestic spending as a direct response to what he characterized as government overreach.

**Significance:** The speech announced the ideological framework – distrust of federal power as an economic actor – that shaped Reaganomics and became a defining touchstone for American conservatism for decades afterward, even as defense spending rose sharply under the same administration.

### 9.2.3 The Religious Right's political rise

Evangelical Christian political mobilization became a crucial pillar of the new conservative coalition. Reverend Jerry Falwell founded the **Moral Majority** in 1979, organizing conservative evangelicals into an effective political voting bloc opposed to legalized abortion (following *Roe v. Wade*, 1973), the Equal Rights Amendment, and expanding gay rights, and supportive of prayer in public schools and “traditional family values.” This “**Religious Right**” provided Reagan and subsequent Republican candidates with a highly motivated grassroots base and helped move debates over abortion, school prayer, and sexuality to the center of national politics – issues that had rarely been partisan flash-points before the 1970s.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Phong trào Tân Hữu Tôn giáo (Religious Right) trở thành trụ cột của liên minh bảo thủ mới. Mục sư Jerry Falwell thành lập tổ chức Moral Majority năm 1979, huy động cử tri Tin Lành bảo thủ phản đối phá thai, chống Tu chính án Bình quyền (ERA), và ủng hộ cầu nguyện trong trường công. Phong trào này đưa các vấn đề đạo đức – tôn giáo vào trung tâm chính trị đảng phái Mỹ.

### 9.2.4 Defense buildup and the Iran-Contra affair

Reagan pursued an assertive Cold War posture, sharply increasing defense spending and, in 1983, proposing the **Strategic Defense Initiative (SDI)**, nicknamed “Star Wars”, a space-based missile-defense system intended to render Soviet nuclear missiles “impotent and obsolete.” Though never fully built, SDI pressured an already economically strained Soviet Union to consider matching an enormously expensive new arms race it could ill afford. Reagan’s assertiveness produced the administration’s greatest scandal: the **Iran-Contra affair** (1985–1987), in which senior National Security Council officials, including Lieutenant Colonel Oliver North, secretly arranged arms sales to Iran – then under a U.S. arms embargo – partly to secure the release of American hostages held by Iranian-backed groups in Lebanon, and covertly diverted the proceeds to fund the **Contra** rebels fighting Nicaragua’s leftist Sandinista government, directly violating the congressional Boland Amendment’s ban on military aid to the Contras. When the scheme became public in late 1986, congressional hearings in 1987 exposed a serious breach of constitutional checks on executive power, though investigators found no conclusive evidence that Reagan personally authorized the diversion of funds; several officials were later convicted, and some were pardoned by President George H.W. Bush in 1992.

#### Theme: NAT – National Identity

Iran-Contra revived, in a new form, the same constitutional question raised by Watergate a decade earlier: how far executive-branch officials can go in pursuing foreign-policy goals without congressional oversight or authorization. That the scandal did not produce impeachment (unlike Watergate) reflects both weaker direct evidence implicating Reagan personally and the country’s continued high regard for his broader leadership, but it renewed enduring American anxieties about unchecked presidential power in foreign affairs.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Reagan tăng mạnh chi tiêu quốc phòng và đề xuất Sáng kiến Phòng thủ Chiến lược (SDI, “Star Wars”, 1983) – hệ thống phòng thủ tên lửa trong không gian, gây áp lực buộc Liên Xô phải chạy đua vũ trang dù nền kinh tế đã suy yếu. Vụ Iran-Contra (1985–87): quan chức Nhà Trắng bí mật bán vũ khí cho Iran để đổi lấy con tin, rồi chuyển tiền thu được tài trợ cho quân Contra chống chính phủ Sandinista tả khuynh ở Nicaragua – vi phạm Tu chính án Boland của Quốc hội. Vụ việc làm suy yếu uy tín nhiệm kỳ hai của Reagan nhưng không dẫn đến luận tội.

(!) **Lỗi thường gặp:** Students often assume Reagan's small-government rhetoric meant the federal government actually shrank during the 1980s. In practice, **total federal spending and the national debt both grew substantially** under Reagan, because defense spending rose sharply even as some domestic programs were cut, and tax cuts were not offset by matching spending reductions. On the exam, do not describe Reagan as having "reduced the size of government" in an unqualified way – the accurate claim is that Reagan cut *taxes*, cut *some domestic discretionary spending*, and deregulated several industries, while defense spending and the overall federal debt rose.

## 9.3 The End of the Cold War

### 9.3.1 Gorbachev, glasnost, and perestroika

Mikhail Gorbachev became General Secretary of the Soviet Communist Party in 1985, inheriting an economy badly strained by decades of inefficient central planning, a costly arms race with the United States, and an unwinnable war in Afghanistan (since 1979). Gorbachev introduced two landmark reforms: **glasnost** ("openness"), which relaxed censorship and permitted unprecedented public criticism of Soviet institutions, and **perestroika** ("restructuring"), which introduced limited market mechanisms into the rigid Soviet command economy. Rather than stabilizing the system, these reforms unleashed long-suppressed nationalist and reformist pressures across the Soviet Union and its Eastern European satellites that ultimately proved impossible to contain.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Gorbachev lên nắm quyền năm 1985, kế thừa một nền kinh tế Liên Xô kiệt quệ vì kế hoạch hoá tập trung kém hiệu quả, chạy đua vũ trang tốn kém, và cuộc chiến sa lầy ở Afghanistan. Ông đưa ra glasnost (công khai hoá, nói lòng kiểm duyệt) và perestroika (cải tổ kinh tế, đưa cơ chế thị trường hạn chế vào nền kinh tế Xô Viết). Thay vì ổn định hệ thống, hai cải cách này lại giải phóng các áp lực dân tộc chủ nghĩa và cải cách vốn bị đè nén từ lâu.

### 9.3.2 The fall of the Berlin Wall and Soviet dissolution

Reagan and Gorbachev held a series of summits (Geneva 1985, Reykjavik 1986, Washington 1987, Moscow 1988) that produced the **Intermediate-Range Nuclear Forces (INF) Treaty** (1987), the first agreement to eliminate an entire class of nuclear weapons; Reagan's 1987 speech at Berlin's Brandenburg Gate – "Mr. Gorbachev, tear down this wall!" – became an iconic Cold War image, even though the wall's fall two years later owed far more to internal Eastern European upheaval than to any single American speech. As glasnost weakened Soviet control, popular movements toppled communist governments across Eastern Europe in 1989 – Poland's Solidarity movement, mass protests in East Germany – and on **November 9, 1989**, East German authorities opened the **Berlin Wall**, the most visible symbol of Cold War division since 1961. Reunification of Germany followed in 1990. Gorbachev's reforms, intended to save Soviet communism, instead accelerated its collapse: a failed hardline coup against Gorbachev in August 1991 boosted the standing of reformist Russian leader Boris Yeltsin, and by **December 1991** the Soviet Union formally dissolved into fifteen independent states, ending the Cold War after more than four decades.

#### Theme: WOR – America in the World

The Cold War's end resulted from a combination of factors that students should be able to weigh, not attribute to any single cause: the Soviet Union's own severe internal economic weaknesses and the costs of its war in Afghanistan; Gorbachev's reforms (glasnost and perestroika), which unintentionally accelerated rather than prevented systemic collapse; sustained American containment and defense spending (including SDI) that pressured Soviet resources;

and grassroots popular movements across Eastern Europe (Poland's Solidarity, mass protests in East Germany) that acted independently of both superpowers.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Các hội nghị thượng đỉnh Reagan–Gorbachev dẫn đến Hiệp ước INF (1987) xoá bỏ một loại vũ khí hạt nhân tầm trung. Phong trào quần chúng ở Đông Âu (Công đoàn Đoàn kết Ba Lan, biểu tình ở Đông Đức) làm sụp đổ các chính phủ cộng sản năm 1989; Bức tường Berlin mở cửa ngày 9/11/1989. Sau cuộc đảo chính bất thành chống Gorbachev (8/1991), Liên Xô chính thức tan rã thành 15 quốc gia độc lập vào tháng 12/1991, chấm dứt Chiến tranh Lạnh.

#### LEQ thesis model

**Prompt:** “Evaluate the extent to which United States policy was responsible for the end of the Cold War.”

**Model thesis:** While the Reagan administration's sustained defense buildup and the Strategic Defense Initiative added real economic pressure on an already struggling Soviet system, the Cold War's end in 1989–1991 resulted primarily from internal Soviet weaknesses and choices – decades of inefficient central planning, the costly Afghan war, and Gorbachev's own reforms (glasnost and perestroika), which unintentionally unleashed the nationalist and reformist forces that dissolved both the Eastern European satellite system and the Soviet Union itself – so American policy is best understood as an accelerating rather than a primary cause.

### 9.3.3 George H.W. Bush and the Gulf War

George H.W. Bush, Reagan's vice president, won the presidency in 1988 and confronted the first major post-Cold War international crisis when Iraqi dictator **Saddam Hussein** invaded neighboring Kuwait in August 1990, seizing its oil reserves. Bush assembled an unusually broad international coalition, backed by United Nations resolutions, and after Iraq refused to withdraw, coalition forces launched **Operation Desert Storm** in January 1991: a devastating air campaign followed by a 100-hour ground offensive that expelled Iraqi forces from Kuwait by late February 1991. Bush deliberately stopped short of pursuing Saddam Hussein's removal or occupying Iraq, reasoning that exceeding the UN mandate would fracture the coalition and risk a costly, open-ended occupation – a decision later revisited when his son, George W. Bush, invaded Iraq in 2003. The Gulf War's swift, low-casualty success briefly restored American confidence in its post-Vietnam military capability, though Bush's high wartime approval ratings did not prevent his defeat in the 1992 election, fought primarily over a domestic recession.

#### Theme: GEO – Geography and the Environment

The Gulf War underscored how deeply American strategic interests were tied to the geography of Middle Eastern oil reserves: Kuwait's and, by extension, Saudi Arabia's oil supplies were considered vital enough to global and American economic stability that Bush assembled an unprecedented international coalition, including Arab states, to reverse Iraq's invasion – a pattern of oil-driven Middle East engagement that continued to shape U.S. foreign policy well into the twenty-first century.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

George H.W. Bush đối mặt với khủng hoảng quốc tế đầu tiên thời hậu Chiến tranh Lạnh: Iraq dưới Saddam Hussein xâm lược Kuwait (8/1990). Bush tập hợp liên minh quốc tế rộng rãi được Liên Hợp Quốc hậu thuẫn; Chiến dịch Bão táp Sa mạc (1/1991) nhanh chóng đánh bật

quân Iraq khỏi Kuwait. Bush chủ động dừng lại, không lật đổ Saddam Hussein hay chiếm đóng Iraq – một quyết định được nhìn lại khi con trai ông, George W. Bush, xâm lược Iraq năm 2003.



Timeline: Period 9 at a glance, 1981–2008.

## 9.4 A Changing Economy

### 9.4.1 Globalization and NAFTA

Falling transportation and communication costs, reduced trade barriers, and the increasing mobility of capital accelerated **globalization**: American corporations increasingly manufactured goods overseas, where labor costs were lower, and sold products to a genuinely global marketplace. The **North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA)**, negotiated under George H.W. Bush and ratified under Bill Clinton, took effect on **January 1, 1994**, eliminating most tariffs among the United States, Canada, and Mexico. Supporters argued NAFTA would lower consumer prices and boost overall trade; critics, including labor unions and 1992 independent presidential candidate Ross Perot (who warned of a “giant sucking sound” as jobs moved south), argued it would accelerate the loss of American manufacturing jobs to lower-wage Mexican labor – a debate that intensified in later decades as manufacturing employment continued to decline.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

**VN** Toàn cầu hoá tăng tốc nhờ chi phí vận tải – liên lạc giảm và rào cản thương mại được dỡ bỏ. Hiệp định Thương mại Tự do Bắc Mỹ (NAFTA), có hiệu lực từ 1/1/1994, xoá bỏ phần lớn thuế quan giữa Mỹ, Canada, Mexico. Người ủng hộ cho rằng NAFTA hạ giá tiêu dùng và thúc đẩy thương mại; người phản đối (công đoàn, ứng viên Ross Perot) lo ngại việc làm sản xuất sẽ chuyển sang Mexico – nơi có chi phí lao động thấp hơn.

### 9.4.2 The technology and internet revolution

The spread of personal computers in the 1980s (Apple, IBM-compatible machines) and the development of the World Wide Web in the early 1990s transformed communication, commerce, and information access. A “dot-com” investment boom in the late 1990s – enthusiasm for new internet-based companies – collapsed in a sharp stock-market crash (2000–2001), but the underlying technology continued reshaping the economy: online retail (Amazon), internet search and advertising (Google), and, after the 2007 introduction of the smartphone, social media platforms (Facebook, Twitter) fundamentally altered how Americans worked, shopped, and communicated.

#### Theme: WXT – Work, Exchange, and Technology

The shift from an industrial to an information/service economy after 1980 mirrors, on a compressed timescale, the nineteenth-century shift from agriculture to industry: both transformations displaced entire categories of workers (agricultural laborers then, manufacturing workers now), created new forms of wealth and new elites (industrialists then, technology entrepreneurs now), and provoked political movements demanding that government address the resulting economic dislocation and inequality.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

**VN** Máy tính cá nhân (thập niên 1980) và World Wide Web (đầu thập niên 1990) làm thay đổi cách con người giao tiếp, kinh doanh, tiếp cận thông tin. Bong bóng đầu tư “dot-com” cuối thập

niên 1990 sụp đổ năm 2000–2001, nhưng công nghệ vẫn tiếp tục định hình lại nền kinh tế: bán lẻ trực tuyến (Amazon), tìm kiếm/quảng cáo (Google), và sau đó là mạng xã hội cùng điện thoại thông minh (từ 2007).

### 9.4.3 Deindustrialization and income inequality

As manufacturing jobs moved overseas or were automated, the traditional industrial “Rust Belt” of the Midwest and Northeast experienced sustained factory closures, population loss, and declining unionization, while employment growth concentrated instead in services, finance, healthcare, and technology – sectors that often required different skills and paid unevenly. The combined effect of globalization, automation, declining union membership, and tax policy changes since the 1980s was a substantial and sustained widening of **income inequality**: wages for many middle- and working-class workers stagnated in real terms even as productivity and the incomes of the highest earners rose sharply, a trend that became a central and recurring subject of political debate from the 1990s onward.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Khi việc làm sản xuất chuyển ra nước ngoài hoặc bị tự động hoá, vùng công nghiệp truyền thống “Rust Belt” (Trung Tây, Đông Bắc) chứng kiến nhà máy đóng cửa, dân số giảm, công đoàn suy yếu, trong khi việc làm tăng ở lĩnh vực dịch vụ, tài chính, công nghệ. Toàn cầu hoá, tự động hoá, công đoàn suy yếu và chính sách thuế từ thập niên 1980 cùng làm gia tăng bất bình đẳng thu nhập – lương của tầng lớp lao động trì trệ trong khi thu nhập của nhóm giàu nhất tăng vọt.

## 9.5 Migration and Immigration since 1980

The **Immigration Reform and Control Act (IRCA, 1986)** attempted a two-part compromise on illegal immigration: it granted a path to legal status (“amnesty”) for an estimated three million undocumented immigrants who could show continuous U.S. residence since before 1982, while for the first time imposing federal sanctions on employers who knowingly hired undocumented workers. IRCA reduced illegal immigration only temporarily, and later decades saw continued large-scale, often unauthorized migration, particularly from Mexico and Central America, alongside sharply rising legal immigration from Asia and Latin America – a continuation and acceleration of trends set in motion by the **Immigration and Nationality Act of 1965** (Period 8), which had abolished the restrictive national-origins quota system. By the early twenty-first century, the United States had become significantly more racially and ethnically diverse than in 1980, with Latino and Asian American populations growing especially rapidly, reshaping the electorate, popular culture, and regional demographics (notably in the Southwest, Florida, and major metropolitan areas nationwide). Debates over border security, unauthorized immigration, and the legal status of immigrants brought to the country as children (addressed in part by President Obama’s 2012 Deferred Action for Childhood Arrivals, or DACA, policy) remained a persistent and often sharply partisan feature of American politics through the end of the period.

### Theme: MIG – Migration and Settlement

Post-1980 immigration patterns represent a direct continuation of the demographic shift begun by the 1965 Hart-Celler Act: immigration increasingly originated from Latin America and Asia rather than Europe, producing a steadily more diverse population and electorate. IRCA’s mixed legacy – legalizing millions of existing residents while introducing (largely ineffective) employer sanctions – illustrates a recurring pattern in American immigration policy debates: attempts to combine enforcement measures with paths to legal status, each element satisfying different, often opposed political constituencies.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Đạo luật Cải cách và Kiểm soát Di trú (IRCA, 1986) là thoả hiệp hai phần: hợp pháp hoá khoảng 3 triệu người nhập cư không giấy tờ đã cư trú liên tục từ trước 1982, đồng thời lần đầu tiên áp chế tài với người sử dụng lao động cố tình thuê lao động bất hợp pháp. Xu hướng nhập cư từ châu Á và Mỹ Latinh (tiếp nối Đạo luật Di trú 1965) tiếp tục gia tăng, khiến nước Mỹ đa dạng chủng tộc hơn nhiều so với năm 1980, định hình lại thành phần cử tri và văn hoá đại chúng. Chính sách DACA (2012) của Obama giải quyết một phần vấn đề của người nhập cư đến Mỹ khi còn nhỏ.

## 9.6 Culture Wars

Beginning in the 1980s and intensifying thereafter, American politics became increasingly organized around sharp cultural and moral disagreements often called the “**culture wars**.” **Abortion** remained fiercely contested after *Roe v. Wade* (1973); in *Planned Parenthood v. Casey* (1992), the Supreme Court upheld a constitutional right to abortion while allowing states to impose regulations short of an “undue burden” on that right, and both pro-choice and pro-life activism remained a defining feature of American politics for decades afterward. **Affirmative action** in university admissions and employment, intended to remedy the effects of historical discrimination, faced sustained legal challenge; the Supreme Court permitted narrowly tailored consideration of race as one factor among many in *Grutter v. Bollinger* (2003), a position later reversed in *Students for Fair Admissions v. Harvard* (2023). **Same-sex marriage** moved from a marginal issue to a central one: Congress passed the **Defense of Marriage Act (DOMA)**, 1996, denying federal recognition to same-sex marriages, but the Supreme Court struck down that provision in *United States v. Windsor* (2013) and then legalized same-sex marriage nationwide in *Obergefell v. Hodges* (2015). **Gun control** debates intensified after high-profile mass shootings, producing the Brady Handgun Violence Prevention Act (1993, mandating background checks) and a since-expired federal assault weapons ban (1994–2004), even as the Supreme Court affirmed an individual constitutional right to bear arms in *District of Columbia v. Heller* (2008). Underlying all of these disputes, the **Religious Right**’s continued political influence kept debates over the role of religion in public life – school prayer, religious liberty exemptions, the display of religious symbols on public property – consistently prominent, while rising **partisan polarization** (driven partly by ideologically sorted media, including cable news and, later, social media) made compromise on these issues progressively harder to achieve.

### Theme: SOC – Social Structures

The culture wars reveal a fundamental and recurring disagreement over the proper source of social and moral authority in a pluralistic society: religious and traditionalist Americans have generally sought to preserve or restore what they view as foundational moral and family structures through law, while more secular and rights-based movements have generally sought to expand individual autonomy and equal legal recognition regardless of traditional categories – a disagreement playing out simultaneously across abortion, marriage, gender, and religious-liberty debates.

### Theme: ARC – American and Regional Culture

Culture-war divisions after 1980 frequently followed and reinforced regional and urban-rural lines: religiously conservative positions found their strongest institutional bases in the South and rural areas, while movements favoring expanded rights on abortion, marriage, and gender found their strongest bases in coastal and urban areas – a geographic sorting that intensified partisan polarization as the two major political parties increasingly corresponded to these same regional and cultural divides.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

“Chiến tranh văn hoá” (culture wars) từ thập niên 1980 xoay quanh các vấn đề đạo đức – xã hội gây chia rẽ sâu sắc: phá thai (*Planned Parenthood v. Casey*, 1992), hành động khẳng định/affirmative action (*Grutter v. Bollinger*, 2003), hôn nhân đồng giới (Đạo luật DOMA 1996, sau đó *Obergefell v. Hodges* hợp pháp hoá toàn quốc năm 2015), kiểm soát súng (Đạo luật Brady 1993, lệnh cấm súng tấn công 1994–2004, *D.C. v. Heller* 2008). Vai trò tôn giáo trong đời sống công và sự phân cực đảng phái (do truyền thông ý thức hệ hoá) khiến các tranh luận này ngày càng khó hoà hiệp.

## SAQ model outline

**Prompt:** Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE reason same-sex marriage became a major political issue between 1990 and 2015.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE Supreme Court decision related to this issue and its outcome.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE broader trend in American politics that this issue’s history illustrates.

**Model answers:**

- (a) As gay rights activism (building on the 1969 Stonewall riots) grew more visible from the 1990s onward, some states began extending legal recognition to same-sex relationships, prompting a strong political backlash from religious and social conservatives, most immediately expressed in Congress’s passage of the Defense of Marriage Act in 1996.
- (b) In *Obergefell v. Hodges* (2015), the Supreme Court ruled that the right to marry is a fundamental right guaranteed by the Fourteenth Amendment, requiring all states to license and recognize same-sex marriages nationwide.
- (c) The rapid shift from DOMA (1996) to *Obergefell* (2015) illustrates how quickly public opinion and legal doctrine can change on culture-war issues within a single generation, even as such shifts continue to provoke sustained political resistance from groups holding traditional religious or social views.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Students frequently mix up the dates and holdings of the same-sex marriage cases. **DOMA (1996)** was a law passed by Congress denying federal recognition to same-sex marriages. **United States v. Windsor** (2013) struck down DOMA’s federal-recognition provision but did not require states to permit same-sex marriage. **Obergefell v. Hodges** (2015) is the case that finally legalized same-sex marriage nationwide, in all fifty states. If an exam question asks about the case that made same-sex marriage legal everywhere in the United States, the answer is *Obergefell* (2015), not *Windsor* or *DOMA*.

## 9.7 Continuity and Change in Policy since 1990

### 9.7.1 The Clinton era and welfare reform

Bill Clinton, a moderate “New Democrat,” defeated George H.W. Bush in 1992 amid a domestic recession, campaigning on the economy (famously distilled by strategist James Carville’s phrase “It’s the economy, stupid”). After Republicans won control of both houses of Congress in the 1994 midterms – the “**Republican Revolution**,” led by House Speaker Newt Gingrich’s “**Contract with America**” – Clinton pursued a more centrist agenda, cooperating with Republicans on fiscal restraint (achieving federal budget surpluses by the late 1990s) and on the **Personal Responsibility and Work Opportunity Reconciliation Act (PRWORA, 1996)**, which replaced the New Deal-era Aid to Families with Dependent Children program with **Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (TANF)**, imposing work requirements and lifetime time limits on federal welfare benefits. Clinton declared in his 1996

State of the Union address that “the era of big government is over,” signaling how far the political center had shifted rightward on questions of federal social spending since the Great Society. Clinton’s presidency was also marked by his 1998 impeachment by the House of Representatives (on charges of perjury and obstruction of justice related to a personal scandal) and subsequent 1999 acquittal by the Senate.

#### Theme: PCE – Politics and Power

Clinton’s welfare reform (1996) and his declaration that “the era of big government is over” show how thoroughly the Reagan-era critique of federal social spending had reshaped mainstream political debate by the 1990s – even a Democratic president felt compelled to embrace time limits and work requirements for welfare recipients, a policy shift that would have been difficult to imagine within the Great Society’s expansive vision of federal responsibility only three decades earlier.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Bill Clinton (“New Democrat”) đắc cử năm 1992 giữa bối cảnh suy thoái kinh tế. Sau khi Đảng Cộng hoà giành quyền kiểm soát Quốc hội năm 1994 (“Cách mạng Cộng hoà”, Hợp đồng với nước Mỹ của Newt Gingrich), Clinton theo đường lối trung dung hơn, hợp tác cắt giảm thâm hụt ngân sách và ký Đạo luật Cải cách Phúc lợi (PRWORA, 1996) thay AFDC bằng TANF, áp đặt yêu cầu làm việc và giới hạn thời gian nhận trợ cấp. Clinton bị Hạ viện luận tội năm 1998 nhưng được Thượng viện tha bổng năm 1999.

#### 9.7.2 September 11, 2001, and the War on Terror

On **September 11, 2001**, nineteen hijackers affiliated with the terrorist network **al-Qaeda**, led by Osama bin Laden, crashed commercial airliners into the World Trade Center towers in New York City and the Pentagon near Washington, D.C.; a fourth hijacked plane crashed in rural Pennsylvania after passengers fought back. Roughly 3,000 people were killed, making it the deadliest terrorist attack in American history and the deadliest foreign attack on American soil since Pearl Harbor. President George W. Bush declared a global “**War on Terror**”; Congress passed the **USA PATRIOT Act** (October 2001), significantly expanding federal law-enforcement and intelligence-gathering powers – including expanded surveillance authority – in the name of preventing future attacks, and Congress created the cabinet-level **Department of Homeland Security** (2002) to coordinate domestic counterterrorism efforts. The United States invaded **Afghanistan** in October 2001 to topple the Taliban government that had sheltered al-Qaeda, beginning what became the longest war in American history (it did not end until the U.S. withdrawal in August 2021, after which the Taliban swiftly retook control). In 2003, the Bush administration invaded **Iraq**, justified publicly by claims – later shown to be substantially inaccurate – that Saddam Hussein’s government possessed weapons of mass destruction and maintained ties to al-Qaeda; the invasion toppled Saddam Hussein but was followed by years of sectarian violence and insurgency, and American combat troops did not fully withdraw until 2011.

#### Theme: WOR – America in the World

September 11 marked as sharp a break in American foreign policy as the Cold War’s onset had a half-century earlier: it replaced a defined state-based adversary (the Soviet Union) with a diffuse, non-state terrorist threat, producing a policy of preemptive military action (used to justify the 2003 Iraq invasion) that departed from the containment-based caution that had generally governed Cold War-era interventions, and it inaugurated the longest sustained period of American combat operations in the nation’s history.

## GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Ngày 11/9/2001, mạng lưới khủng bố al-Qaeda (do Osama bin Laden lãnh đạo) tấn công Trung tâm Thương mại Thế giới và Lầu Năm Góc, khiến khoảng 3.000 người thiệt mạng. Tổng thống George W. Bush phát động “Chiến tranh chống Khủng bố”; Đạo luật PATRIOT (10/2001) mở rộng quyền giám sát của chính phủ; Bộ An ninh Nội địa thành lập năm 2002. Mỹ xâm lược Afghanistan (2001) để lật đổ chế độ Taliban chứa chấp al-Qaeda – cuộc chiến dài nhất lịch sử Mỹ (đến 2021). Mỹ xâm lược Iraq (2003) với lý do vũ khí hủy diệt hàng loạt – sau này được chứng minh phần lớn không chính xác.

## HIPP document analysis – USA PATRIOT Act, Section 215 summary (2001)

**Excerpt (paraphrased provision):** “The Director of the FBI... may make an application for an order requiring the production of any tangible things (including books, records, papers, documents, and other items) for an investigation to protect against international terrorism or clandestine intelligence activities.”

**Historical situation:** Passed by Congress in October 2001, just weeks after the September 11 attacks, amid intense public fear of further terrorist attacks and strong bipartisan pressure to strengthen federal counterterrorism authority quickly.

**Point of view:** Congress and the Bush administration, prioritizing rapid prevention of future attacks, in a climate where dissent from expanding federal security powers carried significant political risk.

**Purpose:** To grant federal investigators significantly expanded authority to gather records, conduct surveillance, and share intelligence across agencies in pursuit of suspected terrorist activity.

**Significance:** The Act's broad surveillance provisions became a lasting subject of civil-liberties debate – critics argued they eroded Fourth Amendment protections against unreasonable searches – illustrating a recurring wartime pattern in American history (echoing the Espionage and Sedition Acts of World War I and Japanese American internment in World War II) in which national-security crises produce expanded government power that raises enduring constitutional concerns.

## SAQ model outline

**Prompt:** Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

(a) Briefly explain ONE way the September 11, 2001 attacks changed United States foreign policy.

(b) Briefly explain ONE way the attacks changed United States domestic policy.

(c) Briefly explain ONE similarity between the war in Iraq (2003) and an earlier U.S. military intervention discussed elsewhere in this course.

**Model answers:**

(a) The attacks led the United States to adopt a policy of preemptive military action against perceived terrorist threats, beginning with the invasion of Afghanistan in October 2001 to remove the Taliban government sheltering al-Qaeda, and later extending, more controversially, to the 2003 invasion of Iraq.

(b) Congress passed the USA PATRIOT Act (2001), substantially expanding federal surveillance and law-enforcement powers, and created the Department of Homeland Security (2002) to coordinate domestic counterterrorism efforts.

(c) Like the Vietnam War, the Iraq War (2003) was justified in part by intelligence claims that later proved inaccurate or exaggerated (weapons of mass destruction in Iraq, the Gulf of Tonkin

incident in Vietnam), and both conflicts became prolonged, costly engagements that eroded public support for the war over time.

### 9.7.3 The 2008 financial crisis and the Obama presidency

A prolonged housing-price boom, fueled by widespread **subprime mortgage** lending (high-risk loans to borrowers with weak credit) and complex, poorly regulated mortgage-backed financial securities, collapsed in 2007–2008, triggering the most severe American financial crisis since the Great Depression. The September 2008 bankruptcy of investment bank **Lehman Brothers** nearly froze the global financial system; the Bush administration and Congress responded with the **Troubled Asset Relief Program (TARP)**, October 2008), authorizing roughly \$700 billion to stabilize major banks and prevent a total financial collapse. The resulting “**Great Recession**” produced sharply rising unemployment, millions of home foreclosures, and deep public anger at both Wall Street financial institutions and the government bailouts used to rescue them. Amid this crisis, Democrat **Barack Obama** defeated Republican John McCain in the **2008** election, becoming the first African American president; his administration passed a major economic stimulus package (the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act, 2009) and, in 2010, the **Affordable Care Act (ACA)**, popularly “**Obamacare**”), the most significant expansion of federal health-insurance policy since the 1965 creation of Medicare and Medicaid, which required most Americans to carry health insurance, created state-based insurance marketplaces, expanded Medicaid eligibility, and barred insurers from denying coverage based on preexisting conditions. The ACA provoked fierce political opposition, including the emergence of the grassroots conservative **Tea Party** movement (2009–2010), which framed both the financial bailouts and the ACA as dangerous expansions of federal power and government spending.

| Causes                                                                         | Consequences                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Widespread subprime mortgage lending to high-risk borrowers                    | Millions of home foreclosures; sharp rise in unemployment (the “Great Recession”)                 |
| Complex, poorly regulated mortgage-backed securities and financial derivatives | Collapse or near-collapse of major financial institutions (e.g., Lehman Brothers, September 2008) |
| Deregulation of the financial sector in preceding decades                      | TARP (2008): roughly \$700 billion in federal funds to stabilize banks                            |
| Excessive risk-taking and leverage by major banks and investment firms         | Public anger at bank bailouts; rise of the Tea Party movement (2009–2010)                         |
| Housing-price bubble fueled by easy credit and speculative lending             | Obama’s 2008 election; stimulus spending (2009) and the Affordable Care Act (2010)                |

Causes and consequences of the 2008 global financial crisis.

#### LEQ thesis model

**Prompt:** “Evaluate the extent to which the debate over the proper size and role of the federal government changed between the Reagan presidency (1981–1989) and the Obama presidency (2009–2017).”

**Model thesis:** Although Reagan and Obama held opposing views on federal power – Reagan seeking to curtail government’s economic role through tax cuts and deregulation, Obama expanding it through the 2009 stimulus and the 2010 Affordable Care Act – the underlying terms of the debate changed remarkably little across the three intervening decades, since both presidents faced the same fundamental disagreement over whether an activist federal government

or free-market forces better serve the public good, and Obama's expansions, like Reagan's cuts, provoked a fierce and organized opposition movement (the Tea Party) explicitly invoking Reagan-era small-government rhetoric.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Bong bóng nhà đất vỡ (2007–08) do cho vay dưới chuẩn (subprime) và chứng khoán phái sinh phức tạp gây ra khủng hoảng tài chính nghiêm trọng nhất kể từ Đại Khủng hoảng. Ngân hàng Lehman Brothers phá sản (9/2008); Chương trình TARP (10/2008, khoảng 700 tỷ USD) cứu trợ hệ thống ngân hàng. “Đại Suy thoái” (Great Recession) gây thất nghiệp và tịch biên nhà hàng loạt. Obama đắc cử năm 2008 (tổng thống da đen đầu tiên); ban hành gói kích thích kinh tế (2009) và Đạo luật Chăm sóc Sức khỏe Hợp túi tiền (ACA, 2010) – vấp phải phản đối mạnh mẽ từ phong trào Tea Party.

#### 9.7.4 Technology, polarization, and contemporary debates

The spread of smartphones and **social media** platforms (Facebook, founded 2004; Twitter, founded 2006, among others) after the mid-2000s transformed American political life: these platforms enabled rapid grassroots organizing (visible in movements ranging from the Tea Party to Black Lives Matter, which emerged after 2013) but also fostered ideological “echo chambers,” accelerated the spread of misinformation, and contributed, alongside increasingly ideologically sorted cable news outlets, to rising **partisan polarization** – a decline in political common ground and a growing tendency for Americans to sort geographically and socially by political affiliation. Debates over the proper size and role of government – first sharpened by Reagan, revisited during the 2008 financial crisis and the ACA fight, and continuing through later disputes over federal spending, healthcare, and regulation – remained, alongside immigration, racial justice, and climate change, among the defining and unresolved political questions carried forward from the twentieth into the twenty-first century.

#### Theme: ARC – American and Regional Culture

Social media's rise after the mid-2000s represents a technological transformation of political culture comparable to earlier communication revolutions (radio in the 1930s, television in the 1960s): each new medium reshaped how political messages spread and how leaders connected with the public, but social media's decentralized, algorithm-driven structure – allowing any individual or group to reach mass audiences directly, without traditional editorial gate-keeping – intensified polarization and the spread of misinformation in ways earlier broadcast media, with their centralized control, generally did not.

#### GIẢI THÍCH TIẾNG VIỆT

VN

Sự phổ biến của điện thoại thông minh và mạng xã hội (Facebook, Twitter) sau giữa thập niên 2000 làm thay đổi đời sống chính trị Mỹ: vừa tạo điều kiện huy động quần chúng nhanh chóng (từ Tea Party đến Black Lives Matter), vừa tạo ra “buồng vọng âm” ý thức hệ, lan truyền thông tin sai lệch, góp phần làm gia tăng phân cực đảng phái. Tranh luận về quy mô chính phủ liên bang – từ Reagan đến khủng hoảng 2008 và ACA – vẫn là câu hỏi chính trị chưa có hồi kết, cùng với nhập cư, công bằng chủng tộc, và biến đổi khí hậu.

**(!) Lỗi thường gặp:** Students often conflate the war in **Afghanistan** and the war in **Iraq**, since both began under George W. Bush as part of the “War on Terror.” The Afghanistan invasion (October 2001) had a *direct* connection to September 11: it targeted the Taliban government that had sheltered al-Qaeda and Osama bin Laden. The Iraq invasion (2003) had *no* direct op-

erational connection to the September 11 attacks; it was justified by since-discredited claims about weapons of mass destruction and alleged (also unsubstantiated) links between Saddam Hussein and al-Qaeda. On the exam, do not describe Iraq as a direct response to September 11 – that description applies specifically to Afghanistan.

## 9.8 Practice: Period 9 review

### Câu 1 (9.1)

The political and cultural mood of the United States around 1980 is best explained by:

- (A) Renewed national confidence following a decisive victory in Vietnam
- (B) Accumulated disillusionment from Vietnam, Watergate, stagflation, and the Iran hostage crisis, which fueled a conservative political realignment
- (C) A sudden return to prewar isolationism
- (D) Universal public satisfaction with continued Great Society programs

### Lời giải chi tiết

Vietnam ended in defeat, not victory (ruling out A), and the country remained deeply engaged internationally rather than isolationist (ruling out C). A decade of accumulated setbacks – Vietnam, Watergate, stagflation, and the 1979–1981 Iran hostage crisis – produced widespread disillusionment with government competence, which many voters channeled into support for Reagan’s conservative critique of federal power rather than continued satisfaction with existing programs (ruling out D). **(B)**.

### Câu 2 (9.2)

Ronald Reagan’s 1980 electoral coalition was most notably built around the combination of:

- (A) Labor unions, urban liberals, and civil rights organizations
- (B) Economic conservatives favoring tax cuts, religious and social conservatives, foreign-policy hawks, and working-class “Reagan Democrats”
- (C) Only traditional Republican business elites, with no new voter groups
- (D) Isolationists opposed to any American involvement in the Cold War

### Lời giải chi tiết

Reagan’s coalition combined economic conservatives (tax cuts, deregulation), religious and social conservatives (opposing abortion and supporting “traditional values”), foreign-policy hawks critical of détente, and working-class “Reagan Democrats” – not labor unions and civil rights organizations, which remained largely Democratic (ruling out A, the opposite grouping). The coalition included far more than traditional business elites alone (ruling out C), and Reagan pursued an assertive, not isolationist, Cold War foreign policy (ruling out D). **(B)**.

### Câu 3 (9.2)

The “supply-side” economic theory underlying Reaganomics predicted that:

- (A) Sharply cutting marginal tax rates would spur enough new investment and growth to offset lost government revenue
- (B) Raising tariffs on imported goods would protect domestic industry and workers
- (C) Expanding federal welfare programs would be the fastest way to reduce poverty
- (D) Nationalizing major industries under federal ownership would increase economic efficiency

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Supply-side theory, associated with economist Arthur Laffer, held that lower marginal tax rates would encourage enough additional investment, work, and economic activity to offset – and eventually exceed – the government's lost tax revenue. This is distinct from protectionist tariff policy (A is not what supply-side theory concerns; note NAFTA-era Republicans generally favored free trade, not tariffs), the opposite of Reagan's actual welfare-cutting agenda (C is wrong), and unrelated to nationalization, which contradicts free-market conservative ideology entirely (D is wrong). **(A)**.

**Câu 4 (9.2) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).  
(a) Briefly explain what senior Reagan administration officials secretly did in the Iran-Contra affair (1985–1987).  
(b) Briefly explain ONE congressional restriction that this action violated.  
(c) Briefly explain ONE consequence of the scandal for Reagan's presidency or for later understandings of executive power.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

(a) National Security Council officials, including Lieutenant Colonel Oliver North, secretly arranged arms sales to Iran – then under a U.S. arms embargo – partly to help secure the release of American hostages held in Lebanon, then covertly diverted the proceeds to fund the Contra rebels fighting Nicaragua's Sandinista government.  
(b) This diversion of funds directly violated the Boland Amendment, through which Congress had prohibited U.S. military assistance to the Contras.  
(c) The scandal seriously damaged Reagan's second-term credibility and revived, in a manner reminiscent of Watergate, public and congressional concern about unchecked executive power in foreign policy, even though investigators found no conclusive evidence that Reagan personally authorized the fund diversion.

**Câu 5 (9.2)**

Jerry Falwell's Moral Majority (founded 1979) most directly contributed to the conservative movement by:

- (A) Mobilizing evangelical Christian voters into an organized political bloc supporting conservative positions on abortion, school prayer, and family values
- (B) Founding the National Organization for Women
- (C) Leading the campaign for the Voting Rights Act of 1965
- (D) Organizing opposition to the Vietnam War draft

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The Moral Majority organized evangelical Christians as a disciplined political voting bloc supporting conservative positions on abortion, school prayer, and “traditional family values,” becoming a key pillar of Reagan’s coalition. NOW (B) was a feminist organization pursuing largely opposite goals; the Voting Rights Act (C) passed in 1965, well before the Moral Majority existed; and draft opposition (D) was a hallmark of the 1960s-70s antiwar left, not the Religious Right. **(A)**.

**Câu 6 (9.3)**

Mikhail Gorbachev’s policies of glasnost and perestroika are best described as:

- |                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>(A)</b> Political openness and market-oriented economic restructuring intended to revitalize the Soviet system, which instead unleashed forces that hastened its collapse | economic planning                                                                                  |
| <b>(B)</b> A tightening of censorship and central                                                                                                                            | <b>(C)</b> A military alliance formed between the Soviet Union and the United States against China |
|                                                                                                                                                                              | <b>(D)</b> A program to rapidly expand the Soviet nuclear arsenal                                  |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Glasnost (“openness”) relaxed censorship and permitted public criticism, while perestroika (“restructuring”) introduced limited market mechanisms into the Soviet command economy – reforms meant to revitalize the system that instead unleashed long-suppressed nationalist and reformist pressures, directly contradicting a description of tightened control (B is the opposite). No such alliance against China existed (C), and the reforms were domestic and economic/political, not a nuclear buildup (D). **(A)**.

**Câu 7 (9.3)**

The fall of the Berlin Wall in November 1989 is most directly explained by:

- |                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>(A)</b> A direct United States military assault on East Germany                                                                                                  | reforms weakened central authority                                   |
| <b>(B)</b> Mass popular protest movements across Eastern Europe, combined with the Soviet Union’s declining willingness to enforce communist control as Gorbachev’s | <b>(C)</b> A unilateral NATO decision to formally annex East Germany |
|                                                                                                                                                                     | <b>(D)</b> The assassination of the East German head of state        |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

No American military action was involved (A is wrong); the wall fell because mass popular protest movements across Eastern Europe (building on Poland’s Solidarity movement) exploited the Soviet Union’s declining willingness, under Gorbachev, to use force to prop up unpopular communist governments. NATO did not annex East Germany (C is fabricated), and no assassination occurred (D is fabricated). **(B)**.

**Câu 8 (9.3) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE reason the Soviet Union formally dissolved in December 1991.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way President George H.W. Bush responded to Iraq's August 1990 invasion of Kuwait.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way Bush's handling of the 1991 Gulf War differed from the approach his son, George W. Bush, later took toward Iraq in 2003.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) A failed hardline coup against Gorbachev in August 1991 discredited central Soviet authority and boosted the standing of reformist leader Boris Yeltsin, accelerating the constituent republics' moves toward independence, and by December 1991 the Soviet Union formally dissolved into fifteen separate states.
- (b) Bush assembled a broad international coalition backed by United Nations resolutions and launched Operation Desert Storm (January–February 1991), a rapid air campaign followed by a ground offensive that expelled Iraqi forces from Kuwait.
- (c) George H.W. Bush deliberately limited the war's objective to expelling Iraqi forces from Kuwait and did not pursue Saddam Hussein's removal, whereas George W. Bush's 2003 invasion of Iraq explicitly sought regime change and led to years of occupation and insurgency.

**Câu 9 (9.4)**

Critics of NAFTA (1994), including labor unions and independent presidential candidate Ross Perot, argued the agreement would primarily:

- |                                                                                      |                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Raise tariffs and sharply reduce international trade                             | (C) Prohibit any future trade between the United States and Mexico |
| (B) Accelerate the loss of American manufacturing jobs to lower-wage labor in Mexico | (D) Immediately eliminate the United States trade deficit          |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

NAFTA eliminated tariffs rather than raising them (A is the opposite of what the agreement did), and it expanded, rather than prohibited, trade between the two countries (C is the opposite). Critics like Perot warned of a “giant sucking sound” as manufacturing jobs relocated to Mexico's lower-wage labor market – a persistent political criticism of the agreement, not a claim about eliminating the trade deficit (D, which was not the central critique). **(B)**.

**Câu 10 (9.4) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE specific way globalization changed the American economy after 1980.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE consequence of this change for workers in traditional manufacturing regions.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way American voters or political candidates responded to this economic change.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Falling trade barriers (including NAFTA, 1994) and declining international transportation and communication costs allowed American corporations to relocate manufacturing production to countries with lower labor costs, sharply reducing domestic manufacturing employment.
- (b) The traditional industrial “Rust Belt” of the Midwest and Northeast experienced sustained factory closures, population loss, and wage stagnation, even as new jobs grew instead in services, finance, and technology sectors elsewhere.
- (c) Trade agreements and globalization became recurring targets of political criticism, from Ross Perot’s independent 1992 campaign onward, with candidates across the political spectrum in later decades promising to renegotiate or restrict trade agreements to protect American manufacturing jobs.

**Câu 11 (9.4) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE way the technology/internet revolution changed the American economy between 1990 and 2010.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE reason income inequality widened in the United States after 1980.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE way rising inequality became a subject of political debate.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) The development of the World Wide Web and personal computing created entirely new industries – online retail, internet search and advertising, and later social media – generating enormous new wealth concentrated in technology firms and their founders.
- (b) Declining union membership, manufacturing job losses driven by globalization and automation, and tax policy changes since the 1980s together caused wages for many middle- and working-class Americans to stagnate in real terms even as productivity and the incomes of the highest earners rose sharply.
- (c) Rising inequality became a recurring theme in national politics, invoked by movements and candidates across the ideological spectrum arguing that federal tax, trade, or regulatory policy should do more to address the widening gap between the wealthiest Americans and everyone else.

**Câu 12 (9.5)**

The Immigration Reform and Control Act (1986) is best described as a law that:

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Granted legal status to millions of undocumented immigrants residing continuously in the United States since before 1982, while also penalizing employers who knowingly hired undocumented workers | (B) Abolished all legal restrictions on immigration to the United States |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                        | (C) Established the restrictive national-origins quota system            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                        | (D) Ended all legal immigration from Latin America and Asia              |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

IRCA (1986) was a two-part compromise: it legalized roughly three million undocumented immigrants who could show continuous U.S. residence since before 1982, and for the first

time made it illegal for employers to knowingly hire undocumented workers. The national-origins quota system (C) dates to the 1920s and was abolished, not created, in this period (by the 1965 Hart-Celler Act); IRCA did not abolish all immigration restrictions (B) nor end immigration from any region (D, the opposite of actual trends after 1986). **(A)**.

**Câu 13 (9.5) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

(a) Briefly explain ONE provision of the Immigration Reform and Control Act (1986).

(b) Briefly explain ONE way immigration patterns after 1980 differed from immigration patterns before 1965.

(c) Briefly explain ONE effect of these changing immigration patterns on American society or politics.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

(a) IRCA (1986) granted legal status to an estimated three million undocumented immigrants who could demonstrate continuous U.S. residence since before 1982, while also making it illegal, for the first time, for employers to knowingly hire undocumented workers.

(b) Before the Immigration and Nationality Act of 1965 abolished the national-origins quota system, immigration policy had heavily favored applicants from Northern and Western Europe; after 1965, and increasingly after 1980, most new immigrants instead came from Latin America and Asia.

(c) This shift produced a substantially more racially and ethnically diverse American population and electorate by the early twenty-first century, reshaping regional demographics (especially in the Southwest and major metropolitan areas) and making immigration policy an increasingly prominent and partisan political issue.

**Câu 14 (9.6)**

In *Planned Parenthood v. Casey* (1992), the Supreme Court:

**(A)** Overturned *Roe v. Wade* entirely, banning abortion nationwide

**(C)** Established a nationwide right to same-sex marriage

**(B)** Upheld a constitutional right to abortion while permitting states to impose regulations short of an “undue burden” on that right

**(D)** Ruled that race-conscious affirmative action in college admissions was unconstitutional

**Lời giải chi tiết**

*Casey* (1992) reaffirmed the core constitutional right to abortion recognized in *Roe v. Wade* (1973) while allowing states somewhat greater latitude to regulate abortion access, so long as regulations did not impose an “undue burden” on that right – it did not overturn *Roe* (A is wrong; that occurred only later, in *Dobbs*, 2022), and it has nothing to do with same-sex marriage (C, decided in *Obergefell*, 2015) or affirmative action (D, addressed in separate cases like *Grutter*, 2003, and *SFFA*, 2023). **(B)**.

## Câu 15 (9.6)

The Brady Handgun Violence Prevention Act (1993) and *District of Columbia v. Heller* (2008) together best illustrate:

- (A) A steady, uncontested expansion of gun restrictions with no judicial pushback
- (B) Ongoing tension between legislative efforts to regulate firearms (such as mandatory background checks) and Supreme Court affirmation of an individual constitutional right to bear arms
- (C) The formal abolition of the Second Amendment
- (D) A comprehensive federal ban on all private firearm ownership

## Lời giải chi tiết

The Brady Act (1993) mandated background checks for handgun purchases – a legislative regulatory measure – while *Heller* (2008) affirmed an individual constitutional right to bear arms under the Second Amendment, showing that regulation efforts and judicial affirmation of gun rights have coexisted in tension rather than one steadily displacing the other (ruling out A, which ignores this tension). No amendment was abolished (C) and no comprehensive ownership ban exists (D). (B).

## Câu 16 (9.7)

The Personal Responsibility and Work Opportunity Reconciliation Act (1996) most directly:

- (A) Expanded the New Deal-era Aid to Families with Dependent Children program
- (B) Replaced AFDC with Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (TANF), imposing work requirements and time limits on federal welfare benefits
- (C) Created the Affordable Care Act
- (D) Established the Medicare and Medicaid programs

## Lời giải chi tiết

Signed by Clinton after the 1994 “Republican Revolution,” PRWORA (1996) replaced AFDC with TANF, imposing work requirements and lifetime time limits on federal welfare benefits – a reduction, not expansion, of the New Deal-era program (A is the opposite). It is unrelated to the ACA, which came fourteen years later under Obama (C), and Medicare/Medicaid were created in 1965, during Period 8, not by this Act (D). (B).

## Câu 17 (9.7)

The 2008 global financial crisis was most directly triggered by:

- (A) A sudden collapse in global oil prices
- (B) The collapse of a housing-price bubble fueled by widespread subprime mortgage lending and poorly regulated mortgage-backed securities
- (C) A trade war between the United States and China
- (D) Hyperinflation caused by excessive federal spending on the War on Terror

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Years of subprime mortgage lending and complex, poorly regulated mortgage-backed securities inflated a housing-price bubble that collapsed in 2007–2008, triggering the Lehman Brothers bankruptcy and a near-freeze of the global financial system – not an oil-price collapse (A), a trade war (C, not a significant factor at the time), or hyperinflation (D, which did not occur). **(B).**

**Câu 18 (9.7) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

- (a) Briefly explain ONE reason Barack Obama won the 2008 presidential election.
- (b) Briefly explain ONE way the federal government responded to the 2008 financial crisis.
- (c) Briefly explain ONE major provision or significance of the Affordable Care Act (2010).

**Lời giải chi tiết**

- (a) Obama benefited from widespread public anger at the financial crisis unfolding under the outgoing Republican administration, fatigue with the prolonged wars in Iraq and Afghanistan, and a campaign message of “hope and change” that mobilized broad support, including among younger and minority voters; he became the first African American president.
- (b) The federal government passed the Troubled Asset Relief Program (TARP, October 2008, roughly \$700 billion) to stabilize major banks, and the incoming Obama administration followed with the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act (2009), a stimulus package intended to boost economic growth and employment.
- (c) The Affordable Care Act (2010) required most Americans to carry health insurance, created state-based insurance marketplaces, expanded Medicaid eligibility, and barred insurers from denying coverage based on preexisting conditions – the most significant expansion of federal health policy since the creation of Medicare and Medicaid in 1965.

**Câu 19 (9.6)**

Which sequence correctly orders the legal status of same-sex marriage in the United States, from most restrictive to most expansive?

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>(A)</b> <i>Obergefell v. Hodges</i> (2015) → <i>United States v. Windsor</i> (2013) → DOMA (1996)                                                                                                               | <b>(C)</b> <i>Obergefell v. Hodges</i> (2015) → DOMA (1996) → <i>Planned Parenthood v. Casey</i> (1992) |
| <b>(B)</b> DOMA (1996), denying federal recognition → <i>United States v. Windsor</i> (2013), striking down DOMA’s federal provision → <i>Obergefell v. Hodges</i> (2015), legalizing same-sex marriage nationwide | <b>(D)</b> DOMA (1996) legalized same-sex marriage nationwide immediately upon passage                  |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

The correct chronological and legal sequence moves from most restrictive to most expansive: DOMA (1996) denied federal recognition to same-sex marriages; *Windsor* (2013) struck down that federal-recognition denial but left state-level bans intact; *Obergefell* (2015) then required all fifty states to license and recognize same-sex marriages. Choices (A) and (C) reverse or scramble this sequence, and (D) mischaracterizes DOMA, which restricted rather than legalized same-sex marriage recognition. **(B).**

**Câu 20 (9.7) – SAQ**

Using your knowledge of United States history, answer (a), (b), and (c).

(a) Briefly explain ONE difference between the stated justification for the 2001 invasion of Afghanistan and the stated justification for the 2003 invasion of Iraq.

(b) Briefly explain ONE consequence of the Iraq War (2003) for American public opinion or politics.

(c) Briefly explain ONE way the Afghanistan War's ending (2021) compared to its beginning in terms of stated U.S. objectives.

**Lời giải chi tiết**

(a) The Afghanistan invasion (October 2001) was justified as a direct response to September 11, targeting the Taliban government that had sheltered al-Qaeda; the Iraq invasion (2003) rested on separate, since-discredited claims that Saddam Hussein's government possessed weapons of mass destruction and maintained operational ties to al-Qaeda, with no direct connection to the September 11 attackers themselves.

(b) Revelations that the core WMD justification for the Iraq War was inaccurate, combined with a prolonged, costly insurgency and sectarian violence after 2003, eroded public trust in the Bush administration and in official wartime intelligence claims more broadly, shaping skepticism toward later proposed military interventions.

(c) The war began in 2001 with the relatively narrow objective of removing the Taliban and disrupting al-Qaeda, but over two decades expanded into an extended nation-building and counterinsurgency effort; when American forces withdrew in August 2021, the Taliban rapidly retook control, leaving the war's long-term objective of a stable, non-Taliban Afghan government unrealized.

**Câu 21 (9.8)**

The rise of social media platforms after the mid-2000s is best described by historians as a development that:

- |                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (A) Uniformly increased political consensus and reduced partisan disagreement                                                                                   | rising partisan polarization                                                                                    |
| (B) Enabled rapid grassroots political organizing while also fostering ideological echo chambers and accelerating the spread of misinformation, contributing to | (C) Had no measurable effect on American political culture                                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                                 | (D) Immediately replaced television and cable news as the dominant political medium with no transitional period |

**Lời giải chi tiết**

Social media had a genuinely double-edged effect: it lowered the barrier to rapid grassroots organizing (from the Tea Party to Black Lives Matter) while simultaneously fostering ideological “echo chambers” and accelerating misinformation, both of which intensified partisan polarization alongside increasingly ideologically sorted cable news – the opposite of increased consensus (ruling out A). Choice C understates a well-documented cultural shift, and (D) overstates the pace and completeness of the transition away from television and cable news, which continued to coexist with social media as influential political media. **(B).**

**Ôn tập nhanh:**

- Luôn viết một luận đề (thesis) rõ ràng, có lập luận nhân-quả cụ thể cho bài DBQ/LEQ – nêu rõ lập trường và ít nhất hai lý do hỗ trợ, thay vì chỉ liệt kê sự kiện.
- Với DBQ, dùng phương pháp HIPPP (bối cảnh lịch sử, quan điểm tác giả, mục đích viết) để *phân tích* tài liệu, không chỉ tóm tắt nội dung tài liệu.
- Với SAQ, trả lời ngắn gọn, mỗi câu (a), (b), (c) chỉ nêu **MỘT** ý rõ ràng kèm dẫn chứng cụ thể (tên sự kiện, năm, nhân vật), tránh viết chung chung.
- Ghi nhớ 8 chủ đề xuyên suốt của AP US History: NAT (Bản sắc Dân tộc), WXT (Lao động – Trao đổi – Công nghệ), GEO (Địa lý – Môi trường), MIG (Di trú – Định cư), PCE (Chính trị – Quyền lực), WOR (Nước Mỹ trong Thế giới), ARC (Văn hoá Mỹ và Vùng miền), SOC (Cấu trúc Xã hội) – các chủ đề này lặp lại xuyên suốt cả 9 Period.
- Các so sánh lặp lại nhiều lần trong đề thi: Bắc-Nam, thành thị-nông thôn, và quyền lực liên bang-tiểu bang (từ Hiến pháp 1787 đến New Deal đến Obamacare) – nên chuẩn bị sẵn ví dụ cụ thể cho từng cặp so sánh này ở nhiều Period khác nhau.
- Ôn lại các “bản lề nhân quả” xuyên suốt khoá học: nổi dậy Bacon’s Rebellion (1676) → siết chặt chế độ nô lệ theo chủng tộc ở Chesapeake; điểm yếu của Điều lệ Liên bang → Hiến pháp 1787; xung đột lãnh thổ/nô lệ → Nội chiến → Tái thiết và các Tu chính án 13-14-15; Đại Khủng hoảng 1929 → New Deal → mở rộng vai trò chính phủ liên bang; Việt Nam/Watergate → mất niềm tin vào chính phủ → làn sóng bảo thủ Reagan; sự kiện 11/9/2001 → Đạo luật PATRIOT và Chiến tranh chống Khủng bố; khủng hoảng tài chính 2008 → TARP → Obama đắc cử và Đạo luật ACA.

# Đồng hành cùng 8020 English

Cảm ơn bạn đã học cùng bộ giáo trình quốc tế 8020. **Điểm thật · Thầy thật · Kết quả thật** — nhiều học viên chỉ cần 1–2 khoá để đạt kết quả mong muốn.

## Chương trình đào tạo tại 8020 English

**IELTS Academic/General · SAT · PTE · Duolingo · TOEFL | AP (College Board) · IB Diploma · Cambridge IGCSE / A-Level |** sẵn học bổng du học.

## Vì sao chọn 8020 English?

- **100% giáo viên** đạt tối thiểu 8.0 IELTS hoặc 1500 SAT — đội ngũ Giáo sư · Tiến sĩ · Thạc sĩ tốt nghiệp trường top đầu thế giới (Carnegie Mellon — #1 Hoa Kỳ về Khoa học Máy tính).
- **Kèm 1–1** mọi độ tuổi; lớp sĩ số nhỏ 2–5 bạn (đa số dưới 10 bạn/lớp).
- Lộ trình cá nhân hoá, theo sát tiến độ từng học viên; lớp OFFLINE tại TP.HCM & ONLINE toàn quốc.

## Bảng vàng học viên

**AP 5/5** — Calculus AB/BC  
**SAT 1590 / 1570 / 1550**

**AP 4–5** — Biology, Chemistry  
**IELTS 8.0–9.0**

**IB 90/100** — Economics  
**Duolingo 110 · PTE 90**

## Cảm nhận học viên & phụ huynh

*"Bạn đã cải thiện được tư duy Writing — kỹ năng từng là nỗi sợ lớn nhất — và cuối cùng đã đậu vào trường top như mong muốn. Thái độ học tập cực kỳ nghiêm túc; ngay cả khi nằm viện vẫn cố gắng học đều đặn."*

— Phan Thị Thanh Hằng • IELTS Overall 8.5

*"Cần tất cả kỹ năng trên 7.5 để xét vào trường top 1 Anh Quốc về Y học (chương trình UKFPO của NHS) — và đã đạt mục tiêu sau khi học Writing 1-1."*

— Trần Hoàng Bảo Ngọc • IELTS Overall 8.0 (Writing 6.0 → 7.5)

*"Gia đình và bé xin cảm ơn thầy cô đã giúp con có hành trang chín chu khi qua Mỹ. Đạt điểm 5 môn Giải tích trong thời gian ngắn là quá mãn nguyện."*

— Phụ huynh • AP Calculus BC 5/5

*"Em cảm ơn thầy đã luôn đồng hành. Nhờ thầy, em học vững hơn rất nhiều dù thời gian ôn không dài."*

— Học viên • AP Calculus AB 4

### KẾT QUẢ HỌC VIÊN

### FEEDBACK PHỤ HUYNH & HỌC VIÊN AP



**Phụ huynh • AP Calculus BC: 5**

*"Gia đình cảm ơn thầy cô đã giúp con có hành trang chín chu khi qua Mỹ. Đạt điểm 5 môn Giải tích trong thời gian ngắn là quá mãn nguyện."*



**Phụ huynh • AP Calculus BC**

*"Mẹ con xin gửi lời cảm ơn chân thành tới thầy và cả nhóm. Thời gian ôn rất ngắn nhưng con nhận được rất nhiều sự hỗ trợ."*



**Học viên • AP Calculus AB: 4 • Statistics: 3**

*"Em cảm ơn thầy Steven đã luôn đồng hành. Nhờ thầy, em học vững hơn rất nhiều dù thời gian không dài."*

Feedback phụ huynh & học viên AP — nhiều môn đạt điểm 4 & 5

## Điểm thi thật của học viên

KẾT QUẢ HỌC VIÊN

**ĐIỂM SỐ AP**

8020  
ENGLISH



AP Biology: 4 · AP Chemistry: 4



AP Calculus AB: 5



AP Calculus BC: 5



AP Chemistry: 5

Bảng điểm AP thật của học viên – nhiều môn đạt điểm 4 & 5

Bảng điểm AP thật – Calculus AB/BC 5/5 · Biology & Chemistry 4-5 (College Board)

KẾT QUẢ HỌC VIÊN

**ĐIỂM SỐ PTE**

8020  
ENGLISH

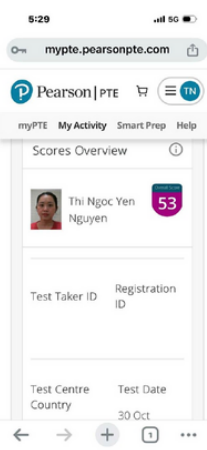


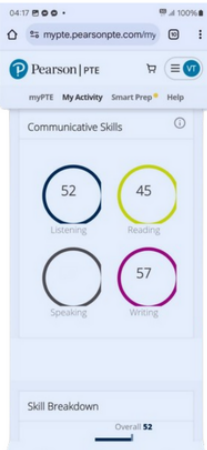
Em báo điểm nha c

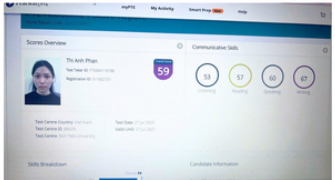
trời oiii

du doi vay lun do haaaaa

chúc mừng e nhaaaa





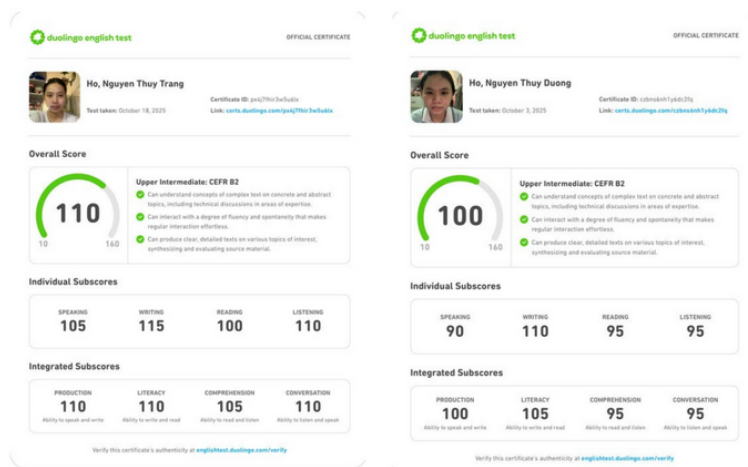


Bảng điểm PTE thật của học viên

Học viên 8020 – PTE Academic 90

## KẾT QUẢ HỌC VIÊN

## ĐIỂM SỐ DUOLINGO



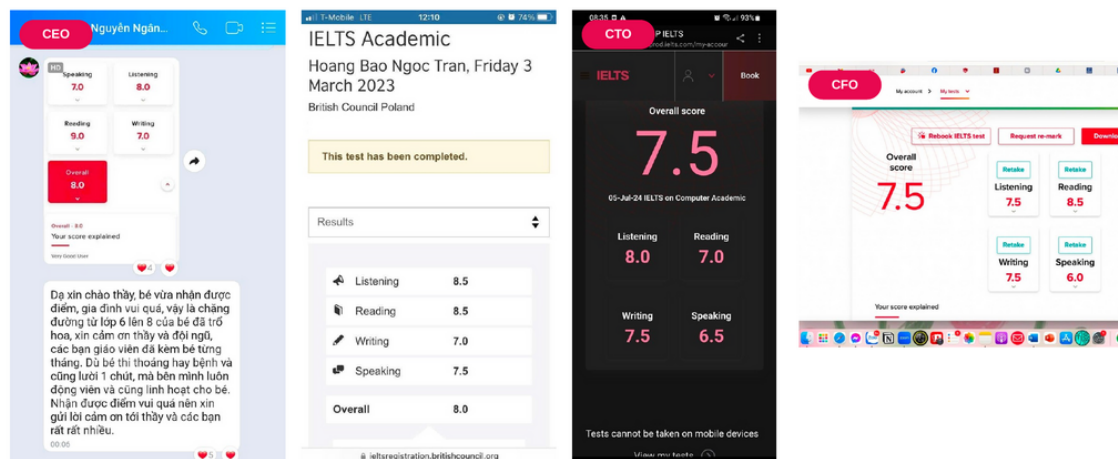
Duolingo English Test – 110 &amp; 100

Học viên 8020 – Duolingo English Test 110 &amp; 100

## KẾT QUẢ HỌC VIÊN

## THÀNH TÍCH HỌC VIÊN

Bảng điểm thi thật – chất lượng được giám sát nghiêm ngặt. Một số học viên chỉ cần 1–2 khóa để đạt kết quả mong muốn.



Học viên 8020 – IELTS 8.0 / 7.5 / 8.5 (báo điểm thật)

**8020 ENGLISH – CHƯƠNG TRÌNH QUỐC TẾ**

Test đầu vào &amp; tư vấn lộ trình MIỄN PHÍ

**Hotline** Thầy Tường (Head of 8020): 0332 747 169**Cô Nancy:** 0983 422 692 · 0772 631 496**Offline** Trần Phú, P.4, Q.5, TP.HCM**Online** Lớp trực tuyến toàn quốc**Web** [luyenthi8020.com](http://luyenthi8020.com)